



# **ET-5150/ET-5170/ET-5180 User's Guide**



---

# Contents

<b>ET-5150/ET-5170/ET-5180 User's Guide .....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Product Basics .....</b>	<b>16</b>
Using the Control Panel .....	16
Control Panel Buttons and Lights .....	17
The LCD Screen .....	18
Status Icon Information .....	18
Navigating the LCD Screen.....	19
Entering Characters on the LCD Screen.....	20
Adjusting Control Panel Sounds .....	22
Adjusting the Screen Brightness .....	23
Changing LCD Screen Language .....	23
Viewing Animations.....	24
Selecting the Date and Time .....	26
Selecting Your Country or Region.....	27
Turning Off the Operation Time Out Setting.....	28
Preventing PC Connection via USB .....	29
Product Parts Locations .....	30
Product Parts - Front .....	31
Product Parts - Inside .....	33
Product Parts - Back.....	34
Using Power Saving Settings .....	34
Changing the Sleep Timer Settings .....	35
Changing the Power Off Timer Settings .....	36
Epson Connect Solutions for Smartphones, Tablets, and More .....	36
Setting Up Epson Connect Services.....	37
Using Epson Email Print .....	38
Using Epson Remote Print .....	39
Using Epson Scan to Cloud.....	40
Using the Epson Smart Panel Mobile App.....	40
Voice-Activated Printing .....	41

Setting Up Printing on a Chromebook .....	41
Using AirPrint .....	42
Android Printing Using the Epson Print Enabler .....	42
Using Fire OS Printing .....	43
Using Windows 10 Mobile Printing .....	43
Using Epson Print and Scan App with Windows Tablets .....	44
Using the Mopria Print Service .....	44
<b>Wi-Fi or Wired Networking.....</b>	<b>46</b>
Network Security Recommendations .....	46
Wi-Fi Infrastructure Mode Setup.....	47
Selecting Wireless Network Settings from the Control Panel .....	48
Setting Up Wireless Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet.....	51
Wi-Fi Direct Mode Setup .....	52
Connecting to a Mobile Device .....	53
Modifying the Wi-Fi Direct Network Name or Password .....	53
Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS).....	55
Using WPS to Connect to a Network .....	55
Printing a Network Status Sheet.....	56
Printing a Network Connection Report .....	57
Network Connection Report Codes and Messages .....	59
Changing or Updating Network Connections .....	64
Accessing the Web Config Utility.....	64
Changing a USB Connection to a Wi-Fi Connection.....	65
Changing a Wi-Fi Connection to a Wired Network Connection.....	65
Connecting to a New Wi-Fi Router .....	66
Disabling Wi-Fi Features .....	66
<b>Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing .....</b>	<b>68</b>
Installing the PCL Driver - Windows .....	68
Installing the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Windows .....	70
Installing the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Mac .....	70
Selecting PDL (Page Description Language) Settings .....	71
PDL Print Configuration Options.....	71
Selecting Printer Language and Interface Settings .....	74

Printing Language and Interface Options .....	74
Printing a PCL or PS3 (PostScript) Status Sheet .....	75
<b>Loading Paper .....</b>	<b>76</b>
Loading Paper in the Cassette .....	76
Loading Paper in the Rear Paper Feed Slot .....	82
Paper Loading Capacity .....	85
Double-sided Printing Capacity .....	86
Compatible Epson Papers .....	88
Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software .....	90
Selecting the Paper Settings - Control Panel .....	90
Paper or Media Type Settings - Control Panel .....	92
Selecting the Default Paper Source Settings .....	92
Paper Source Settings Options .....	93
Selecting the Universal Print Settings .....	93
Universal Print Settings Options .....	94
<b>Placing Originals on the Product .....</b>	<b>95</b>
Placing Originals on the Scanner Glass .....	95
Placing Originals in the Automatic Document Feeder .....	97
ADF Original Document Specifications .....	100
<b>Copying .....</b>	<b>101</b>
Copying Documents or Photos .....	101
Copying ID Cards .....	102
Copying Options .....	103
<b>Printing from a Computer .....</b>	<b>107</b>
Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows .....	107
Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows .....	108
Paper Source Options - Windows .....	110
Print Quality Options - Windows .....	111
Multi-Page Printing Options - Windows .....	111
Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Windows .....	111
Double-sided Printing Options - Windows .....	115
Print Density Adjustments - Windows .....	115

Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows .....	116
Custom Color Correction Options - Windows.....	118
Image Options and Additional Settings - Windows.....	119
Header/Footer Settings - Windows .....	120
Selecting a Printing Preset - Windows.....	121
Selecting Extended Settings - Windows .....	123
Extended Settings - Windows .....	124
Printing Your Document - Windows.....	125
Locking Printer Settings - Windows .....	126
Locked Setting Options.....	128
Selecting Default Print Settings - Windows.....	129
Changing the Language of the Printer Software Screens .....	130
Changing Automatic Update Options .....	131
Printing with the Built-in Epson Driver - Windows 10 S.....	132
Selecting Print Settings - Windows 10 S.....	133
Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac.....	136
Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac .....	137
Paper Source Options - Mac.....	140
Print Quality Options - Mac .....	140
Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac .....	141
Selecting Print Layout Options - Mac.....	142
Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Mac.....	142
Double-sided Printing Options and Adjustments - Mac .....	144
Managing Color - Mac .....	144
Color Matching and Color Options - Mac .....	145
Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac .....	146
Printing Preferences - Mac.....	147
Printing Your Document - Mac.....	148
Checking Print Status - Mac.....	149
Printing with the PCL Printer Software - Windows.....	149
Synchronizing Printer Settings - PCL Driver - Windows .....	150
Selecting Basic Print Settings - PCL Driver - Windows.....	150
Selecting Default Print Settings - PCL Driver - Windows .....	152

Locking Printer Settings - PCL Driver - Windows.....	154
PCL Driver Locked Setting Options .....	155
Printing with the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Windows .....	156
Selecting Basic Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Windows .....	157
Selecting Default Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Windows.....	159
PostScript Printer Driver Options - Windows.....	161
Printing with the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Mac .....	163
Selecting Basic Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Mac .....	163
PostScript Printer Driver Options - Mac .....	168
Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet.....	170
Cancelling Printing Using a Product Button.....	171
<b>Scanning .....</b>	<b>172</b>
Starting a Scan.....	172
Starting a Scan Using the Product Control Panel .....	172
Scanning to a Connected Computer.....	174
Scanning to the Cloud .....	176
Setting Up a WSD Port (Windows 7/Windows Vista).....	177
Scanning Using WSD - Windows .....	178
Control Panel Scanning Options.....	179
Changing Default Scan Job Settings .....	180
Starting a Scan Using Epson ScanSmart .....	181
Starting a Scan Using the Epson Scan 2 Icon .....	182
Starting a Scan from a Scanning Program.....	184
Starting a Scan from a Smartphone or Tablet.....	186
Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart.....	186
Saving a Scan.....	189
Attaching a Scan to Email .....	190
Sending a Scan to a Cloud Service.....	191
Printing a Scan.....	192
Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings .....	194
Changing the Epson Product .....	194
Changing the Scan Settings.....	195
Changing the File Name Settings .....	196

Changing the Save Settings.....	198
Save Settings.....	200
Customizing Action Icons.....	201
Scanning in Epson Scan 2.....	203
Additional Scanning Settings - Main Settings Tab.....	206
Additional Scanning Settings - Advanced Settings Tab .....	207
Saving Scanned Documents as a Searchable PDF Using Epson Scan 2.....	208
Image Format Options .....	209
Scan Resolution Guidelines.....	210
<b>Faxing.....</b>	<b>212</b>
Connecting a Telephone or Answering Machine .....	212
Setting Up Fax Features .....	216
Setting Up Basic Fax Features .....	216
Using the Fax Setup Wizard .....	216
Selecting the Line Type.....	218
Setting the Number of Rings to Answer .....	219
Selecting Advanced Fax Settings .....	220
Receive Settings - Fax .....	221
Report Settings - Fax .....	223
Basic Settings - Fax .....	223
Security Settings - Fax .....	225
Setting Up the Fax Utility - Windows.....	226
Setting Up Fax Features Using the Fax Utility - Mac .....	228
Setting Up Contacts and Contact Groups.....	229
Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel.....	230
Creating a Contact .....	230
Editing or Deleting a Contact .....	232
Creating a Contact Group .....	233
Editing or Deleting a Contact Group.....	235
Sending Faxes .....	236
Sending Faxes from the Product Control Panel.....	236
Sending a Fax Using the Control Panel .....	237
Fax Sending Options .....	239

Sending a Fax at a Specified Time .....	241
Dialing Fax Numbers from a Connected Telephone .....	242
Sending Faxes Using the Fax Utility - Windows .....	243
Sending Faxes Using the Fax Utility - Mac .....	245
<b>Receiving Faxes.....</b>	<b>248</b>
Fax Reception .....	248
Receiving Faxes Automatically .....	249
Receiving Faxes Manually.....	249
Receiving a Fax by Polling .....	250
Saving and Viewing Received Faxes .....	251
Checking Fax Status .....	253
Printing Fax Reports.....	253
Fax Report Options .....	254
<b>Refilling Ink and Replacing the Maintenance Box .....</b>	<b>255</b>
Ink Safety Precautions .....	255
Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels.....	257
Checking the Ink Levels on Your Product.....	258
Checking Maintenance Box Status on the LCD Screen.....	258
Checking Ink and Maintenance Box Levels - Windows .....	259
Checking Ink and Maintenance Box Levels - Mac .....	261
Disabling Special Offers with Windows .....	262
Purchase Epson Ink and Maintenance Box.....	263
Ink Bottle and Maintenance Box Part Numbers .....	263
Refilling the Ink Tanks .....	263
Maintenance Box Replacement .....	269
<b>Adjusting Print Quality.....</b>	<b>271</b>
Print Head Maintenance .....	271
Print Head Nozzle Check.....	271
Checking the Nozzles Using the Product Control Panel .....	272
Checking the Nozzles Using a Computer Utility .....	274
Print Head Cleaning .....	276
Cleaning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel .....	276
Cleaning the Print Head Using a Computer Utility.....	278

Power Cleaning .....	281
Power Cleaning Using the Product Control Panel.....	281
Power Cleaning Using a Computer Utility .....	282
Print Head Alignment .....	284
Aligning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel .....	284
Cleaning the Paper Guide .....	286
Cleaning the Print Head Path .....	287
Checking the Number of Sheets Fed.....	290
Checking the Number of Sheets on the LCD Screen.....	291
Checking the Sheet Counter - Windows .....	291
Checking the Sheet Counter - Mac.....	292
<b>Cleaning and Transporting Your Product .....</b>	<b>294</b>
Cleaning Your Product .....	294
Cleaning the Paper Rollers .....	298
Transporting Your Product .....	300
<b>Solving Problems .....</b>	<b>305</b>
Checking for Software Updates.....	305
Product Status Messages .....	306
Message Appears Prompting You to Reset Ink Levels.....	307
Running a Product Check .....	308
Resetting Control Panel Defaults .....	310
Solving Setup Problems .....	310
Product Does Not Turn On or Off.....	311
Noise After Filling the Ink.....	311
Software Installation Problems .....	311
Solving Network Problems .....	312
Product Cannot Connect to a Wireless Router or Access Point .....	312
Network Software Cannot Find Product on a Network.....	314
Product Does Not Appear in Mac Printer Window .....	315
Wireless Network Connection is Unstable on a Mac .....	315
Wired Network Connection Becomes Unstable .....	316
Cannot Print Over a Network .....	316
Cannot Scan Over a Network .....	318

Solving Copying Problems .....	319
Product Makes Noise, But Nothing Copies.....	320
Product Makes Noise When It Sits for a While.....	320
Copies Have Incorrect or Faint Colors.....	320
Position, Size, or Margins of Copies are Incorrect.....	321
Originals Do Not Feed From the Automatic Document Feeder.....	321
Solving Paper Problems .....	321
Paper Feeding Problems.....	322
Paper Jam Problems in the Front of the Product .....	322
Paper Jam Problems Inside the Product .....	324
Paper Jam Problems in the Rear Cover .....	326
Paper Jams in the Automatic Document Feeder .....	329
Paper Ejection Problems .....	332
Solving Problems Printing from a Computer.....	333
Nothing Prints .....	333
Product Icon Does Not Appear in Windows Taskbar .....	334
Printing is Slow .....	335
Printing Problems When Using the PostScript Printer Driver.....	336
Solving Page Layout and Content Problems .....	337
Inverted Image.....	337
Too Many Copies Print .....	338
Blank Pages Print.....	338
Incorrect Margins on Printout.....	339
Incorrect Characters Print.....	339
Incorrect Image Size or Position.....	340
Slanted Printout.....	341
Solving Print Quality Problems .....	341
White or Dark Lines in Printout .....	342
Blurry or Smeared Printout .....	343
Faint Printout or Printout Has Gaps .....	345
Grainy Printout.....	346
Incorrect Colors .....	347
Solving Scanning Problems .....	348

Scanning Software Does Not Operate Correctly .....	349
Cannot Start Epson Scan 2 .....	349
Scanning is Slow .....	350
Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems .....	350
Scanned Image Quality Problems .....	351
Image Consists of a Few Dots Only.....	352
Line of Dots Appears in All Scanned Images.....	353
Straight Lines in an Image Appear Crooked .....	353
Image Colors are Patchy at the Edges .....	354
Ripple Patterns Appear in an Image.....	354
Scanned Image Edges are Cropped .....	354
Characters are Not Recognized During Conversion to Editable Text (OCR).....	354
Streaks Appear in All Scanned Images .....	355
Solving Faxing Problems.....	355
Cannot Send or Receive Faxes.....	356
Cannot Receive Faxes with a Telephone Connected to Your Product .....	358
Fax Memory Full Error Appears.....	358
Fax Quality is Poor .....	359
Sent Fax is Received in an Incorrect Size .....	360
Received Fax is Not Printed .....	360
Uninstall Your Product Software.....	360
Uninstalling Product Software - Windows .....	360
Uninstalling Product Software - Mac.....	362
Where to Get Help.....	362
<b>Technical Specifications .....</b>	<b>364</b>
Windows System Requirements .....	364
Mac System Requirements .....	365
Paper Specifications .....	365
Printable Area Specifications .....	366
Scanning Specifications .....	368
Fax Specifications (ET-5170/ET-5180) .....	369
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Specifications .....	369
Ink Specifications .....	370

Dimension Specifications .....	370
Electrical Specifications .....	371
Environmental Specifications .....	371
Interface Specifications .....	372
Network Interface Specifications .....	372
Safety and Approvals Specifications .....	373
<b>Notices .....</b>	<b>375</b>
Important Safety Instructions.....	375
General Product Safety Instructions.....	375
LCD Screen Safety Instructions.....	377
Wireless Connection Safety Instructions .....	378
Telephone Equipment Safety Instructions .....	378
FCC Compliance Statement.....	379
Binding Arbitration and Class Waiver .....	381
Trademarks .....	384
Copyright Notice.....	385
libTIFF Software Acknowledgment.....	386
A Note Concerning Responsible Use of Copyrighted Materials.....	386
Default Delay Times for Power Management for Epson Products .....	386
Copyright Attribution .....	387



---

# **ET-5150/ET-5170/ET-5180 User's Guide**

Welcome to the ET-5150/ET-5170/ET-5180 *User's Guide*.

For a printable PDF copy of this guide, click [here](#).

---

# Product Basics

See these sections to learn about the basic features of your product.

[Using the Control Panel](#)

[Product Parts Locations](#)

[Using Power Saving Settings](#)

[Epson Connect Solutions for Smartphones, Tablets, and More](#)

[Using the Epson Smart Panel Mobile App](#)

[Voice-Activated Printing](#)

[Setting Up Printing on a Chromebook](#)

[Using AirPrint](#)

[Android Printing Using the Epson Print Enabler](#)

[Using Fire OS Printing](#)

[Using Windows 10 Mobile Printing](#)

[Using Epson Print and Scan App with Windows Tablets](#)

[Using the Mopria Print Service](#)

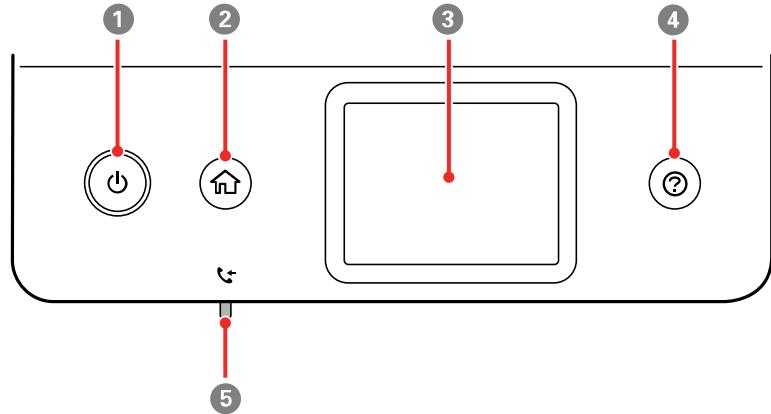
## Using the Control Panel

See these sections to learn about the control panel and select control panel settings.

[Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

## Control Panel Buttons and Lights



- 1 ⏪ power button and light
- 2 ⌂ home button
- 3 LCD screen
- 4 ⓘ help button
- 5 ⌁ received fax light (ET-5170/ET-5180)

[The LCD Screen](#)

[Status Icon Information](#)

[Navigating the LCD Screen](#)

[Entering Characters on the LCD Screen](#)

[Adjusting Control Panel Sounds](#)

[Adjusting the Screen Brightness](#)

[Changing LCD Screen Language](#)

[Viewing Animations](#)

[Selecting the Date and Time](#)

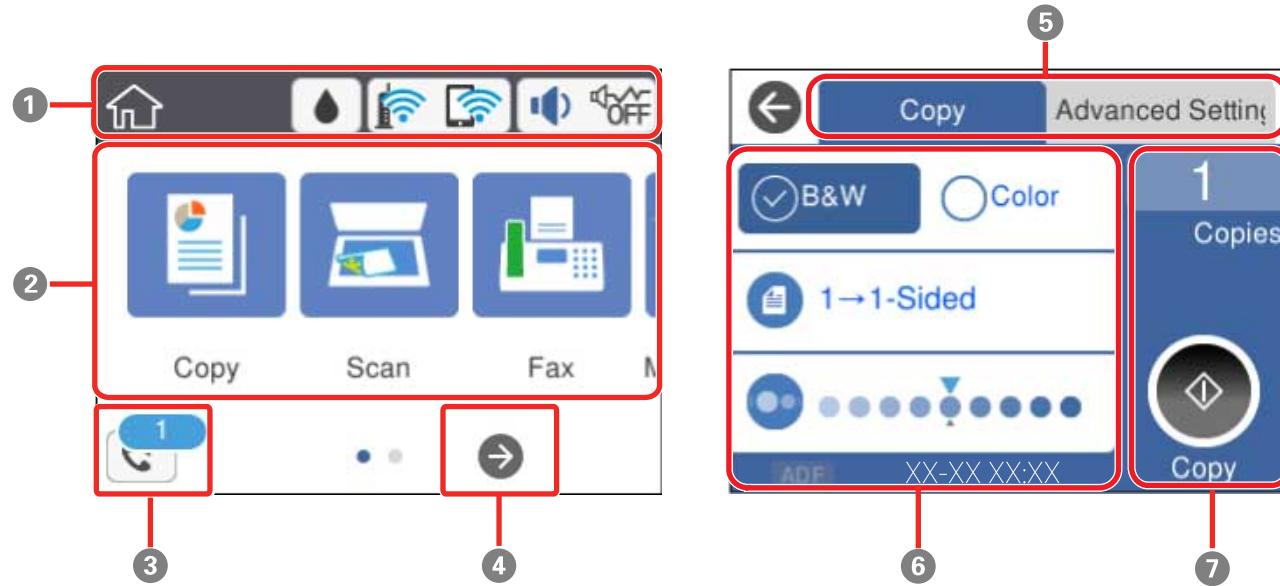
[Selecting Your Country or Region](#)

[Turning Off the Operation Time Out Setting](#)

[Preventing PC Connection via USB](#)

[Parent topic: Using the Control Panel](#)

## The LCD Screen



- 1 Displays various status information; select an icon to check its status or adjust its settings
- 2 Menu options
- 3 Select to display the **Fax Data Information** screen (ET-5170/ET-5180); the number displayed indicates the number of received faxes that are waiting to be read, printed, or saved.
- 4 Select to scroll the screen to the right
- 5 Select a tab to view different options and settings
- 6 Setting options
- 7 Select to perform an action

[Parent topic: Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

### Status Icon Information

Your product displays status icons on the LCD screen for certain product status conditions.

Icons	Description
	Displays the Supply Status screen.
	<p>Displays the network connection status; select the icon to set up or change your network connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> The product is not connected to a wired (Ethernet) network.</li> <li> The product is connected to a wired (Ethernet) network.</li> <li> The product is not connected to a wireless network.</li> <li> The product is searching for an SSID or experiencing a wireless network connection issue.</li> <li> The product is connected to a wireless network; the number of bars indicates the connection's signal strength.</li> <li> Wi-Fi Direct is not enabled.</li> <li> Wi-Fi Direct is enabled.</li> </ul>
	The <b>Quiet Mode</b> setting is enabled or disabled. Select the icon to change the setting. Depending on the selected paper type and print quality, when this feature is enabled noise is reduced during printing, but print speed may also be reduced.
	Displays the number of received faxes that are waiting to be read, printed, or saved.
	Displays the <b>Fax Data Information</b> screen.
	Displays additional information or instructions, such as loading paper or placing a document on the scanner; select the icon to display the information.
	There is a problem with the indicated setting; select the icon for information on resolving the problem.

**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

## Navigating the LCD Screen

Follow these guidelines to navigate and use the menus on the LCD screen.

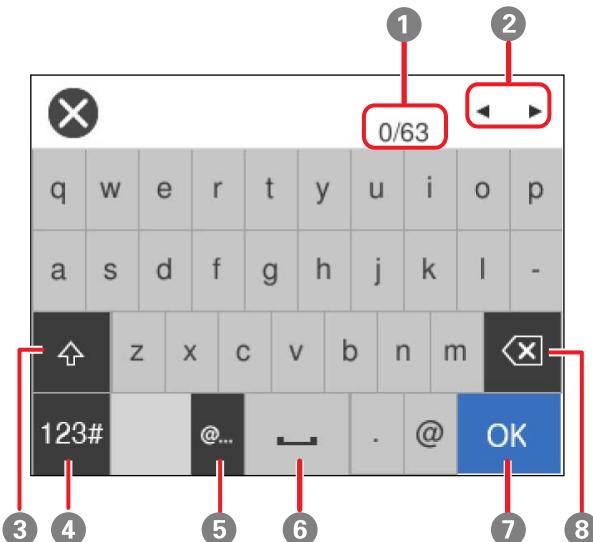
-  Tap or press the screen to select an item or icon
-  Flick the screen to scroll swiftly
-  Slide your finger across the screen to move items
-  Close or open your fingers across the screen to zoom in or zoom out on a preview image
- 

**Parent topic:** Control Panel Buttons and Lights

### Entering Characters on the LCD Screen

Follow these guidelines to enter characters for passwords and other settings.

#### On-screen keyboard



- 1 Displays the character count

- 2 Moves the cursor left or right
- 3 Switches between uppercase and lowercase characters
- 4 Switches between characters and numbers or symbols
- 5 Displays a list of common domain names to choose from
- 6 Enters a space
- 7 Select when you are finished
- 8 Deletes the previous character

#### Numeric keypad



- 1 Cancels entry and closes the keypad
- 2 Enters a dash
- 3 Select when you are finished
- 4 Enters a space
- 5 Clears the entered number
- 6 Deletes the previous number

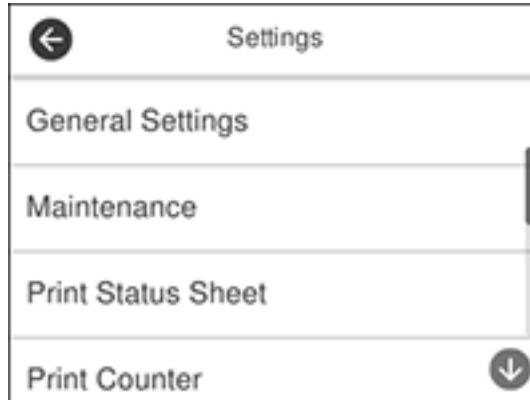
**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

## Adjusting Control Panel Sounds

You can adjust the sound level heard when you press buttons on the control panel.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Select **Sound**.
6. Do one of the following:
  - To mute all control panel sounds, turn the **Mute** setting off.
  - To select a specific sound level, select **Normal Mode** or **Quiet Mode**.

**Note:** You can also select the  icon on the home screen to switch between Normal Mode and Quiet Mode.

7. Scroll down and select **Button Press**.
8. Select the – or + icon to decrease or increase the sound.
9. Select **OK** to exit.

**Note:** You can also adjust the level for various product functions.

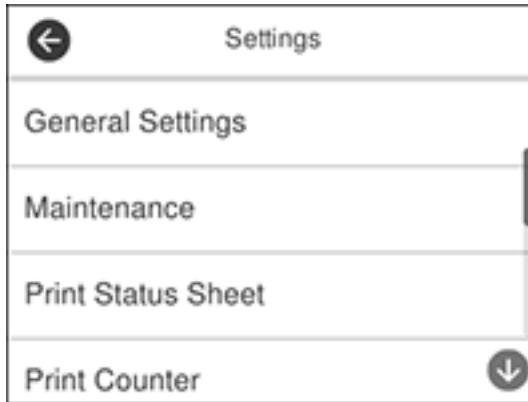
**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

## Adjusting the Screen Brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the LCD screen.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Select **LCD Brightness**.
6. Select the – or + icon to decrease or increase the brightness.
7. Select **OK** to exit.

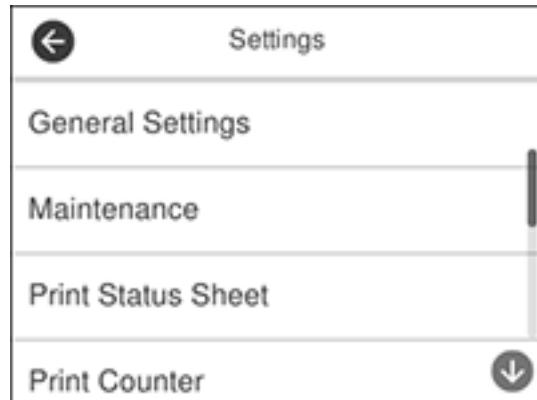
**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

## Changing LCD Screen Language

You can change the language used on the LCD screen.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Scroll down and select **Language**.
6. Select a language.
7. Press the  home button to exit.

**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

## Viewing Animations

You can view animations on the LCD screen to help guide you with a procedure or to troubleshoot a problem.

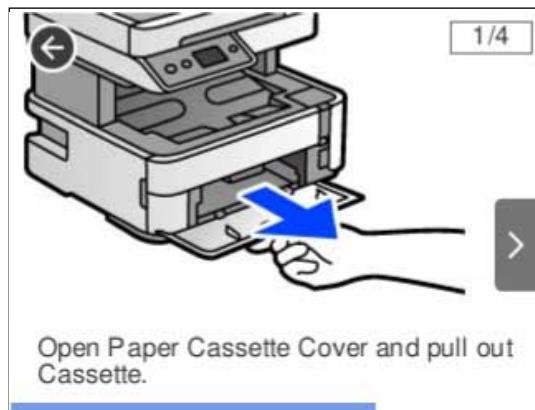
1. Press the  help button.

You see a screen like this:



2. Select **Troubleshooting** if you are experiencing a problem or **How To** to view instructions on common procedures.
3. Select a topic from the list of available topics and follow the on-screen instructions.

While viewing the topics, you may see screens like this:



- 1 Displays the current step number and the total number of steps
- 2 Select the left arrow to view the previous step

- 3 Indicates your overall progress through the animation
- 4 Select the right arrow to view the next step

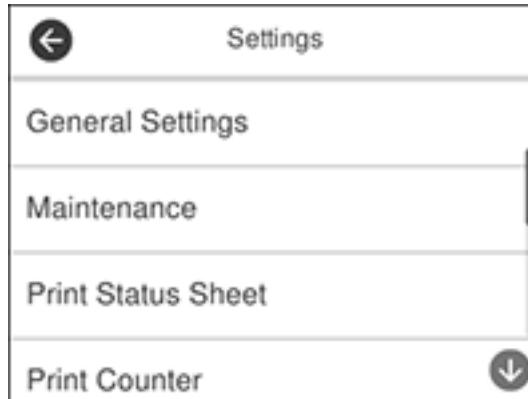
**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

### Selecting the Date and Time

Select the current date, time, and daylight saving phase in your area, and choose your preferred date and time format.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Select **Date/Time Settings**.
6. Select **Daylight Saving Time**.
7. Select the setting that applies to your area:
  - **Winter**: it is winter or your region does not use Daylight Saving Time (DST)

- **Summer:** it is spring or summer and your region uses Daylight Saving Time (DST)

**Note:** If your region uses Daylight Saving Time (DST), you must change this setting to match the season. When you change from **Winter** to **Summer**, your product automatically sets its clock ahead one hour. When you change from **Summer** to **Winter**, it sets its clock back one hour.

8. Select **Date/Time**.
9. Select the date format you want to use.
10. Use the numeric keypad to enter the current date, then select **OK**.
11. Select the time format you want to use.
12. Use the numeric keypad to enter the current time, then select **OK**.
13. Select **Time Difference**.
14. Use the + and - buttons to enter the time difference between your time zone and UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), then select **OK**.

**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

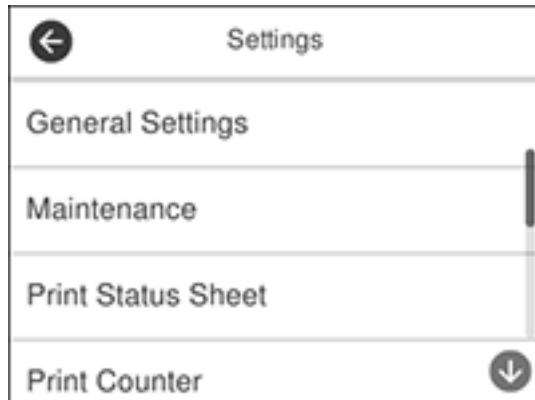
## Selecting Your Country or Region

Before using your product, select the country or region in which you are using your product.

**Note:** If you change the country or region, your fax settings return to their defaults and you must select them again. This setting can be locked by an administrator. If you cannot access or change this setting, contact your administrator for assistance.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Select **Country/Region**.
6. Scroll up or down, if necessary, and select your country or region.  
You see a confirmation screen.
7. If the setting is correct, select **Yes**. (If not, select **No** and retry.)

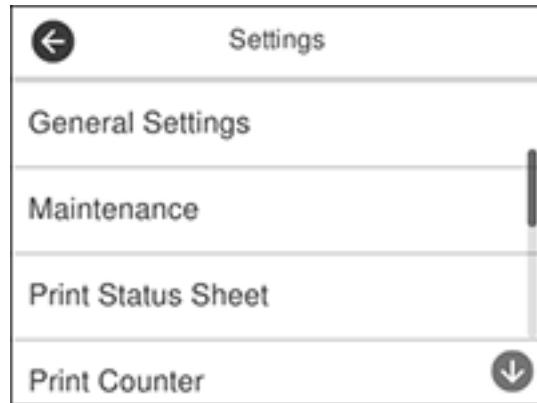
**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

### Turning Off the Operation Time Out Setting

The Operation Time Out setting causes the LCD screen to return to the Home screen after a few minutes of inactivity. This feature is enabled by default, but you can turn it off.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Scroll down and set **Operation Time Out** to **Off**.

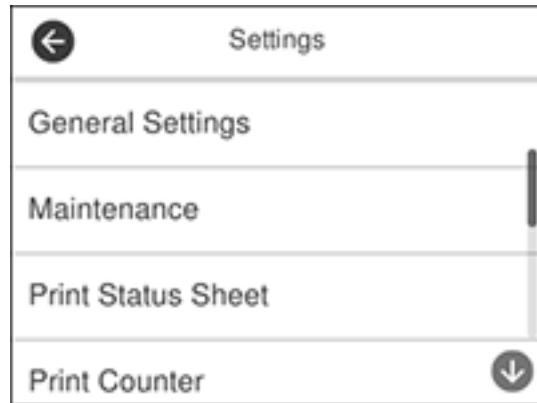
**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

#### **Preventing PC Connection via USB**

You can disable access to your product from a USB-connected computer. This restricts non-network access to the product.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Printer Settings**.
5. Scroll down and select **PC Connection via USB**.
6. Select **Disable**.

**Parent topic:** [Control Panel Buttons and Lights](#)

## Product Parts Locations

See these sections to identify the parts on your product.

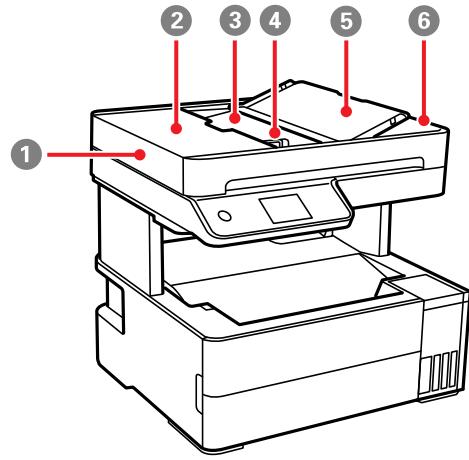
[Product Parts - Front](#)

[Product Parts - Inside](#)

[Product Parts - Back](#)

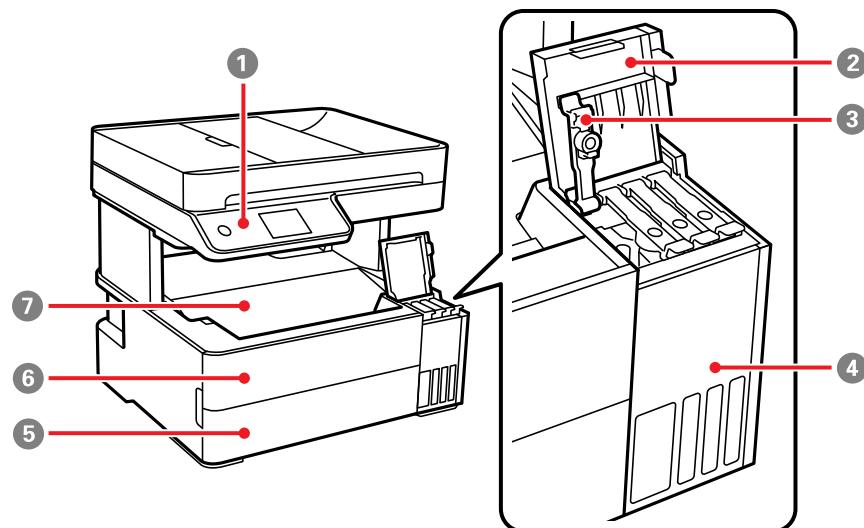
**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

## Product Parts - Front



- 1 Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
- 2 ADF cover
- 3 ADF input tray
- 4 ADF edge guide
- 5 ADF document support

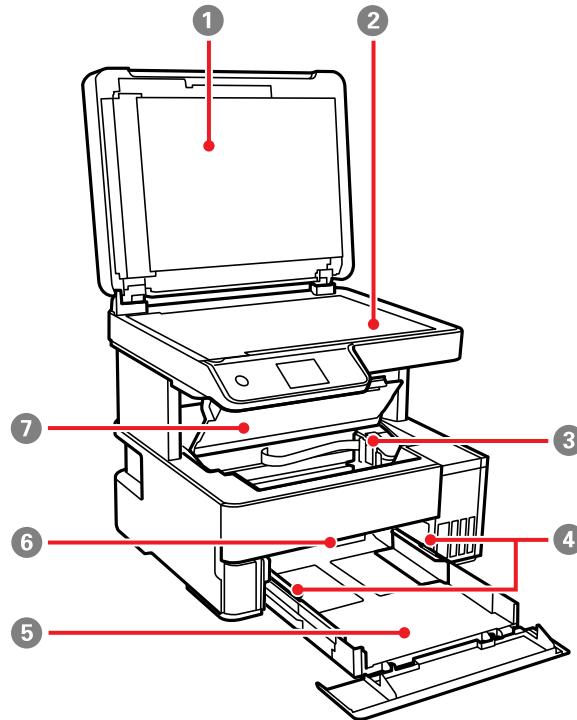
## 6 ADF output tray



- 1 Control panel
- 2 Ink tank cover
- 3 Ink tank cap
- 4 Ink tank
- 5 Paper cassette cover
- 6 Front cover
- 7 Output tray

**Parent topic:** [Product Parts Locations](#)

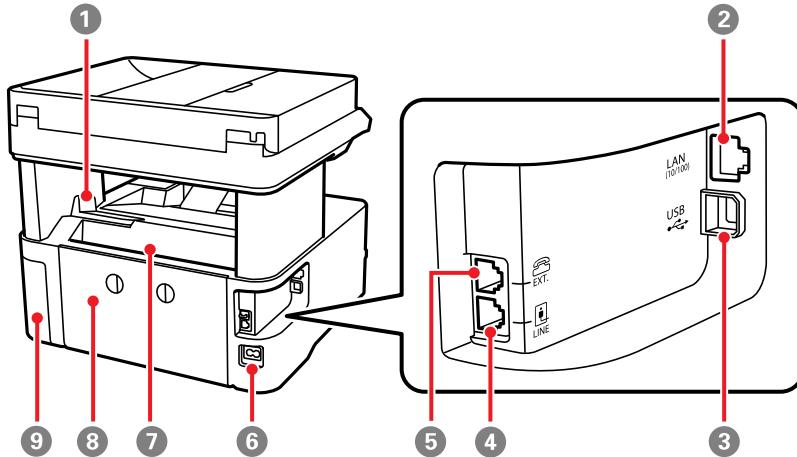
## Product Parts - Inside



- 1 Document cover
- 2 Scanner glass
- 3 Print head
- 4 Edge guide
- 5 Paper cassette
- 6 Output selector
- 7 Printer cover

**Parent topic:** [Product Parts Locations](#)

## Product Parts - Back



- 1 Output tray stopper
- 2 LAN port
- 3 USB port
- 4 LINE port (ET-5170/ET-5180)
- 5 EXT port (ET-5170/ET-5180)
- 6 AC inlet
- 7 Rear paper feed slot
- 8 Rear cover
- 9 Maintenance box cover

**Parent topic:** [Product Parts Locations](#)

## Using Power Saving Settings

Your product enters sleep mode automatically and turns off the LCD screen if it is not used for a period of time. You can make the time period shorter and select other options to save energy and resources.

[Changing the Sleep Timer Settings](#)

## [Changing the Power Off Timer Settings](#)

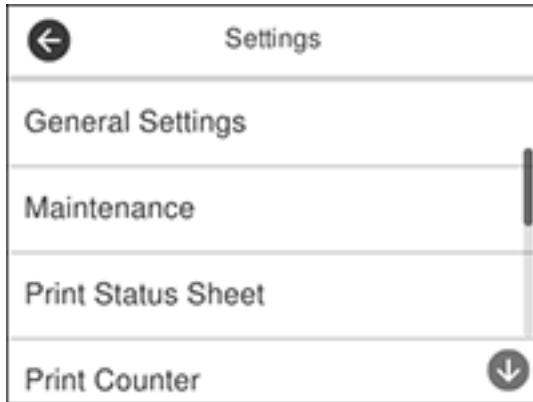
**Parent topic:** Product Basics

## Changing the Sleep Timer Settings

You can adjust the time period before your product enters sleep mode and turns off the LCD screen.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Select **Sleep Timer**.
6. Select the + and – icons to increase or decrease the number of minutes.

**Note:** You can also press the minutes field and use the displayed numeric keypad to enter the number of minutes.

7. Select **OK** when you are finished.

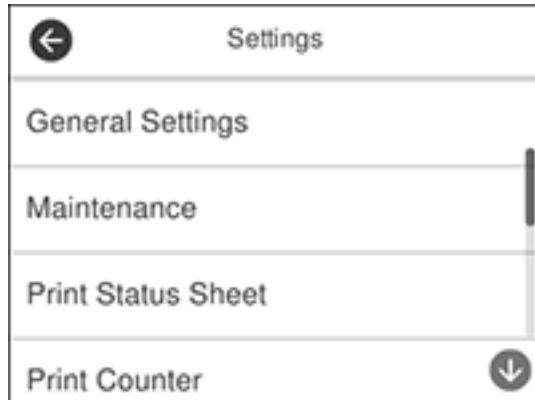
**Parent topic:** [Using Power Saving Settings](#)

## Changing the Power Off Timer Settings

You can have the product turn off automatically if it is not used for a specified period of time.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Basic Settings**.
5. Select **Power Off Timer**.
6. Select a time period between **30minutes** and **12h** (12 hours).

**Parent topic:** [Using Power Saving Settings](#)

## Epson Connect Solutions for Smartphones, Tablets, and More

Use your smartphone, tablet, or computer to print and scan documents, photos, emails, and web pages from your home, office, or even across the globe.

**Note:** If you are using your Epson product with the Windows 10 S operating system, you cannot use the software described in this section. You also cannot download and install any Epson product software from the Epson website for use with Windows 10 S; you must obtain software only from the Windows Store.

Print from anywhere with these Epson Connect solutions:

- Epson Email Print
- Epson Remote Print

Scan and send a file as an email or upload it to an online service directly from your Epson product with Epson Scan to Cloud.

[Setting Up Epson Connect Services](#)

[Using Epson Email Print](#)

[Using Epson Remote Print](#)

[Using Epson Scan to Cloud](#)

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related tasks**

[Using AirPrint](#)

[Android Printing Using the Epson Print Enabler](#)

[Using Fire OS Printing](#)

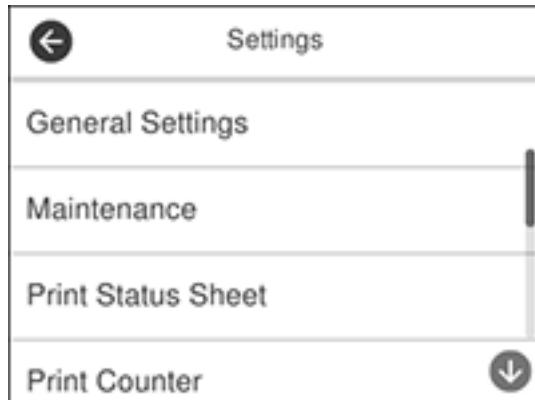
[Using Windows 10 Mobile Printing](#)

## Setting Up Epson Connect Services

If you did not activate your product's email address for use with Epson Connect when you set up your product, you can activate it using the product control panel.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Select **Web Service Settings**.
5. Select **Epson Connect Services**.
6. Select **Register**.
7. Follow the instructions on the screen to activate your product's email address.

**Parent topic:** Epson Connect Solutions for Smartphones, Tablets, and More

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using Epson Email Print

With Epson Email Print, you can print from any device that can send email, such as your smartphone, tablet, or laptop. Just activate your product's unique email address. When you want to print, attach a PDF, Microsoft Office document, or photo to an email and send it to your product. Both the email and the attachments will print automatically.

1. Connect your product to your network. See the link below.
2. If you did not already set up Email Print when you installed your product software, see the link below to use your product control panel to activate your unique email address. Or visit [epson.com/connect](http://epson.com/connect) (U.S) or [epson.ca/connect](http://epson.ca/connect) (Canada) to learn more about Email Print, create your Epson Connect account, and register your product to the Epson Connect service.

3. Now you are ready to send and print emails to your product's Email Print address.

**Note:** Go to [epsonconnect.com](#) and log into your Epson Connect account to personalize your product's email, adjust print settings, and set up other Epson Connect services.

**Parent topic:** [Epson Connect Solutions for Smartphones, Tablets, and More](#)

**Related tasks**

[Setting Up Epson Connect Services](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using Epson Remote Print

With Epson Remote Print software, you can print from your laptop or desktop computer to an Epson Email-enabled product anywhere in the world.

1. Connect your Epson product to your wireless network. See the link below.
2. If you did not already set up an Epson Connect account when you installed your product software, visit [epsonconnect.com](#) to create your account and register your product to the Epson Connect service.

**Note:** Make a note of your product's email address.

3. Visit [epsonconnect.com](#) to learn more about Remote Print and how to download the Remote Print Driver software.
4. Download and install the Remote Print software.
5. Enter the email address and optional access key of your Epson product during Remote Print setup.
6. Now you are ready to print remotely. Select the print command in your laptop or desktop computer application and choose the Remote Print option for your Epson product.

**Parent topic:** [Epson Connect Solutions for Smartphones, Tablets, and More](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using Epson Scan to Cloud

The Epson Scan to Cloud service allows you to scan and send a file as an email or upload it to an online service directly from your Epson product. Register an email address or online services such as Box, DropBox, Evernote, or Google Drive with your Epson Connect account.

1. Connect your Epson product to your network. See the link below.
2. If you did not already set up an Epson Connect account when you installed your product software, visit [epsonconnect.com](http://epsonconnect.com) to create your account and register your product to the Epson Connect service.

**Note:** Make a note of your product's email address and password.

3. Visit [epsonconnect.com](http://epsonconnect.com) to sign into your account with the email address and password you selected.
4. Select your product, select **Scan to Cloud**, and select **Destination List**.
5. Click **Add**, then follow the instructions on the screen to create your destination list.
6. Now you are ready to use Scan to Cloud. Select the setting for scanning to Scan to Cloud on your Epson product control panel.

**Parent topic:** [Epson Connect Solutions for Smartphones, Tablets, and More](#)

### Related topics

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using the Epson Smart Panel Mobile App

Use this free Apple and Android app to set up your Epson product and then print, copy, or scan with your networked Epson product. Epson Smart Panel also lets you check ink levels and product status.

1. Visit [epson.com/connect](http://epson.com/connect) (U.S) or [epson.ca/connect](http://epson.ca/connect) (Canada) to learn more about Epson Smart Panel and check the compatibility of your mobile device.
2. Download Epson Smart Panel from the Apple App Store or Google Play.
3. Connect your mobile device to the wireless network that you want to connect your product to or to the same wireless network as your product (if your product is already set up).
4. Do one of the following:
  - If you haven't set up your product, open Epson Smart Panel and follow the instructions to set up your product.

- If your product is already set up, open Epson Smart Panel and select your Epson product, if necessary.

Now you are ready to print, copy, or scan with your mobile device and your Epson product.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Voice-Activated Printing

Take advantage of voice-activated, hands-free printing from your Epson product with Alexa and Google Assistant. Depending on which voice assistant you use, you can ask your product to print photos, calendars, recipes, photo props, and more. [Click here](#) for more information.

1. Connect your product to your network. See the link below.
2. Set up your product's email address for use with Epson Connect. See the link below to activate it from the product control panel.
3. [Click here](#) for instructions on how to set up your product and voice assistant to use the voice-activated printing feature.

Now you are ready to print with your voice and your Epson product.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related tasks**

[Setting Up Epson Connect Services](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Setting Up Printing on a Chromebook

Your Epson printer supports native printing on Chromebook, allowing you to print from a Chromebook without drivers or cables.

For directions on setting up your printer, visit [Setting Up Your Epson Printer on Your Chromebook](#) (U.S.) or [Setting Up Your Epson Printer on Your Chromebook](#) (Canada).

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

## Using AirPrint

AirPrint enables instant wireless printing from iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac without the need to install drivers or download software.



**Note:** If you disabled paper configuration messages on your product control panel, you cannot use AirPrint. See the link below to enable the messages, if necessary.

1. Load paper in your product.
2. Set up your product for wireless printing. See the link below.
3. Connect your Apple device to the same wireless network that your product is using.
4. Print from your device to your product.

**Note:** For details, see the AirPrint page on the Apple website.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related references**

[Paper Source Settings Options](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Android Printing Using the Epson Print Enabler

You can wirelessly print your documents, emails, photos, and web pages right from your Android phone or tablet (Android v4.4 or later). With a few taps, your Android device will discover your nearby Epson product and print.

1. Connect your Epson product to your wireless network. See the link below.
2. On your Android device, download the Epson Print Enabler plug-in from Google Play.
3. Go to **Settings** on your Android device, select **Printing**, and enable the Epson plug-in, if necessary.
4. Connect your Android device to the same wireless network as your product.

5. Now you are ready to print. From an Android application such as Chrome or Gmail, tap the menu icon and print whatever is on the screen.

**Note:** If you do not see your product, tap **All Printers** and select your product.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using Fire OS Printing

You can wirelessly print from Amazon Fire tablets and phones to your nearby networked Epson product. There is no software to download, no drivers to install, and no cables to connect. With just a few taps in Email, Calendar, Contacts, and WPS Office, you can send whatever is on the screen to an Epson product.

1. Connect your Epson product to your wireless network. See the link below.
2. Connect your Amazon device to the same wireless network as your product.
3. Now you are ready to print. From your Amazon application, tap the print option and select your product to print whatever is on the screen.

**Note:** If you see a message telling you that a plug-in is required, tap **OK** and tap **Download**. If your Amazon Fire product uses Fire OS 5 and above, your device automatically uses the built-in Mopria Print Service app to print.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using Windows 10 Mobile Printing

You can wirelessly print from Windows 10 Mobile tablets and phones to your nearby networked Epson product. There is no software to download, no drivers to install, and no cables to connect. Look for the print option in your Windows 10 application to send whatever is on the screen to an Epson product.

1. Connect your Epson product to your wireless network. See the link below.
2. Connect your Windows 10 Mobile device to the same wireless network as your product.

3. Now you are ready to print. From your Windows 10 application, tap the print option and select your product to print whatever is on the screen.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using Epson Print and Scan App with Windows Tablets

You can use this free app to print photos and scan from your Windows (Windows 8 or higher) Surface RT or Pro tablet with networked Epson products. The Epson Print and Scan app allows you to scan and capture images right to your tablet or to Microsoft OneDrive.

**Note:** The Epson Print and Scan app does not support Windows 10 Mobile printing and does not supply scanning functions for products without scanners.

1. Connect your Epson product to your wireless network. See the link below.
2. Download the Epson Print and Scan app from the Microsoft Windows Store.
3. Connect your Windows tablet to the same wireless network as your product.
4. Open the Epson Print and Scan app and select your Epson product.

Now you are ready to print photos or scan.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Using the Mopria Print Service

You can use the Mopria Print Service to print from your Android phone or tablet (Android v4.4 or later) to your Epson product or any Mopria-certified product from other manufacturers. You can download the Mopria Print Service from Google Play.

**Note:** For details on the Mopria Print Service, [click here](#) (U.S.) or [click here](#) (Canada).

1. Connect your Epson product to your wireless network. See the link below.
2. On your Android device, download the Mopria Print Service app from Google Play.

**Note:** On some Samsung Galaxy devices, Mopria may come preinstalled.

3. Go to **Settings** on your Android device, select **Printing**, and enable the Mopria Print Service, if necessary.
4. Connect your Android device to the same wireless network as your product.
5. Now you are ready to print. From an Android application such as Chrome or Gmail, tap the menu icon and select **Print**. Then select **All printers**, select your Epson product, adjust your print settings, and print.

**Parent topic:** [Product Basics](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

---

# Wi-Fi or Wired Networking

See these sections to use your product on a Wi-Fi or wired network.

[Network Security Recommendations](#)

[Wi-Fi Infrastructure Mode Setup](#)

[Wi-Fi Direct Mode Setup](#)

[Wi-Fi Protected Setup \(WPS\)](#)

[Printing a Network Status Sheet](#)

[Printing a Network Connection Report](#)

[Changing or Updating Network Connections](#)

## Network Security Recommendations

To help deter unauthorized access to your product over a network, you should protect your network environment using appropriate security measures.

Security measures such as these can help deter threats such as loss of user data, use of telephone and fax lines, and other intrusions:

- **Enable security on your wireless LAN**

Enable the appropriate security on the wireless LAN you plan to use with your product. Network security such as a network password can deter interception of traffic over the wireless LAN. Your router may already have a default password enabled by your Internet service provider (ISP). See your ISP and router documentation for instructions on how to change the default password and better secure your network.

- **Connect your product only to a network protected by a firewall**

Connecting your product directly to the Internet may leave it vulnerable to security threats. Instead, connect it to a router or other network connection protected by a firewall. Your router may already have a firewall set up by your Internet service provider; check with your ISP for confirmation. For best results, set up and use a private IP address for your network connection.

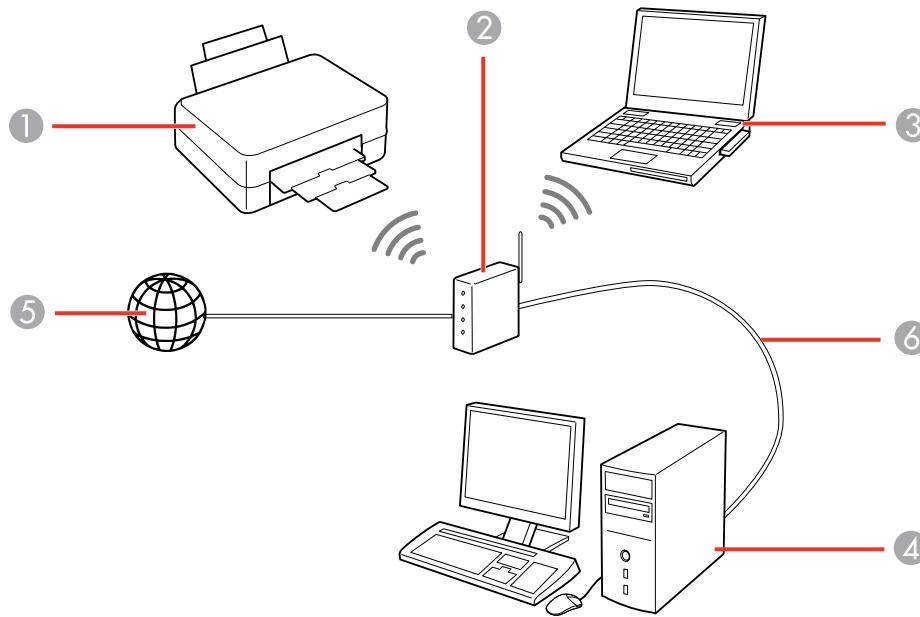
- **Change the default administrator password on your product**

If your product has an option to set an administrator password, change the default administrator password to deter access by unauthorized users to personal data stored on your product, such as IDs, passwords, and contact lists.

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Wi-Fi Infrastructure Mode Setup

You can set up your product to communicate with your computer using a wireless router or access point. The wireless router or access point can be connected to your computer over a wireless or wired network.



- 1 Epson product
- 2 Wireless router or access point
- 3 Computer with a wireless interface
- 4 Computer
- 5 Internet
- 6 Ethernet cable (used only for wired connection to the wireless router or access point)

[Selecting Wireless Network Settings from the Control Panel](#)

[Setting Up Wireless Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet](#)

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Selecting Wireless Network Settings from the Control Panel

You can select or change wireless network settings using your product control panel.

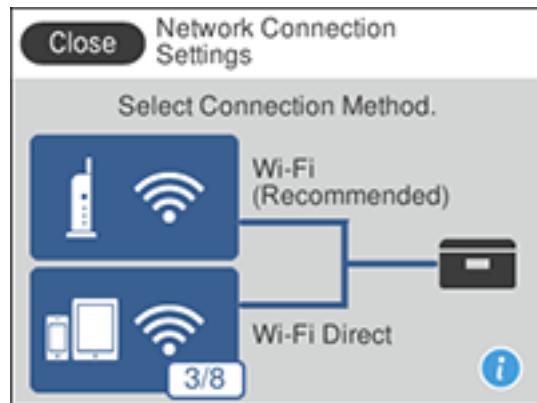
To install your product on a wireless network, follow the instructions on the *Start Here* sheet and install the necessary software by downloading it from the Epson website. The installer program guides you through network setup.

**Note:** Breakdown or repair of this product may cause loss of network data and settings. Epson is not responsible for backing up or recovering data and settings during or after the warranty period. We recommend that you make your own backup or print out your network data and settings.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.

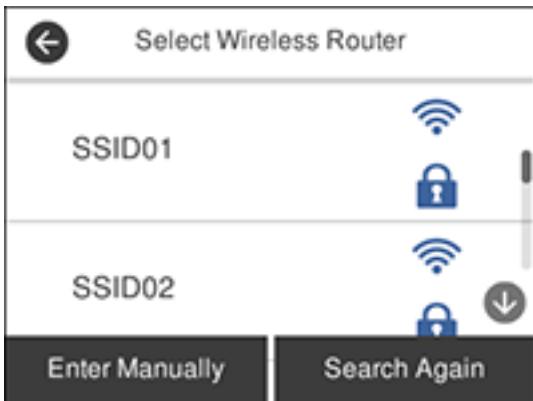
2. Select the  icon.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Wi-Fi (Recommended)**.
4. Select **Start Setup** or **Change Settings**.
5. Select **Wi-Fi Setup Wizard**.

You see a screen like this:



6. Select the name of your wireless network or select **Enter Manually** to enter the name manually. If you are entering the name manually, use the displayed keyboard to enter your network name and enable the password setting to enter the password.



**Note:** The network name and password are case sensitive. Be sure to correctly enter uppercase and lowercase letters, and numeric or special characters.

- To move the cursor, press the left or right arrow.

- To change the case of letters, select .
  - To delete the previous character, select .
  - To enter numbers and symbols, select **123#**.
  - To enter a space, select .
  - To finish entering your network name or password, select **OK**.
7. Select the **Enter Password** field and use the displayed keyboard to enter your network password.



8. When you are finished, confirm the displayed network settings and select **Start Setup** to begin setup.
9. If setup was successful, select **Print Check Report** to print a network setup report or select **OK** to exit.
10. Press the  home button to return to the Home screen.

The  Wi-Fi icon displayed on the LCD screen indicates your wireless connection status. If the product is not connected to the network, you may have selected the wrong network name or entered the password incorrectly. Repeat these steps to try again.

If you are printing from a computer, make sure you installed the network software as described on the *Start Here* sheet.

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi Infrastructure Mode Setup](#)

## **Related references**

[Status Icon Information](#)

## **Related tasks**

[Printing a Network Status Sheet](#)

[Entering Characters on the LCD Screen](#)

## **Setting Up Wireless Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet**

You can use the Epson Smart Panel app to connect your Epson product to a wireless network or connect your device directly to the product. Epson Smart Panel is available on iOS and Android devices.

Make sure you have the following:

- A Bluetooth-enabled device that is connected to a wireless network
- The Epson Smart Panel app installed on the device
- The wireless network name (SSID) and password

**Note:** Your device must be close enough to the product to create and maintain a Bluetooth connection.

1. Make sure the product is turned on and is ready to print.

**Note:** You must perform initial setup and ink installation before setting up wireless printing.

2. Open the Epson Smart Panel app on your device.
3. Do one of the following:
  - If the app automatically recognizes the product, follow the on-screen instructions to set up the wireless connection.
  - If the app does not automatically recognize the product, select the + icon and continue with the next step.
4. On the next screen, select **Start setting up** and follow the on-screen instructions.

**Note:** If your product is not listed, move closer to the product and try again. If the product is still not shown, connect your printer to the wireless network using the control panel and then select **Connect Smartphone to Product Already Connected to Wi-Fi** in the Epson Smart Panel app and follow the on-screen instructions. See the link below for wireless setup instructions.

Your product is now connected to a wireless network and set up for use with the Epson Smart Panel app.

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi Infrastructure Mode Setup](#)

**Related tasks**

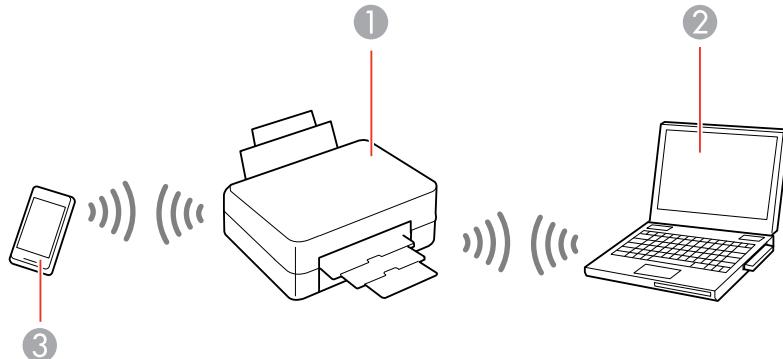
[Using the Epson Smart Panel Mobile App](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Wi-Fi Direct Mode Setup

You can set up your product to communicate directly with your computer or another device without requiring a wireless router or access point. In Wi-Fi Direct Mode, the product itself acts as a network access point for up to 8 devices.



- 1 Epson product
- 2 Computer with a wireless interface
- 3 Other wireless device

[Connecting to a Mobile Device](#)

[Modifying the Wi-Fi Direct Network Name or Password](#)

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

**Related references**

[Status Icon Information](#)

## Connecting to a Mobile Device

You can connect a mobile device directly to the printer without a wireless router or access point.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.



2. Select the  icon.
3. Select **Wi-Fi Direct**.
4. Select **Start Setup**.
5. Select **Other Methods**.
6. Select **Other OS Devices**.
7. Use your device to select the Wi-Fi network name (SSID) displayed on the LCD screen, then enter the password shown.
8. Open the Epson Smart Panel app on your device and select the printer displayed on the LCD screen.
9. Select **Complete** on the LCD screen.

**Note:** For devices that have been connected to the printer before, select the network name (SSID) on the device's Wi-Fi screen to connect them again. If you are using an iOS device, you can also connect by scanning the QR code with the camera app on your device and follow the instructions on your device.

The  Wi-Fi Direct icon displayed on the LCD screen indicates if Wi-Fi Direct is enabled on the product.

If you are printing from a computer, make sure you installed the network software as described on the *Start Here* sheet.

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi Direct Mode Setup](#)

## Modifying the Wi-Fi Direct Network Name or Password

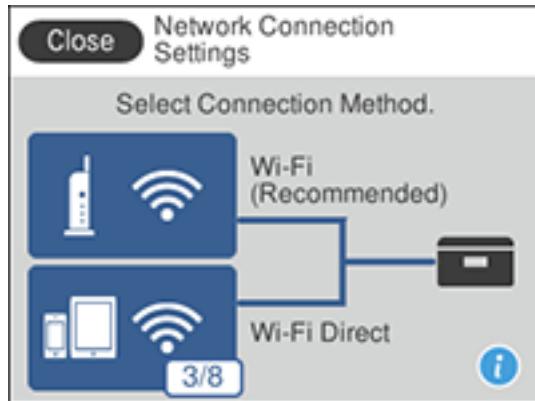
You can modify the Wi-Fi Direct name and password to create a more descriptive and secure Wi-Fi Direct network.

**Note:** If you are printing from a computer, make sure you installed the network software as described on the *Start Here* sheet.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.

2. Select the  icon.

You see this screen:



3. Select **Wi-Fi Direct**.
4. Select **Start Setup**.
5. Select the  icon.
6. Press the down arrow and do one of the following:
  - To change the Wi-Fi Direct network name, select **Change Network Name** and select **Yes**. Select **Change**, then use the on-screen keyboard to enter the new network name.
  - To change the Wi-Fi Direct password, select **Change Password** and select **Yes**. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter your new Wi-Fi Direct password.

**Note:** Your password must be at least 8 and no more than 22 characters long.

**Note:** If you have already connected devices or computers to your product via Wi-Fi Direct, they will be disconnected when you change the network name or password.

7. When entering your Wi-Fi Direct network name or password, do the following:
  - To move the cursor, press the left or right arrow.

- To change the case of letters, select .
  - To delete the previous character, select .
  - To enter numbers and symbols, select **123#**.
  - To enter a space, select .
  - To finish entering your network name or password, select **OK**.
8. Use your computer or wireless device to select the Wi-Fi network name (SSID) displayed on the LCD screen, then enter the password shown.

**Note:** Make a note of the SSID and password that appear.

9. Press the  home button to return to the Home screen.

Computers and wireless devices can now access the product using the new network name and password.

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi Direct Mode Setup](#)

## Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)

If your network uses a WPS-enabled wireless router or access point, you can quickly connect your product to the network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS).

**Note:** To check if your router is WPS-enabled, look for a button labeled **WPS** on your router or access point. If there is no hardware button, there may be a virtual WPS button in the software for the device. Check your network product documentation for details.

[Using WPS to Connect to a Network](#)

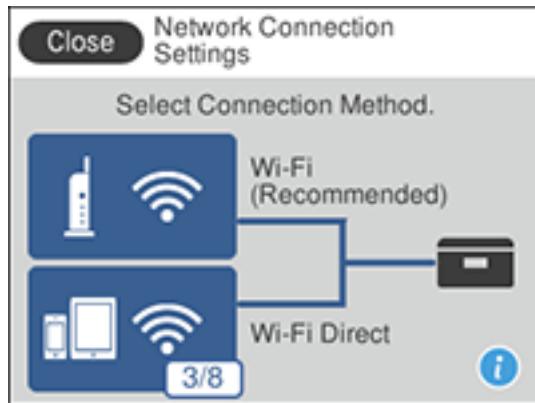
**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

### Using WPS to Connect to a Network

If you have a WPS-enabled wireless router or access point, you can use Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) to connect your product to the network.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select the  icon.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Wi-Fi (Recommended)**.
4. Select **Start Setup or Change Settings**.
5. Select **Push Button Setup (WPS)**.
6. Follow the instructions on the LCD screen to complete WPS setup.

**Note:** Make sure you press **Start Setup** within two minutes of activating WPS on your router.

7. Press the  home button to return to the Home screen.

The  Wi-Fi icon displayed on the LCD screen indicates your wireless connection status. If the product is not connected to the network, repeat these steps to try again.

If you are printing from a computer, make sure you installed the network software as described on the *Start Here* sheet.

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi Protected Setup \(WPS\)](#)

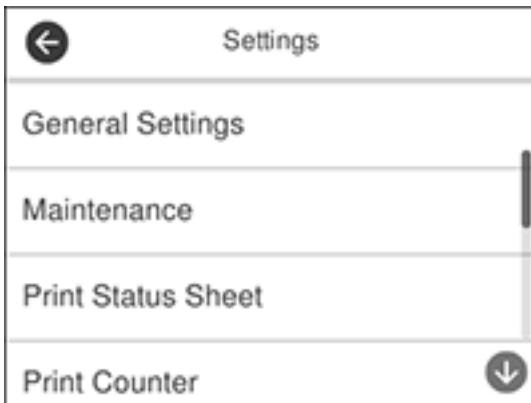
## Printing a Network Status Sheet

You can print a network status sheet to help you determine the causes of any problems you may have using your product on a network.

1. Make sure a few sheets of plain paper are loaded in the cassette.
2. Press the  home button, if necessary.

3. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Select **General Settings**.
5. Select **Network Settings**.
6. Select **Network Status**.
7. Select **Print Status Sheet**.
8. Select **Print** to print the status sheet.

Examine the settings shown on the network status sheet to diagnose any problems you have.

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

**Related tasks**

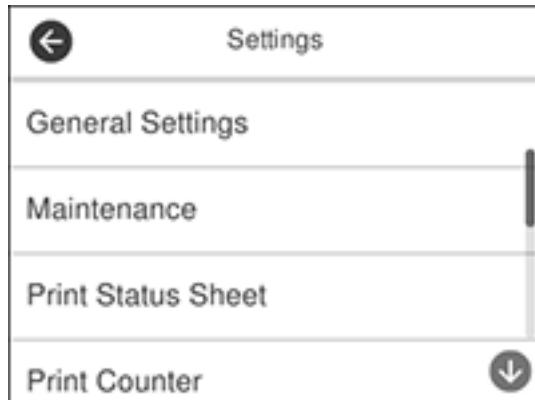
[Accessing the Web Config Utility](#)

## Printing a Network Connection Report

You can print a network connection report to view solutions to any problems you may have using your product on a network.

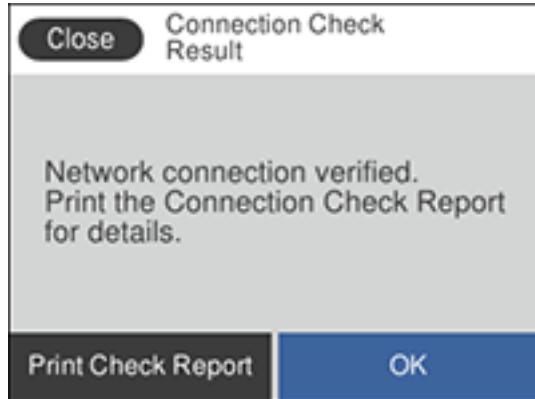
1. Make sure a few sheets of plain paper are loaded in the cassette.
2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Select **Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Select **General Settings**.
5. Select **Network Settings**.
6. Select **Connection Check**.

You see a screen like this:



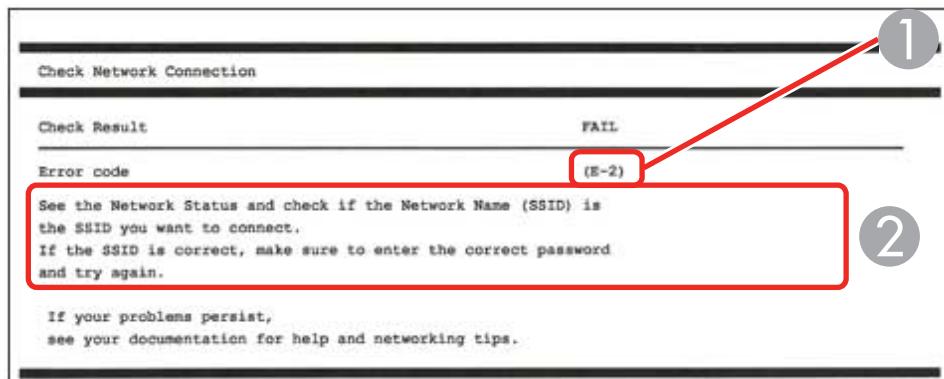
7. Select **Print Check Report** to print the network connection report.  
Examine any error codes and solutions shown on the network connection report.

## Network Connection Report Codes and Messages

Parent topic: [Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

### Network Connection Report Codes and Messages

Check the error codes and messages on the network connection report to solve problems you may encounter with network connections. The tables here list solutions to problems based on the error codes and messages that may appear on the top of the report.



1 Error code

2 Message

**Note:** Error codes and messages listed here may not all apply to your product.

#### Error Codes and Messages

Error code and message	Solution
<b>E-1</b> Confirm that the network cable is connected and network devices such as hub, router, or access point are turned on.	Make sure your router, access point, and/or hub are turned on, and the network cable is securely connected to your device and to your product. If you are trying to set up Wi-Fi, remove the network cable and set up Wi-Fi again. Ethernet and Wi-Fi cannot be connected at the same time.

Error code and message	Solution
<p><b>E-2, E-3, or E-7</b></p> <p>No wireless network names (SSID) found. Confirm that the router/access point is turned on and the wireless network (SSID) is set up correctly. Contact your network administrator for assistance.</p> <p>No wireless network names (SSID) found. Confirm that the wireless network name (SSID) of the PC you wish to connect is set up correctly. Contact your network administrator for assistance.</p> <p>Entered security key/password does not match the one set for your router/access point. Confirm security key/password. Contact your network administrator for assistance.</p>	<p>Check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure your router or access point is turned on, and is correctly connected to your computer or network device.</li> <li>• Turn off the router or access point, wait about 10 seconds, and turn it on again.</li> <li>• Move your product closer to your router or access point, and remove any obstacles between them. Also move your product away from devices such as wireless phones or microwaves.</li> <li>• Confirm that the SSID shown on the network connection report matches the label on your router or access point. Also make sure your SSID uses only ASCII characters and symbols, or your product cannot display the SSID correctly.</li> <li>• If you are trying to connect using the WPS push button method, make sure your router or access point supports it.</li> <li>• If you are using a network password, check the label on your router or access point to confirm that you are using the correct password, or check with your network administrator or router/access point documentation.</li> <li>• If you are connecting to a smart device that generates an SSID, check the device documentation for the SSID and password you should use.</li> <li>• If your wireless connection suddenly disconnects, and another smart device was added to the network using a WPS push button method or your network was set up using a non-WPS push button method, try downloading and installing your product software again.</li> </ul>

Error code and message	Solution
<b>E-5</b> Security mode (e.g. WEP, WPA) does not match the current setting of the printer. Confirm security mode. Contact your network administrator for assistance.	<p>If the security on your router or access point is not one of the following types, change the type of security on your router or access point and reset your product's network settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WEP-64 bit (40 bit)</li> <li>• WEP-128 bit (104 bit)</li> <li>• WPA PSK (TKIP/AES); also known as WPA Personal</li> <li>• WPA2 PSK (TKIP/AES); also known as WPA2 Personal</li> <li>• WPA (TKIP/AES)</li> <li>• WPA2 (TKIP/AES)</li> </ul> <p>Also make sure you are connecting to the 2.4GHz band on your network and using the password for that band.</p>
<b>E-6</b> MAC address of your printer may be filtered. Check whether your router/access point has restrictions such as MAC address filtering. See the documentation of the router/access point or contact your network administrator for assistance.	<p>If your router or access point has MAC address filtering enabled, register your product's MAC address so it is not filtered. Locate the MAC address on the network connection report and check your router or access point documentation for instructions.</p> <p>If your router or access point is using shared authentication with WEP security, confirm that you are using the correct authentication key and index.</p> <p>If your router or access point limits the number of connected devices, raise the connection limit. See your router or access point documentation for instructions.</p>
<b>E-8</b> Incorrect IP address is assigned to the printer. Confirm IP address setup of the network device (hub, router, or access point). Contact your network administrator for assistance.	<p>If your product's <b>Obtain IP Address</b> setting is set to <b>Auto</b>, enable DHCP on your router or access point. If it is set to <b>Manual</b>, the IP address may be out of range or on a different network segment; set a valid IP address using your product control panel or the Web Config utility.</p> <p>You can also try turning off your product and the router or access point, waiting about 10 seconds, and turning them on again.</p>

Error code and message	Solution
<b>E-9</b> Confirm the connection and network setup of the PC or other device. Connection using the EpsonNet Setup is available. Contact your network administrator for assistance.	<p>Make sure your computer or network device are turned on. Also make sure that you can access the Internet and other devices on the same network from the devices you are trying to connect to your product.</p> <p>If you still cannot connect to your product, turn off your router or access point, wait about 10 seconds, and turn it on again. Download and install your product software again to reset your network settings.</p>
<b>E-10</b> Confirm IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway setup. Connection using the EpsonNet Setup is available. Contact your network administrator for assistance.	<p>Make sure other devices on the network are turned on and do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your product's <b>Obtain IP Address</b> setting is set to <b>Manual</b>, check the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway addresses on the network connection report to see if they are correct. If not, correct the settings.</li> <li>• If DHCP is enabled, set your product's <b>Obtain IP Address</b> setting to <b>Auto</b>. If you want to use the DHCP-assigned address as a static address, set the <b>Obtain IP Address</b> setting to <b>Manual</b>, enter the product's IP address as listed on the network connection report, and set the subnet mask to 255.255.255.0.</li> </ul> <p>If you still cannot connect to your product, turn off your router or access point, wait about 10 seconds, and turn it on again.</p>
<b>E-11</b> Setup is incomplete. Confirm default gateway setup. Connection using the EpsonNet Setup is available. Contact your network administrator for assistance.	<p>If you set your product's <b>TCP/IP Setup</b> setting to <b>Manual</b>, check that the default gateway address listed on the network connection report is correct. Also turn on the device that is set as the default gateway.</p>

Error code and message	Solution
<p><b>E-12</b></p> <p>Confirm the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Entered security key/password is correct</li> <li>-Index of the security key/password is set to the first number</li> <li>-IP address, subnet mask, or default gateway setup is correct</li> </ul> <p>Contact your network administrator for assistance.</p>	<p>Make sure other devices on the network are turned on and do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway addresses are correct, if you are entering them manually.</li> <li>• Confirm that the subnet mask and default gateway addresses for other devices are the same.</li> <li>• Make sure the IP address does not conflict with other devices.</li> </ul> <p>If you still cannot connect to your product, do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn off your router or access point, wait about 10 seconds, and turn it on again.</li> <li>• Download and install your product software again to reset your network settings.</li> <li>• If your router or access point uses WEP security with several registered passwords, make sure that the first registered password is set on your product.</li> </ul>
<p><b>E-13</b></p> <p>Confirm the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Entered security key/password is correct</li> <li>-Index of the security key/password is set to the first number</li> <li>-Connection and network setup of the PC or other device is correct</li> </ul> <p>Contact your network administrator for assistance.</p>	<p>Make sure your router, access point, and/or hub are turned on. Also make sure the TCP/IP setup on your router, access point, and/or hub is not set manually; this may cause your product's network settings to differ from the manually set up devices.</p> <p>If you still cannot connect to your product, do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn off your router or access point, wait about 10 seconds, and turn it on again.</li> <li>• Download and install your product software again to reset your network settings.</li> <li>• If your router or access point uses WEP security with several registered passwords, make sure that the first registered password is set on your product.</li> </ul>

## Network Environment Messages

Message	Solution
The Wi-Fi environment needs to be improved. Turn the wireless router off and then turn it on. If the connection does not improve, see the documentation for the wireless router.	Move your product closer to your router or access point, and remove any obstacles between them. Then turn off your router or access point, wait about 10 seconds, and turn it back on again. If you still cannot connect to your product, check the documentation that came with your router or access point for solutions.
*No more devices can be connected. Disconnect one of the connected devices if you want to add another one.	You can connect up to 8 computers or other devices to your product using a Wi-Fi Direct (Simple AP) connection. If you want to add another device, disconnect an existing connected device first.
The same SSID as Wi-Fi Direct exists in the environment. Change the Wi-Fi Direct SSID if you cannot connect a smart device to the printer.	Change the Wi-Fi Direct SSID.

**Parent topic:** [Printing a Network Connection Report](#)

## Changing or Updating Network Connections

See these sections to change or update how your product connects to a network.

[Accessing the Web Config Utility](#)

[Changing a USB Connection to a Wi-Fi Connection](#)

[Changing a Wi-Fi Connection to a Wired Network Connection](#)

[Connecting to a New Wi-Fi Router](#)

[Disabling Wi-Fi Features](#)

**Parent topic:** [Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Accessing the Web Config Utility

You can select your product's network settings and confirm its operating status using a web browser. You do this by accessing your product's built-in Web Config utility from a computer or other device that is connected to the same network as your product.

**Note:** You can also access the Web Config utility from the product information area in the Epson Smart Panel app.

1. Print a network status sheet.
2. Locate the IP address for your product that is listed on the network status sheet.
3. On a computer or other device connected to the same network as your product, open a web browser.
4. Enter your product's IP address into the address bar.
5. On the first visit to the Web Config utility, you will be prompted to set an administrator password. The administrator password is required to access the full capabilities of the Web Config utility.

You see the available Web Config utility options.

**Parent topic:** [Changing or Updating Network Connections](#)

**Related tasks**

[Printing a Network Status Sheet](#)

## Changing a USB Connection to a Wi-Fi Connection

If you have already connected your product to your computer using a USB connection, you can change to a Wi-Fi connection.

1. Disconnect the USB cable from your product.
2. Uninstall your product software.
3. Download and install your product software from the Epson website using the instructions on the *Start Here* sheet.

**Parent topic:** [Changing or Updating Network Connections](#)

**Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

## Changing a Wi-Fi Connection to a Wired Network Connection

If you have already connected your product to your computer wirelessly, you can change to a wired network connection if necessary.

1. Disable your product's Wi-Fi features.
2. Connect one end of an Ethernet network cable to the product's **LAN** port.
3. Connect the other end to any available LAN port on your router or access point.

4. Uninstall your product software.
5. Download and install your product software from the Epson website.
6. Follow the on-screen instructions to install the software.
7. When you see the Select Your Connection screen, select **Wired network connection**.
8. If you see a Select Setup Option screen, select **Set up printer for the first time**.
9. Continue following the rest of the on-screen instructions.

**Parent topic:** [Changing or Updating Network Connections](#)

**Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

**Related tasks**

[Disabling Wi-Fi Features](#)

## Connecting to a New Wi-Fi Router

If you change the wireless router you have been using on your network, you need to update your product's Wi-Fi connection to the new router.

1. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows:** Uninstall your product software.
  - **Mac:** Go to the next step.
2. Download and install your product software from the Epson website using the instructions on the *Start Here* sheet.

**Parent topic:** [Changing or Updating Network Connections](#)

**Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

## Disabling Wi-Fi Features

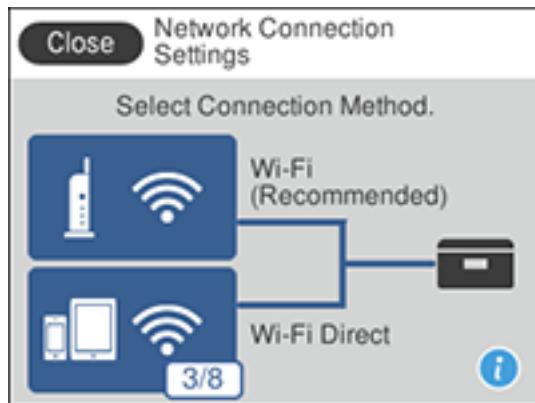
You may need to disable your product's Wi-Fi features if you change your network connection type or need to solve a problem with your network connection.

**Note:** Before disabling Wi-Fi features, make a note of your product's SSID (network name) and password, and any network settings selected for the Epson Connect services you may use.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.

2. Select the  |  icon.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Wi-Fi (Recommended)**.
4. Select **Change Settings**.
5. Select **Others**.
6. Select **Disable Wi-Fi**.
7. Select **Start Setup** to disable Wi-Fi.
8. When finished, press the  home button to return to the Home screen.

**Parent topic:** [Changing or Updating Network Connections](#)

---

# Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing

Before enabling PCL or PostScript printing on your product, make sure you have installed the software as described on the *Start Here* sheet (ET-5180).

To download the PCL or PostScript drivers, visit [epson.com/support](http://epson.com/support) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](http://epson.ca/support) (Canada) and select your product.

[Installing the PCL Driver - Windows](#)

[Installing the PostScript \(PS3\) Printer Software - Windows](#)

[Installing the PostScript \(PS3\) Printer Software - Mac](#)

[Selecting PDL \(Page Description Language\) Settings](#)

[Selecting Printer Language and Interface Settings](#)

[Printing a PCL or PS3 \(PostScript\) Status Sheet](#)

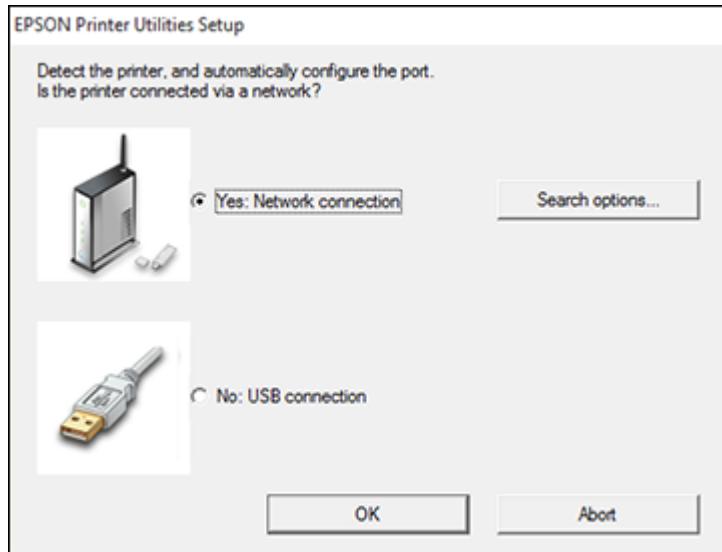
## Installing the PCL Driver - Windows

The PCL driver can be installed on a Windows computer. Before enabling PCL printing on your product, make sure you have installed the software as described on the *Start Here* sheet.

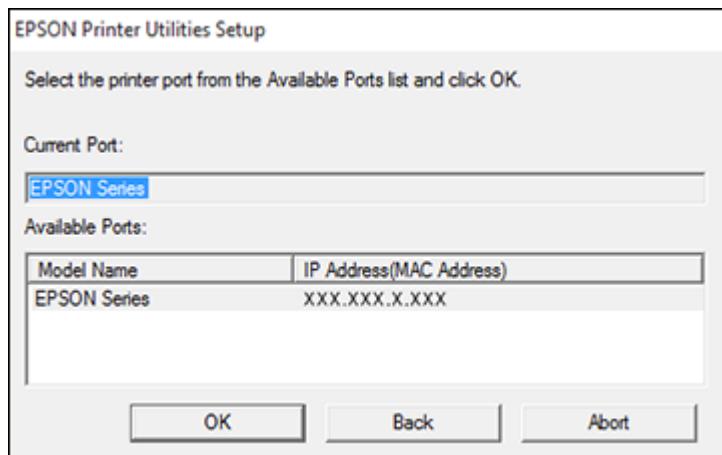
**Note:** Make sure your product is turned on and connected to the same network as your computer before installing the printer software. Depending on your model, not all printer languages may be supported.

1. To download the PCL file, visit [epson.com/support](http://epson.com/support) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](http://epson.ca/support) (Canada) and select your product.
2. After downloading the installer file, double-click the downloaded file to install the software.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions until you see this screen:



4. If your product is already connected to a network, select **Yes: Network connection** and click **OK**.  
You see a screen like this:



5. Make sure your product is selected, and click **OK**.  
A message appears when the installation is complete.
6. If your product is not connected to a network, select **No: USB connection** and click **OK**. Connect a USB cable to your product's USB port, and connect the other end of the cable to your computer.  
A message appears when the installation is complete.

**Parent topic:** [Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing](#)

## Installing the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Windows

If you did not install the standard Epson printer software, you need to install the PostScript (PS3) printer software before you can adjust the print settings and print to your network printer.

**Note:** Make sure your product is turned on and connected to the same network as your computer before installing the printer software.

1. To download the PS3/Postscript software package, visit [epson.com/support](#) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](#) (Canada) and select your product.
2. After downloading the installer file, double-click the downloaded file to install the software.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Click **Accept**.
5. Click **Install**.
6. Click **Next** and follow the on-screen instructions.

**Parent topic:** [Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing](#)

## Installing the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Mac

If you did not install the standard Epson printer software, you need to install the PostScript (PS3) printer software before you can adjust the print settings and print to your network printer.

**Note:** Make sure your product is turned on and connected to the same network as your computer before installing the printer software.

1. To download the PS3 Postscript software package, visit [epson.com/support](#) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](#) (Canada) and select your product.
2. After downloading the installer file, double-click the downloaded file to install the software.

3. Double-click **EPSON**.
4. Click **Continue** on the next two screens.
5. Click **Agree**.
6. Click **Install**.
7. If necessary, enter the administrator password.
8. Click **Start** and follow the on-screen instructions.

**Parent topic:** [Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing](#)

## Selecting PDL (Page Description Language) Settings

You can select settings for PCL and PostScript printing using the control panel on the product.

**Note:** These settings can be locked by an administrator. If you cannot access these settings, contact your administrator for assistance.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Printer Settings > PDL Print Configuration**.
3. Select one of the options, then select the PDL print configuration options you want to use.
4. When you are finished, press the  home to return to the Home screen.

[PDL Print Configuration Options](#)

**Parent topic:** [Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing](#)

## PDL Print Configuration Options

Select the **PDL Print Configuration** options you want to use for PCL or PostScript printing.

**Common Settings** menu

Option	Available settings	Description
<b>Paper Size</b>	Various sizes	Sets the default paper size for PCL or PostScript printing
<b>Paper Type</b>	Various paper types	Sets the default paper type for PCL or PostScript printing

Option	Available settings	Description
Orientation	Portrait	Sets the default orientation for PCL or PostScript printing
	Landscape	
Quality	Draft	Sets the quality for PCL or PostScript printing
	Standard	
	Best	
Ink Save Mode	On/Off	Saves ink by reducing print density
Print Order	Last Page on Top	Starts printing from the first page of a file
	First Page on Top	Starts printing from the last page of a file
Number of Copies	1 to 999	Selects the number of copies to print
Binding Margin	Left Edge	Specifies the binding edge for double-sided documents
	Top Edge	
Auto Paper Ejection	On/Off	Ejects paper automatically when printing is stopped during a print job
2-Sided Printing	On/Off	Selects duplex printing

### PCL Menu

Option	Available settings	Description
Font Source	Resident	Uses a font preinstalled on the printer
	Download	Uses a font you have downloaded
Font Number	0 to 111	Selects the default font number for the default font source
Pitch	0.44 to 99.99 cpi	Selects the default font pitch if the font is scalable and fixed-pitch (availability depends on font source and number settings)

Option	Available settings	Description
<b>Height</b>	4.00 to 999.75 pt	Selects the default font height if the font is scalable and proportional (availability depends on font source and number settings)
<b>Symbol Set</b>	Various	Selects the default symbol set. If the selected font is not available for the selected symbol set, the font source and number are replaced with <b>IBM-US</b> (the default setting).
<b>Form</b>	5 to 128 lines	Sets the number of lines for the selected paper size and orientation. Changes the line spacing (VMI) stored in the printer. Later changes in page size or orientation cause changes in the <b>Form</b> value based on the stored VMI.
<b>CR Function</b>	<b>CR</b>	Selects the line feed command when printing with a driver from a specific operating system
	<b>CR+LF</b>	
<b>LF Function</b>	<b>LF</b>	
	<b>CR+LF</b>	
<b>Paper Source Assign</b>	<b>4</b>	Makes the paper source select command compatible with HP LaserJet 4
	<b>4K</b>	Makes the paper source select command compatible with HP LaserJet 4000, 5000, and 8000
	<b>5S</b>	Makes the paper source select command compatible with HP LaserJet 5S

### PS Menu

Option	Available settings	Description
<b>Error Sheet</b>	<b>On/Off</b>	Prints a sheet showing the status when errors occur during PostScript or PDF printing
<b>Coloration</b>	<b>Color</b>	Selects the color mode for PostScript printing
	<b>Mono</b>	

Option	Available settings	Description
<b>Binary</b>	On/Off	Enable when printing files that contain binary images (available when the product is connected to the network). Allows you to print binary images even if the driver is set to ASCII.
<b>PDF Page Size</b>	Various sizes	Selects the paper size when printing a PDF file. If <b>Auto</b> is selected, the paper size is determined based on the size of the first page.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting PDL \(Page Description Language\) Settings](#)

## Selecting Printer Language and Interface Settings

You can select printer language and interface settings using the control panel on the product.

**Note:** These settings can be locked by an administrator. If you cannot access these settings, contact your administrator for assistance.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Printer Settings**.
3. Select the printing language and interface options for your connection type.
4. When you are finished, press the  home button to return to the Home screen.

### Printing Language and Interface Options

**Parent topic:** [Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing](#)

## Printing Language and Interface Options

Select the printing language and interface options you want to use.

### Main Printer Settings menu

Option	Available settings	Description
<b>PC Connection via USB</b>	<b>Enable</b>	Select whether to allow USB communication with the product
	<b>Disable</b>	

Option	Available settings	Description
<b>USB I/F Timeout Setting</b>	0.5 to 300 seconds	Specify the length of time before ending USB communication from a computer using the PCL or PostScript driver. This setting is necessary to avoid endless USB communication.

#### Printing Language menu

Option	Available settings	Description
<b>USB</b>	Auto	Select the language for the USB or network interface
<b>Network</b>	PCL PS PDF	

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Printer Language and Interface Settings](#)

## Printing a PCL or PS3 (PostScript) Status Sheet

You can print a PCL or PS3 (PostScript) status sheet to confirm the current font information.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > Printer Status/Print > Print Status Sheet**.
3. Select **PS Font List** or **PCL Font List**.
4. Select **Print** to print the status sheet.

**Parent topic:** [Enabling PCL or PostScript Printing](#)

---

# Loading Paper

Before you print, load paper for the type of printing you will do.

[Loading Paper in the Cassette](#)

[Loading Paper in the Rear Paper Feed Slot](#)

[Paper Loading Capacity](#)

[Double-sided Printing Capacity](#)

[Compatible Epson Papers](#)

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software](#)

[Selecting the Paper Settings - Control Panel](#)

[Selecting the Default Paper Source Settings](#)

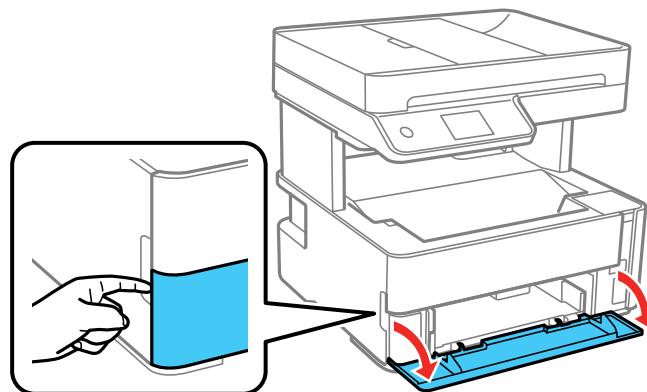
[Selecting the Universal Print Settings](#)

## Loading Paper in the Cassette

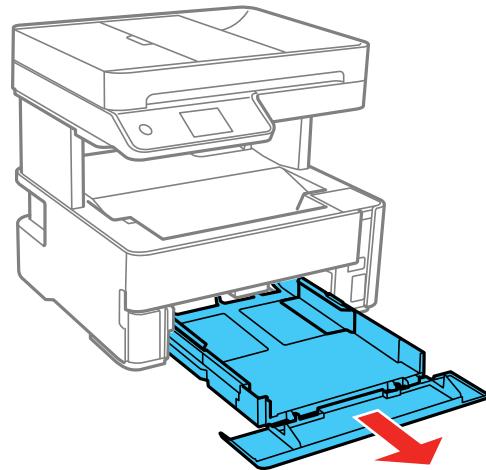
You can load paper up to this size in the paper cassette: Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm]).

**Note:** Before loading paper, make sure your product is not currently printing, scanning, or copying.

1. Open the paper cassette cover.

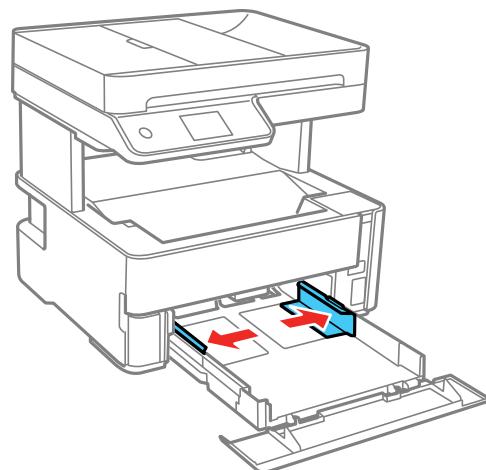


2. Pull out the paper cassette until it stops.



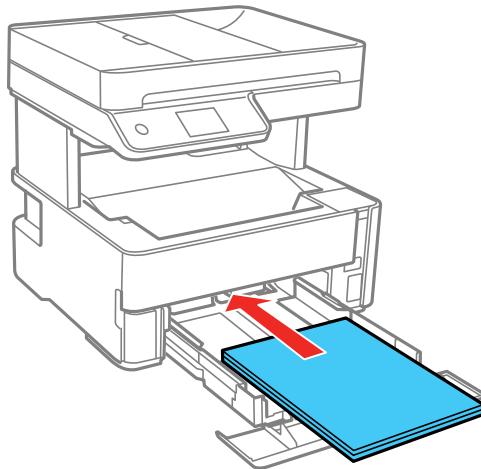
**Note:** You cannot remove the paper cassette.

3. Slide the edge guides outward.



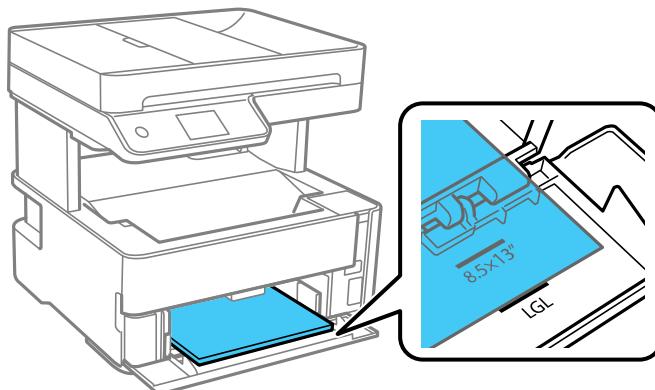
4. Do one of the following:

- Insert paper into the cassette with the printable side facedown and slide it in until it stops.

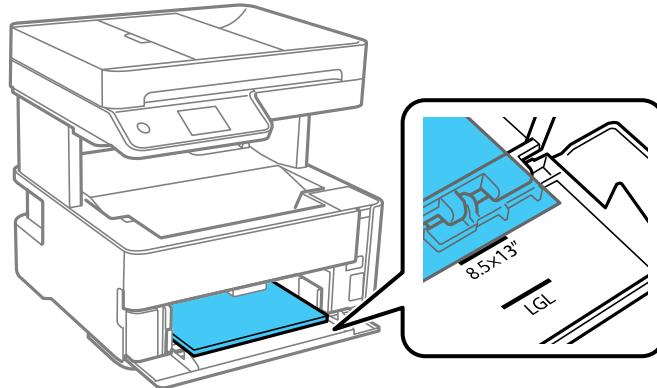


**Note:** Make sure the paper is loaded against the rear of the cassette.

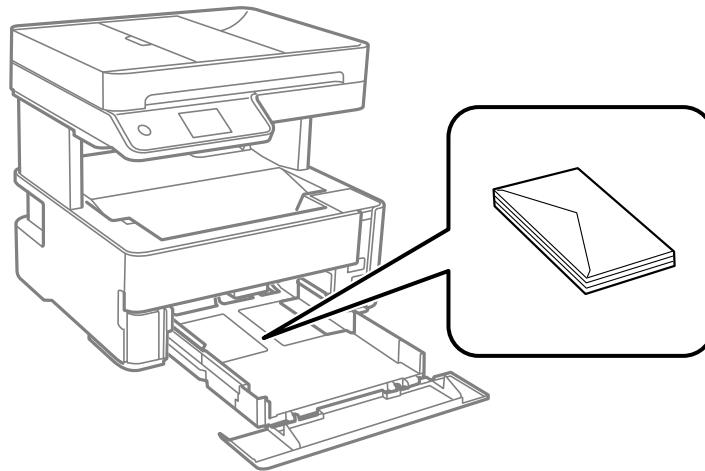
- For legal-size paper, load paper using the guide line as shown.



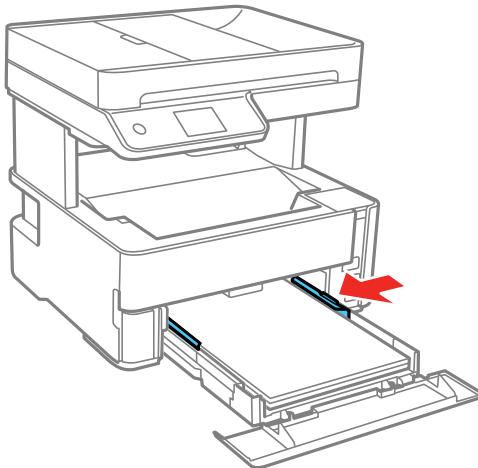
- For 8.5 × 13 inches (216 × 330 mm) paper, load paper using the guide line as shown.



- Insert up to 10 envelopes with the printable side facedown and flap edge left, as shown.



5. Slide the edge guides against the paper, but not too tightly.



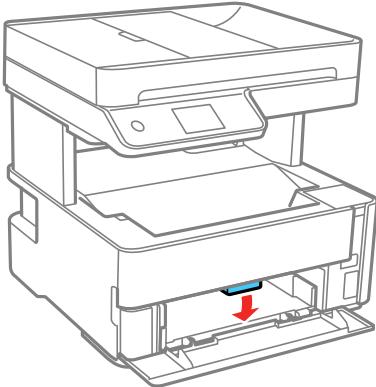
**Note:** Make sure the paper fits under the tabs on the edge guides.

6. Slide the cassette back into the product until it stops.
7. Select **Settings > General Settings > Printer Settings > Paper Source Settings > Paper Setting** to select the size and type of paper you loaded. If your paper size is not displayed, select **User Defined**.

**Note:** If you are printing on letterhead, select **Letterhead** as the paper type. If you select **Letterhead** and you are printing on paper that is smaller than the printer driver setting, make sure you select the correct paper size setting or the printer may print beyond the edges of the paper. Two-sided printing is not available on letterhead paper.

8. Do one of the following:
  - Close the paper cassette cover.

- If you loaded envelopes, thick paper, or business cards, lower the output selector to eject paper to the front of the printer and leave the paper cassette cover open.



**Note:** Do not remove or insert the paper cassette during printing.

Always follow these paper loading guidelines:

- Load only the recommended number of sheets.
- Load paper short edge first and printable side facedown.
- Make sure the paper fits under the tabs on the edge guides and does not stick out from the rear of the cassette.
- Do not load an envelope that is curled, folded, or too thin.
- Do not load windowed envelopes or envelopes with adhesive surfaces on the flaps.
- If you have trouble loading a stack of envelopes, press each envelope flat before loading it or load one envelope at a time.
- If print quality declines when printing multiple envelopes, try loading one envelope at a time.
- Load letterhead or pre-printed paper top edge first.
- Check the paper package for any additional loading instructions.

**Parent topic:** [Loading Paper](#)

**Related references**

[Paper Loading Capacity](#)

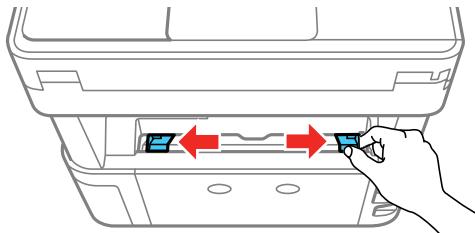
## Related tasks

[Selecting the Default Paper Source Settings](#)

# Loading Paper in the Rear Paper Feed Slot

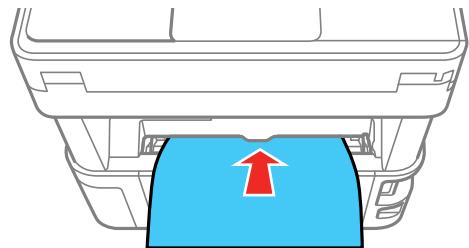
You can print documents on a variety of paper types and sizes from the rear paper feed slot.

1. Slide the edge guides out all the way.

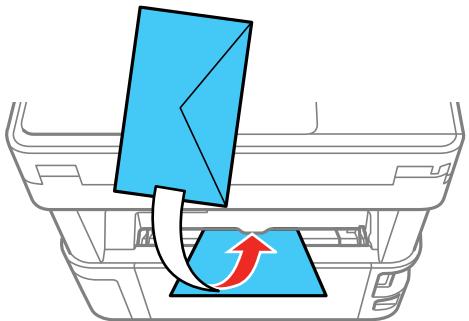


2. Do one of the following:

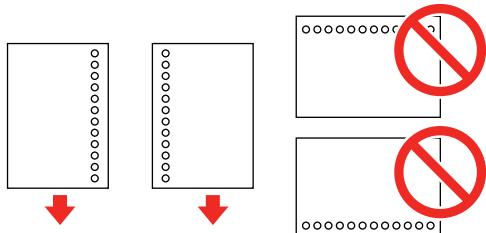
- Insert one sheet of paper printable side up and short edge first, in the center of the rear paper feed slot.



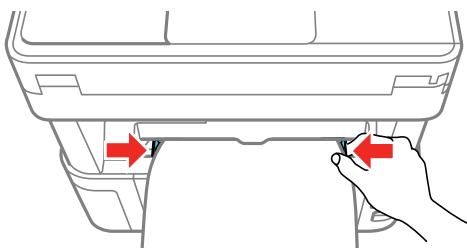
- Load one envelope in the center of the rear paper feed slot. Load it printable side up and flap edge left.



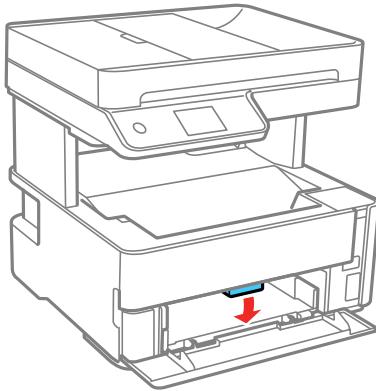
- Load one sheet of loose-leaf or other paper with holes facing as shown. You can load one sheet at a time in only these sizes: Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm]), A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm]), 8.5 × 13 inches (216 × 330 mm), or Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm]).



3. Slide the edge guides against the paper, but not too tightly.



4. If you loaded envelopes, thick paper, photo paper, or business cards, open the paper cassette cover, lower the output selector to eject paper to the front of the printer, and leave the paper cassette cover open.



5. Select **Settings > General Settings > Printer Settings > Paper Source Settings > Paper Setting** to select the size and type of paper you loaded. If your paper size is not displayed, select **User Defined**.

**Note:** If you are printing on letterhead, select **Letterhead** as the paper type. If you select **Letterhead** and you are printing on paper that is smaller than the printer driver setting, make sure you select the correct paper size setting or the printer may print beyond the edges of the paper. Two-sided printing is not available on letterhead paper.

Always follow these paper loading guidelines:

- Load only one sheet or envelope at a time.
- Load paper short edge first and printable side up.
- Load letterhead or pre-printed paper top edge first.
- If you have trouble loading an envelope, press it flat before loading it.
- Do not load an envelope that is curled, folded, or too thin.
- Do not load windowed envelopes or envelopes with adhesive surfaces on the flaps.
- Check the paper package for any additional loading instructions.

**Parent topic:** [Loading Paper](#)

## Related references

[Paper Loading Capacity](#)

## Related tasks

[Selecting the Default Paper Source Settings](#)

# Paper Loading Capacity

**Note:** The output tray holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper facedown. Exceeding this limit can cause paper to fall or a paper jam to occur. Remove printouts as necessary to keep the amount of paper in the output tray under 100 sheets.

Paper type	Loading capacity	
	Cassette	Rear paper feed slot
Plain paper Copy paper Letterhead paper High-quality plain paper	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm]) or A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm]) size or smaller: 250 sheets	1 sheet
	Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm]) size: 50 sheets	
	8.5 × 13 inches (216 × 330 mm) size: 50 sheets	
	User-defined (3.5 × 5 inches [89 × 127 mm] to 8.5 × 47.2 inches [215.9 × 1200 mm]): 1 sheet	
	User-defined (2.1 × 3.4 inches [54 × 86 mm] to 8.5 × 47.2 inches [215.9 × 1200 mm]): —	
Epson Bright White Pro Paper Epson Bright White Premium Paper Epson Multipurpose Plus Paper	200 sheets	1 sheet

Paper type	Loading capacity	
	Cassette	Rear paper feed slot
Epson Presentation Paper Matte	100 sheets	1 sheet
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte	20 sheets	
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte Double-sided	1 sheet	
Epson Ultra Premium Presentation Paper Matte Thick paper (25 to 68 lb [91 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ])	—	
Epson Photo Paper Glossy Epson Premium Photo Paper Glossy Epson Premium Photo Paper Semi-gloss Epson Ultra Premium Photo Paper Glossy	20 sheets	
Envelopes	10 envelopes	1 envelope

**Parent topic:** [Loading Paper](#)

**Related references**

[Paper Specifications](#)

## Double-sided Printing Capacity

You can print double-sided on the paper types and sizes listed here.

<b>Paper type</b>	<b>Size</b>	<b>Double-sided printing capacity</b>	
		<b>Paper cassette</b>	<b>Rear paper feed slot</b>
Plain paper Copy paper High-quality plain paper	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm]), A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm]), or B5 (7.2 × 10.1 inches [182 × 257 mm])	250 sheets	1 sheet
	User-defined (7.2 × 10.1 inches [182 × 257 mm] to 8.5 × 11.7 inches [215.9 × 297 mm])	1 sheet	
Epson Bright White Pro Paper Epson Bright White Premium Paper Epson Multipurpose Plus Paper	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	200 sheets	
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte Double-sided	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm]) or A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm])	1 sheet	

You cannot print double-sided on the following paper types:

- Epson Presentation Paper Matte
- Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte
- Epson Ultra Premium Presentation Paper Matte
- Epson Photo Paper Glossy
- Epson Premium Photo Paper Glossy
- Epson Premium Photo Paper Semi-gloss
- Epson Ultra Premium Photo Paper Glossy
- Envelopes

## Compatible Epson Papers

You can purchase genuine Epson ink, maintenance boxes, and paper at [epson.com](#) (U.S. sales) or [epson.ca](#) (Canadian sales). You can also purchase supplies from an Epson authorized reseller. To find the nearest one, call 800-GO-Epson (800-463-7766) in the U.S. or 800-807-7766 in Canada.

**Note:** Paper/media availability varies by country.

Paper Type	Size	Part number	Sheet count
Epson Bright White Pro Paper	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S041586	500
Epson Bright White Premium Paper	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S450218-4	500
Epson Multipurpose Plus Paper	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S450217-4	500
Epson Presentation Paper Matte	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S041062	100
	Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm])	S041067	100
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte	8 × 10 inches (203 × 254 mm)	S041467	50
	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S041257 S042180	50 100
	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S041568	50
Epson Ultra Premium Presentation Paper Matte	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S041341	50

Paper Type	Size	Part number	Sheet count
Epson Photo Paper Glossy	4 × 6 inches (102 × 152 mm)	S041809 S042038	50 100
	A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm])	S041140	20
	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S041141 S041649 S041271	20 50 100
Epson Premium Photo Paper Glossy	4 × 6 inches (102 × 152 mm)	S041727	100
	5 × 7 inches (127 × 178 mm)	S041464	20
	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S042183 S041667	25 50
Epson Ultra Premium Photo Paper Glossy	4 × 6 inches (102 × 152 mm)	S042181 S042174	60 100
	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S042182 S042175	25 50
	5 × 7 inches (127 × 178 mm)	S041945	20
Epson Premium Photo Paper Semi-gloss	4 × 6 inches (102 × 152 mm)	S041982	40
	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	S041331	20

Parent topic: [Loading Paper](#)

## Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software

For this paper	Select this paper Type or Media Type setting
Plain paper	Plain Paper / Bright White Paper
Epson Bright White Pro Paper	
Epson Bright White Premium Paper	
Epson Multipurpose Plus Paper	
Letterhead paper	Letterhead
Epson Ultra Premium Presentation Paper Matte	Card Stock
Thick paper 25 to 68 lb (91 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	
Epson Presentation Paper Matte	Presentation Paper Matte
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte	Premium Presentation Paper Matte
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte Double-sided	
Epson Ultra Premium Photo Paper Glossy	Ultra Premium Photo Paper Glossy
Epson Premium Photo Paper Glossy	Premium Photo Paper Glossy
Epson Photo Paper Glossy	Photo Paper Glossy
Epson Premium Photo Paper Semi-gloss	Premium Photo Paper Semi-Gloss
Envelopes	Envelope

**Note:** The settings listed here are available only when printing from your computer; they do not apply to your product's control panel settings.

Parent topic: [Loading Paper](#)

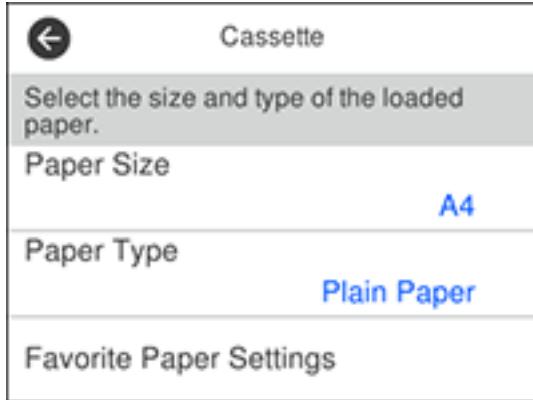
## Selecting the Paper Settings - Control Panel

You can change the default paper size and paper type using the control panel on the product.

**Note:** These settings appear automatically when paper is inserted if you set the **Paper Setup Auto Display** setting to **On**.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Printer Settings > Paper Source Settings > Paper Setting**.

You see this screen:



3. Select **Paper Size**.
4. Select the paper size you loaded.
5. Select **Paper Type**.
6. Select the paper type you loaded.
7. Press the  home button to exit.

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Control Panel](#)

**Parent topic:** [Loading Paper](#)

## Paper or Media Type Settings - Control Panel

For this paper	Select this Paper Type setting
Plain paper	Plain Paper
High-quality plain paper	
Copy paper	
Epson Bright White Pro Paper	
Epson Bright White Premium Paper	
Epson Multipurpose Plus Paper	
Letterhead paper	Letterhead
Epson Ultra Premium Photo Paper Glossy	Ultra Glossy
Epson Premium Photo Paper Glossy	Prem. Glossy
Epson Photo Paper Glossy	Glossy
Epson Premium Photo Paper Semi-gloss	Prem. Semi-Gloss
Epson Presentation Paper Matte	Presentation Matte
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte	Prem. Matte
Epson Ultra Premium Presentation Paper Matte	
Epson Premium Presentation Paper Matte Double-sided	
Envelope	Envelope

**Parent topic:** [Selecting the Paper Settings - Control Panel](#)

## Selecting the Default Paper Source Settings

You can change default paper source settings using the control panel on the product.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Printer Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Error Solver** and select one of these options:
  - Turn on this setting to display a warning and print single-sided when a 2-sided printing error occurs, or to print only what the printer could process when a memory full error occurs.

- Turn off this setting to display an error message and stop printing if an error occurs.
- Select the **Paper Source Settings** options you want to use.
  - When you are finished, press the  home button to exit.

#### [Paper Source Settings Options](#)

**Parent topic:** [Loading Paper](#)

## Paper Source Settings Options

Select the paper source options you want to use for your print jobs.

Paper Source Settings option	Available settings	Description
<b>Paper Setting</b>	Various	Select the paper size and type for each paper source
<b>A4/Letter Auto Switching</b>	<b>On</b>	Select <b>On</b> to switch the selected paper size to match the loaded paper (Letter or A4) if the wrong size is selected
	<b>Off</b>	
<b>Error Notice</b>	<b>Paper Size Notice</b>	Select <b>On</b> for either of these settings to display an error message when the selected paper type or size does not match the loaded paper
	<b>Paper Type Notice</b>	
<b>Paper Setup Auto Display</b>	<b>On</b>	Select <b>On</b> to automatically display a menu that lets you select the paper size and type when you load paper in the product.
	<b>Off</b>	<b>Note:</b> If this setting is disabled, you cannot print using AirPrint.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting the Default Paper Source Settings](#)

## Selecting the Universal Print Settings

You can change the default universal print settings using the control panel on the product.

- Press the  home button, if necessary.
- Select **Settings > General Settings > Printer Settings > Universal Print Settings**.
- Adjust the settings as necessary.
- When you are finished, press the  home button to exit.

## [Universal Print Settings Options](#)

**Parent topic:** [Loading Paper](#)

### **Universal Print Settings Options**

Select the universal print setting options you want to use for your print jobs.

Universal Print Settings option	Available settings	Description
<b>Top Offset</b>	—	Adjust the top or left margin
<b>Left Offset</b>	—	
<b>Top Offset in Back</b>	—	Adjust the top or left margin of the back page when printing double-sided.
<b>Left Offset in Back</b>	—	
<b>Skip Blank Page</b>	<b>On</b>	Select <b>On</b> to skip printing of blank pages automatically
	<b>Off</b>	

**Parent topic:** [Selecting the Universal Print Settings](#)

---

# Placing Originals on the Product

Follow the instructions here to place your original documents or photos on the product.

**Caution:** Do not place anything on top of your product or use its cover as a writing surface to avoid damaging it.

[Placing Originals on the Scanner Glass](#)

[Placing Originals in the Automatic Document Feeder](#)

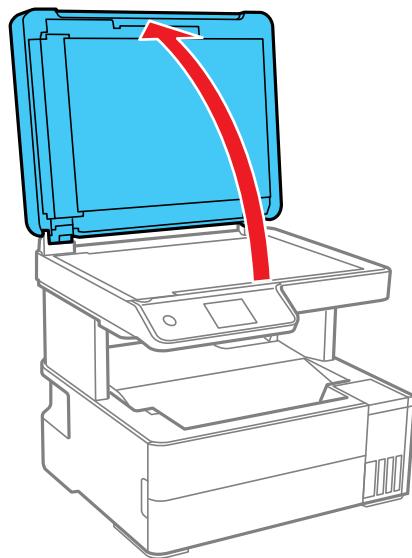
## Placing Originals on the Scanner Glass

You can place originals up to this size on the scanner glass: Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm]) or A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm]).

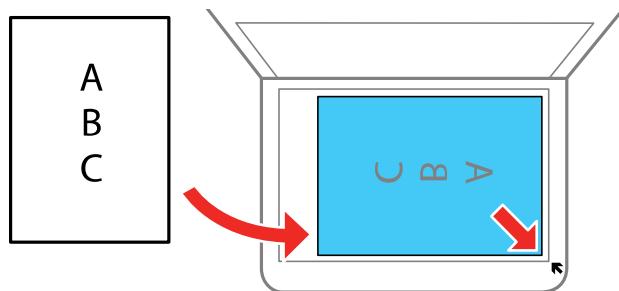
**Note:** To view animated instructions on how to place originals on the scanner glass, press the ⓘ button and select **How To > Place Originals**.

**Note:** When originals are placed in the ADF and on the scanner glass, priority is given to the originals in the ADF.

1. Open the document cover.



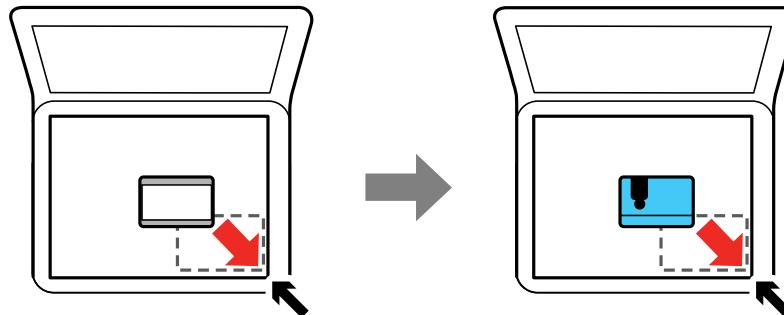
2. Place your original facedown on the scanner glass with the top facing into the corner. Slide the original to the edges of the indicated corner.



**Note:** The edges of your original may be cropped by 0.06 inch (1.5 mm) from the edge of the scanner glass. Manually position your original away from the edges to prevent cropping.

**Note:** If there is any trash or dirt on the scanner glass, the scanning range may expand to include it, so the image of the original may be displaced or reduced. Remove any trash and dirt on the scanner glass before scanning.

**Note:** If you are placing an ID card on the scanner glass, position the card 0.19 inch (5 mm) from the corner of the scanner glass.



3. Close the document cover gently to keep your original in place.

**Caution:** Do not push down on the document cover or scanner glass or you may damage the product.

Remove your originals after scanning. If you leave the originals on the scanner glass for a long time, they may stick to the glass surface.

**Parent topic:** [Placing Originals on the Product](#)

**Related topics**

[Copying](#)

[Scanning](#)

[Faxing](#)

## Placing Originals in the Automatic Document Feeder

You can place single- or multi-page original documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF). Make sure the originals meet the Automatic Document Feeder specifications before loading them.

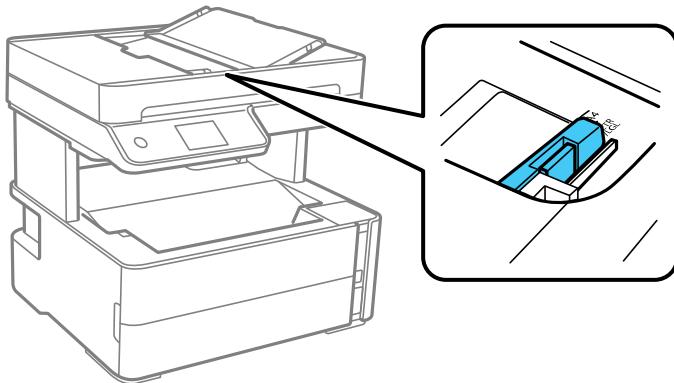
**Caution:** Make sure your originals are not creased or folded, and do not contain holes, staples, tape, or other materials that could obstruct the feeder.

**Caution:** Do not place photographs or valuable artwork in the ADF. Place fragile or valuable originals on the scanner glass to avoid wrinkling or damaging them.

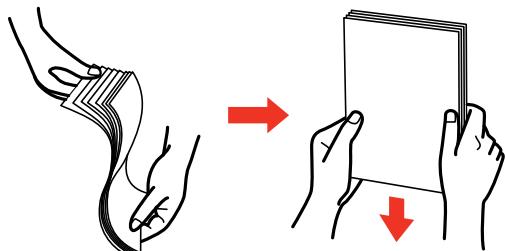
**Note:** To view animated instructions on how to place originals on the scanner glass, press the  button and select **How To > Place Originals**

**Note:** When originals are placed in the ADF and on the scanner glass, priority is given to the originals in the ADF.

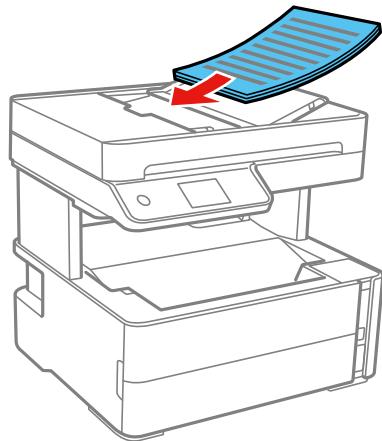
1. Open the ADF input tray.
2. Slide the ADF edge guide outward.



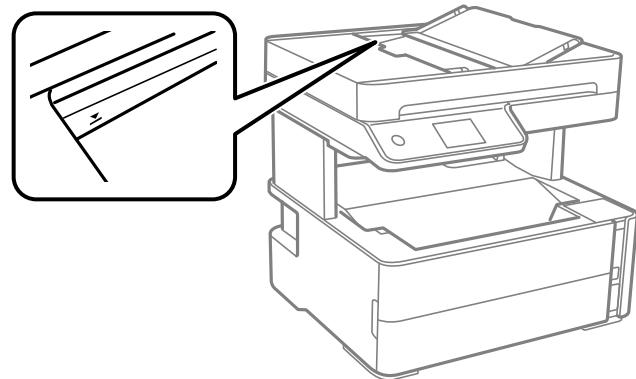
3. Fan your stack of originals and tap them gently on a flat surface to even the edges.



4. Insert the originals into the ADF faceup and short edge first.



**Note:** Do not load originals above the arrow mark on the ADF edge guide.



5. Slide the ADF edge guide against the originals, but not too tightly.

[ADF Original Document Specifications](#)

**Parent topic:** [Placing Originals on the Product](#)

**Related references**

[Copying Options](#)

## Related topics

[Copying](#)

[Scanning](#)

[Faxing](#)

## ADF Original Document Specifications

You can load original documents that meet these specifications in the ADF.

Paper type	Paper size	Paper weight	Loading capacity
Plain paper	Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])	17 to 24 lb (64 to 95 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Approximately 35 sheets
	A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm])		
	Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm])		10 sheets
	8.5 × 13 inches (216 × 330 mm)		

**Caution:** Do not load the following types of originals in the ADF, or they may be damaged or may damage the scanner. Use the scanner glass for these types of originals:

- Photos
- Thermal paper
- Originals containing tape, staples, or paper clips
- Originals with carbon paper backing
- Originals that are bound
- Originals with labels, stickers, or sticky notes
- Ripped, curled, folded, deteriorated, or wrinkled originals
- Originals with holes
- Transparencies
- Originals that are cut in an irregular shape or with corners that are not right angles

**Parent topic:** [Placing Originals in the Automatic Document Feeder](#)

---

# Copying

See the information here to copy documents or photos using your product.

**Note:** Copies may not be exactly the same size as your originals.

[Copying Documents or Photos](#)

[Copying ID Cards](#)

[Copying Options](#)

## Copying Documents or Photos

You can copy documents or photos onto various sizes and types of paper, including Epson special papers.

1. Place your original document or photo on the scanner glass or in the ADF.
2. Load the paper you want to print on in the product.
3. Press the home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Copy**.

You see a screen like this:



5. Select **B&W** or **Color**.

6. To print more than one copy, select **Copies** and use the displayed numeric keypad to select the number of copies (up to 99).
7. Change any of the displayed settings as necessary.
8. Select **Advanced Settings** to view and change additional copy settings, if necessary.
9. When you are ready to copy, select  **Copy**.

**Note:** To cancel printing, select **Cancel** on the LCD screen.

**Parent topic:** [Copying](#)

**Related references**

[Compatible Epson Papers](#)

[Copying Options](#)

[Paper Loading Capacity](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

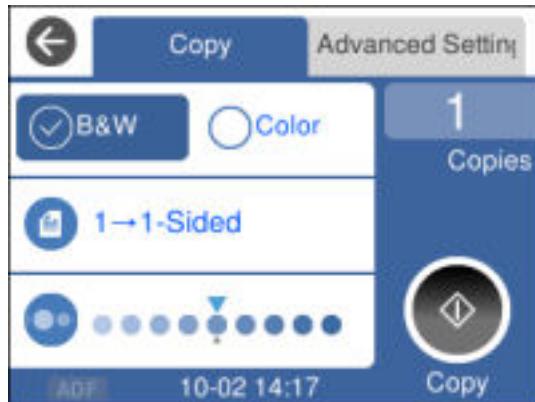
[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

## Copying ID Cards

You can copy both sides of an ID card onto a single sheet of paper.

1. Load the paper you want to print on.
2. Place your card or photo on the scanner glass.
3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Copy**.

You see a screen like this:



5. Select the **Advanced Settings** tab.
6. Select **ID Card Copy**.
7. Scan and copy both sides of an ID card onto one side of the paper.
8. To print more than one copy, select **Copies** and use the displayed numeric keypad to select the number of copies (up to 99).
9. Change any of the displayed settings as necessary.
10. When you are ready to copy, select  $\diamond$  **Copy**.

**Note:** To cancel printing, select **Cancel** on the LCD screen.

**Parent topic:** [Copying](#)

## Copying Options

Select the copying options you want to use for your copies.

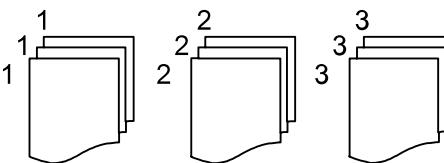
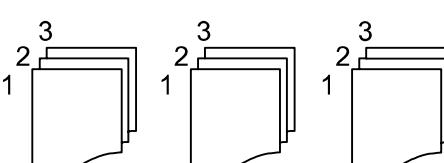
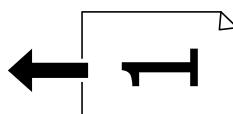
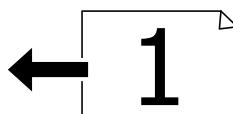
**Note:** Not all options or settings may be available, depending on other copying settings.

### Basic Settings

Copying option	Available settings	Description
Color option	<b>B&amp;W</b>	Select <b>B&amp;W</b> to copy in black-and-white or <b>Color</b> to copy in color.
	<b>Color</b>	
2-Sided	<b>1&gt;1-Sided</b>	Select to make 2-sided copies. When you select <b>1&gt;2-Sided</b> , also select the orientation and binding edge for your originals or copies.
	<b>1&gt;2-Sided</b>	
Density selector	Varying levels	Adjusts the lightness or darkness of copies

### Advanced Settings

Copying option	Available settings	Description
<b>Paper Setting</b>	Various settings	Select the paper size and the paper type
<b>Reduce/Enlarge</b>	<b>Actual Size</b>	Copies the original at its full size
	<b>45%-&gt;195% and other conversions</b>	Automatically converts from one size to another
	<b>Auto Fit Page</b>	Automatically sizes the image to fit the paper size you selected
<b>Original Size</b>	Various sizes	Select the document size of your original
<b>Multi-Page</b>	<b>Single Page</b>	Copies each page of the original onto an individual sheet
	<b>2-up</b>	Copies multiple page documents onto one sheet. Scroll down and select the document orientation and layout order settings as necessary.
<b>Quality</b>	<b>Standard</b>	Select the quality for copying. Selecting <b>High</b> provides higher quality printing, but the printing speed may be slower.
	<b>High</b>	

Copying option	Available settings	Description
Finishing	Group (Same Pages)	Select to print multiple copies of a multi-page document in unordered groups 
	Collate (Page Order)	Select to print multiple copies of a multi-page document in ordered sets 
Original Orientation	Portrait	Select the orientation of your original Portrait: 
	Landscape	Landscape: 
Remove Shadow	Off	Select <b>On</b> to remove the shadows in the background of the original or in the center of booklet copies
	On	
Remove Punch Holes	Off	Select <b>On</b> to remove the binding holes
	On	
ID Card Copy	Off	Select <b>On</b> to copy both sides of an ID card onto one side of a sheet of paper
	On	

Copying option	Available settings	Description
Clear All Settings	Yes	Restore all copy settings to their defaults
	No	

Parent topic: [Copying](#)

---

# Printing from a Computer

Before printing from your computer, make sure you have set up your product and installed its software as described on the *Start Here* sheet.

**Note:** If you have an Internet connection, it is a good idea to check for updates to your product software on Epson's support website. If you see a Software Update screen, select **Enable automatic checking** and click **OK**. The update scans your system to see if you have the latest product software. Follow the on-screen instructions.

[Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

[Printing with the Built-in Epson Driver - Windows 10 S](#)

[Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

[Printing with the PCL Printer Software - Windows](#)

[Printing with the PostScript \(PS3\) Printer Software - Windows](#)

[Printing with the PostScript \(PS3\) Printer Software - Mac](#)

[Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet](#)

[Cancelling Printing Using a Product Button](#)

## Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows

You can print with the standard Epson printer software using any Windows printing program, as described in these sections.

**Note:** If you are using your Epson product with the Windows 10 S operating system, you cannot use the software described in this section. You also cannot download and install any Epson product software from the Epson website for use with Windows 10 S; you must obtain software only from the Windows Store.

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

[Selecting a Printing Preset - Windows](#)

[Selecting Extended Settings - Windows](#)

[Printing Your Document - Windows](#)

[Locking Printer Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Default Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Changing Automatic Update Options](#)

[Parent topic:](#) [Printing from a Computer](#)

## Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows

Select the basic settings for the document or photo you want to print.

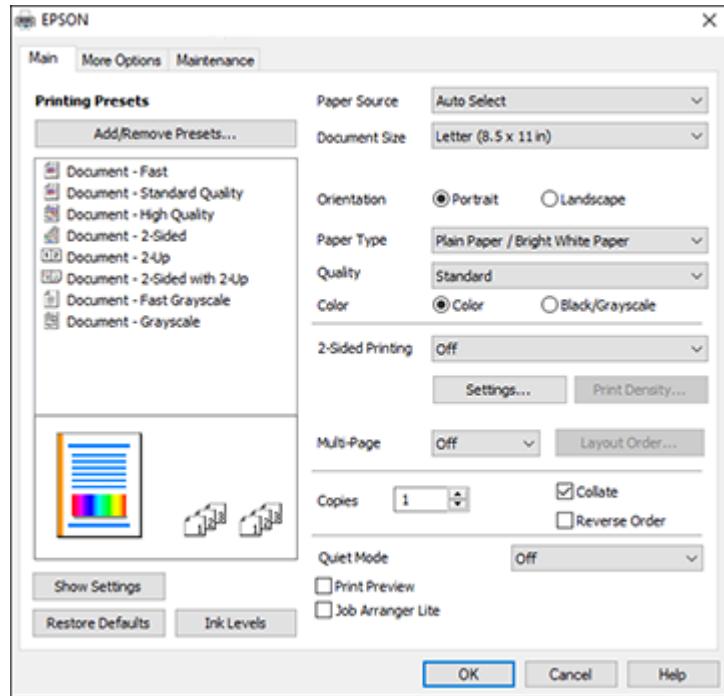
1. Open a photo or document for printing.
2. Select the print command in your application.

**Note:** You may need to select a print icon on your screen, the **Print** option in the **File** menu, or another command. See your application's help utility for details.

3. If necessary, select your product name as the printer you want to use.

**Note:** You may also need to select **Properties** or **Preferences** to view your print settings.

You see the Main tab of your printer settings window:



4. For the **Paper Source** setting, select where you loaded the paper you want to print on.
5. Select the size of the paper you loaded as the **Document Size** setting.

**Note:** You can also select the **User-Defined** setting to create a custom paper size.

6. Select the orientation of your document.

**Note:** If you are printing an envelope, select **Landscape**.

7. Select the type of paper you loaded as the **Paper Type** setting.

**Note:** The setting may not exactly match the name of your paper. Check the paper type settings list for details.

8. Select the **Quality** setting that matches the print quality you want to use.
9. Select a Color option:
  - To print a color document or photo, select the **Color** setting.
  - To print text and graphics in black or shades of gray, select the **Black/Grayscale** setting.
10. To print on both sides of the paper, select a **2-Sided Printing** option.
11. To print multiple pages on one sheet of paper, or print one image on multiple sheets of paper, select one of the settings in the **Multi-Page** menu and select the printing options you want.
12. To print multiple copies and arrange their print order, select the **Copies** options.
13. To reduce noise during printing when you select **Plain Paper/Bright White Paper**, turn on **Quiet Mode** (printing will be slower).
14. To preview your job before printing, select **Print Preview**.
15. To save your print job as a project that can be modified and combined with other print jobs, select **Job Arranger Lite**.

[Paper Source Options - Windows](#)

[Print Quality Options - Windows](#)

[Multi-Page Printing Options - Windows](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

#### **Related references**

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software](#)

#### **Related tasks**

[Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Windows](#)

[Printing Your Document - Windows](#)

### **Paper Source Options - Windows**

You can select any of the available options in the Paper Source menu to print on the paper loaded in that source.

#### **Auto Select**

Automatically selects the paper source based on the selected paper size.

#### **Paper Cassette**

Selects the paper in the cassette as the paper source.

#### **Rear Paper Feed Slot**

Selects the paper in the rear feed slot as the paper source.

[Parent topic: Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

## Print Quality Options - Windows

You can select any of the available Quality options to fine-tune the quality of your print. Some settings may be unavailable, depending on the paper type and border setting you have chosen.

### Draft

For draft printing on plain paper.

### Standard

For everyday text and image printing.

### Standard - Vivid

For text and graphics with good quality and print speed.

### High

For photos and graphics with high print quality.

[Parent topic: Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

## Multi-Page Printing Options - Windows

You can select any of the available options in the Multi-Page menu to set up your multi-page print job.

### 2-Up, 4-Up, 6-Up, 8-Up, 9-Up, and 16-Up

Prints several pages on one sheet of paper. Click the **Layout Order** button to select page layout and border options.

### 2x1 Poster, 2x2 Poster, 3x3 Poster, 4x4 Poster

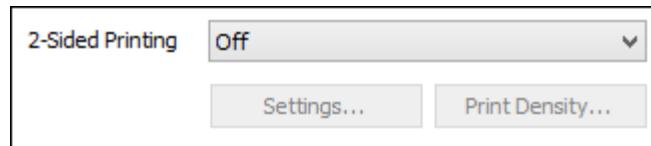
Prints one image on multiple sheets of paper to create a larger poster. Click the **Settings** button to select image layout and guideline options.

[Parent topic: Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

## Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Windows

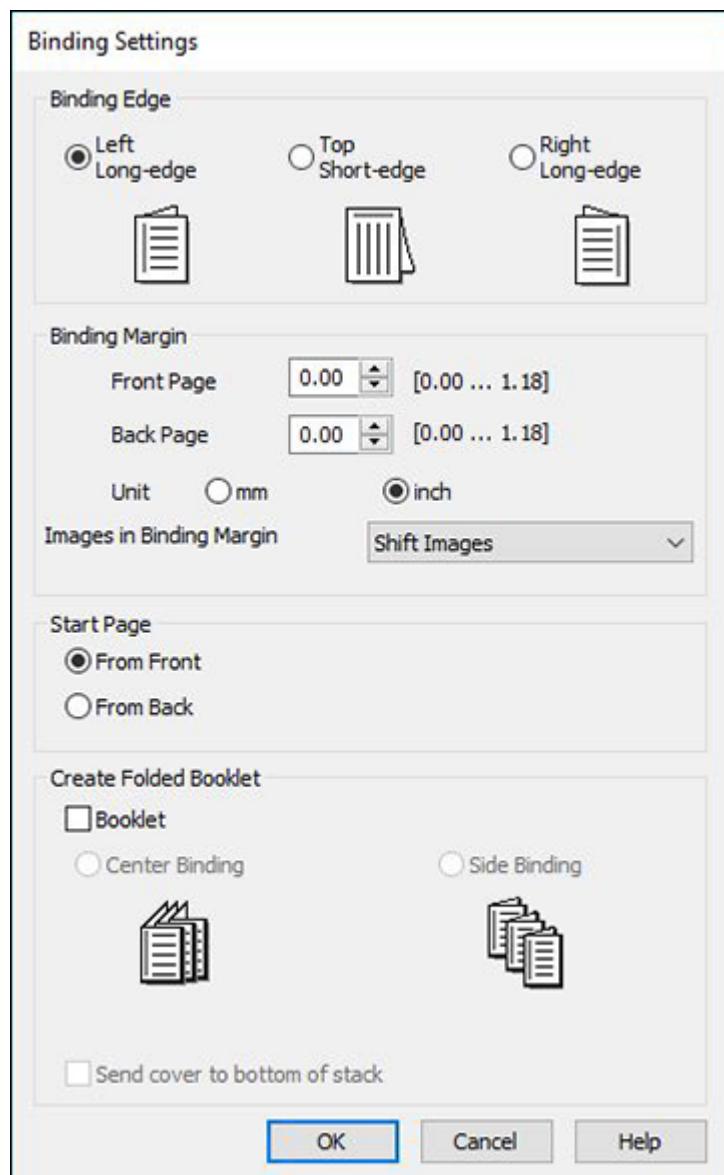
You can print on both sides of the paper by selecting one of the 2-Sided Printing options on the Main tab.

**Note:** Some options may be pre-selected or unavailable, depending on other settings you have chosen or if you are accessing the product over a network.



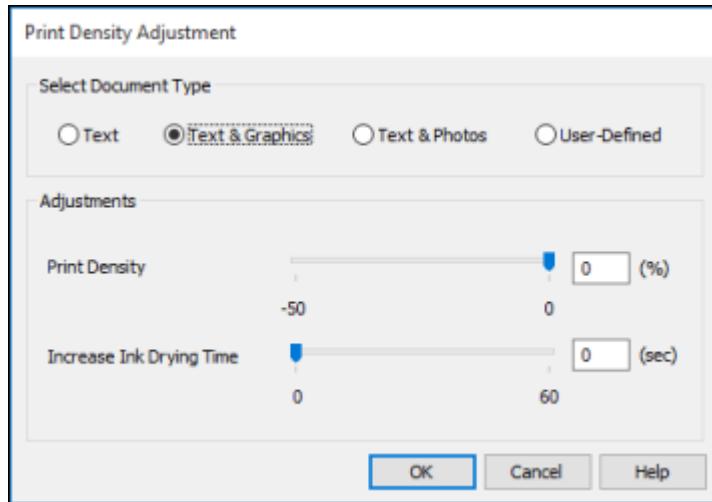
1. Select one of the following options for **2-Sided Printing**:
  - **Auto (Long-edge binding)** to print your double-sided print job by automatically flipping the paper on the long edge.
  - **Auto (Short-edge binding)** to print your double-sided print job by automatically flipping the paper on the short edge.
2. Click the **Settings** button.

You see this window:



3. Select the double-sided printing options you want to use.
4. Click **OK** to return to the Main tab.
5. Click the **Print Density** button.

You see this window:



6. Select the type of document you are printing as the Document Type setting. The software automatically sets the Adjustments options for that document type.
7. If necessary, select the Adjustments options you want to use.
8. Click **OK** to return to the Main tab.
9. Print a test copy of your double-sided document to test the selected settings.
10. Follow any instructions displayed on the screen during printing.

[Double-sided Printing Options - Windows](#)

[Print Density Adjustments - Windows](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

**Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

## **Double-sided Printing Options - Windows**

You can select any of the available options on the 2-Sided Printing Settings window to set up your double-sided print job.

### **Binding Edge Options**

Select a setting that orients double-sided print binding in the desired direction.

### **Binding Margin Options**

Select options that define a wider margin to allow for binding.

### **Start Page**

Selects whether printing starts on the front or back page.

### **Create Folded Booklet Options**

Select the **Booklet** checkbox and a binding option to print double-sided pages as a booklet.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Windows](#)

### **Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

## **Print Density Adjustments - Windows**

You can select any of the available options on the Print Density Adjustment window to adjust the print quality of your double-sided print job.

### **Print Density**

Sets the level of ink coverage for double-sided printing.

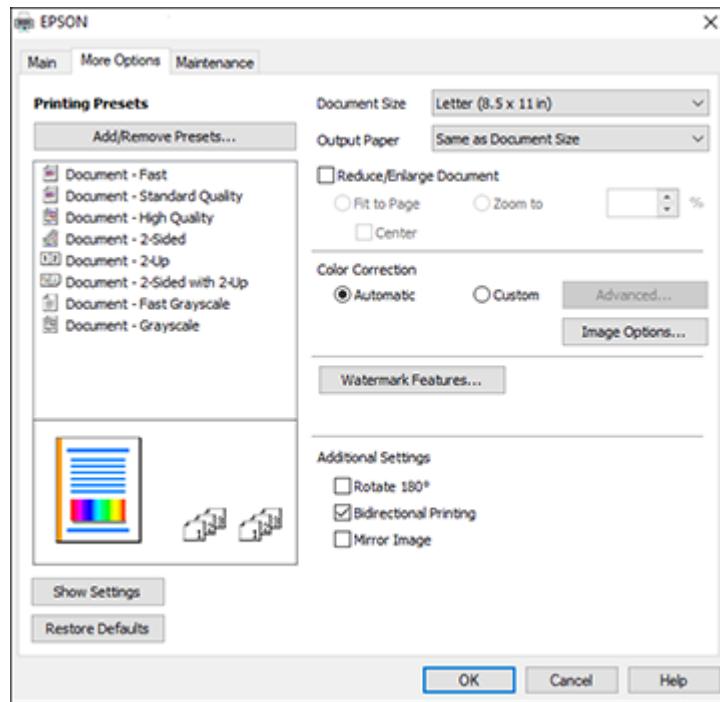
### **Increase Ink Drying Time**

Sets the amount of time required for drying ink after printing on one side of the paper before printing the other side in double-sided printing to prevent ink smearing.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Windows](#)

## Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows

You can select a variety of additional layout and printing options for your document or photo on the **More Options** tab.



1. To change the size of your printed document or photo, select the **Reduce/Enlarge Document** checkbox and select one of these sizing options:
  - Select the **Fit to Page** option to size your image to fit the paper you loaded. Select the size of your document or photo as the Document Size setting, and the size of your paper as the Output Paper setting. If you want to center your image on the paper, select the **Center** option.
  - Select the **Zoom to** option to reduce or enlarge your document or photo by a specific percentage. Select the percentage in the % menu.
2. Select one of the following Color Correction options:
  - Select **Automatic** to automatically adjust the sharpness, brightness, contrast, and color saturation for your image.

- Select **Custom** and click the **Advanced** button to manually adjust the color correction settings or turn off color management in your printer software.
  - Select **Image Options** to access additional settings for improving printed images.
3. To add the following features, click the **Watermark Features** button:
- **Watermark**: adds a visible watermark to your printout
  - **Header/Footer**: adds information such as the date and time to the top or bottom of your printout

**Note:** Click the **Settings** button to customize the text and location of the header or footer.

4. Select any of the Additional Settings options to customize your print.

[Custom Color Correction Options - Windows](#)

[Image Options and Additional Settings - Windows](#)

[Header/Footer Settings - Windows](#)

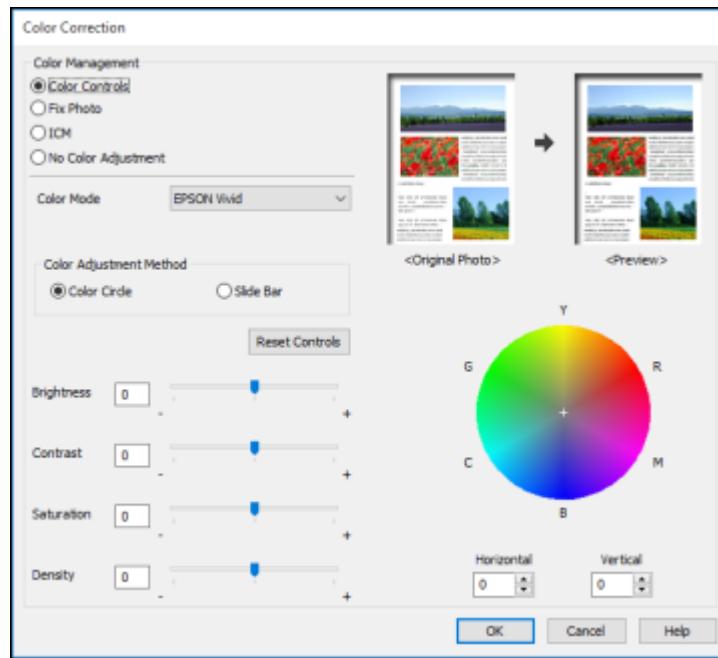
**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

**Related tasks**

[Printing Your Document - Windows](#)

## Custom Color Correction Options - Windows

You can select any of the available options in the Color Correction window to customize the image colors for your print job.



### Color Controls

Lets you select a **Color Mode** setting, individual settings for **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Saturation**, and **Density**, and individual color tones. Depending on the selected color mode, you can also adjust the midtone density using the **Gamma** setting.

### Fix Photo

Improves the color, contrast, and sharpness of flawed photos.

**Note:** Fix Photo uses a sophisticated face recognition technology to optimize photos that include faces. For this to work, both eyes and the nose must be visible in the subject's face. If your photo includes a face with an intentional color cast, such as a statue, you may want to turn off **Fix Photo** to retain the special color effects.

**ICM**

Lets you manage color using installed color printing profiles.

**No Color Adjustment**

Turns off color management in your printer software so you can manage color using only your application software.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)**Image Options and Additional Settings - Windows**

You can select any of the Image Options and Additional Settings to customize your print. Some options may be pre-selected or unavailable, depending on other settings you have chosen.

**Image Options****Emphasize Text**

Adjusts the weight of printed text to increase readability.

**Emphasize Thin Lines**

Adjusts the weight of printed lines to increase visibility.

**Edge Smoothing**

Smooths jagged edges in low-resolution images such as screen captures or images from the Web.

**Fix Red-Eye**

Reduces or removes red-eye in photos.

**Print Text in Black**

Prints colored text in black.

**For Color Text**

Prints colored text on a background pattern or underlined.

**For Color Graphs and Images**

Prints colored graphics and images with overlay patterns.

**For Color Text, Graphs, and Images**

Prints colored text, graphics, and images with overlay patterns.

**Enhancement Options**

Specifies Color Universal Print enhancement settings for text, graphics, and images.

**Additional Settings Options****Rotate 180°**

Prints the image rotated 180° from its original orientation.

### **Bidirectional Printing**

Prints in both directions (right-to-left and left-to-right), speeding up printing, but may reduce print quality.

### **Mirror Image**

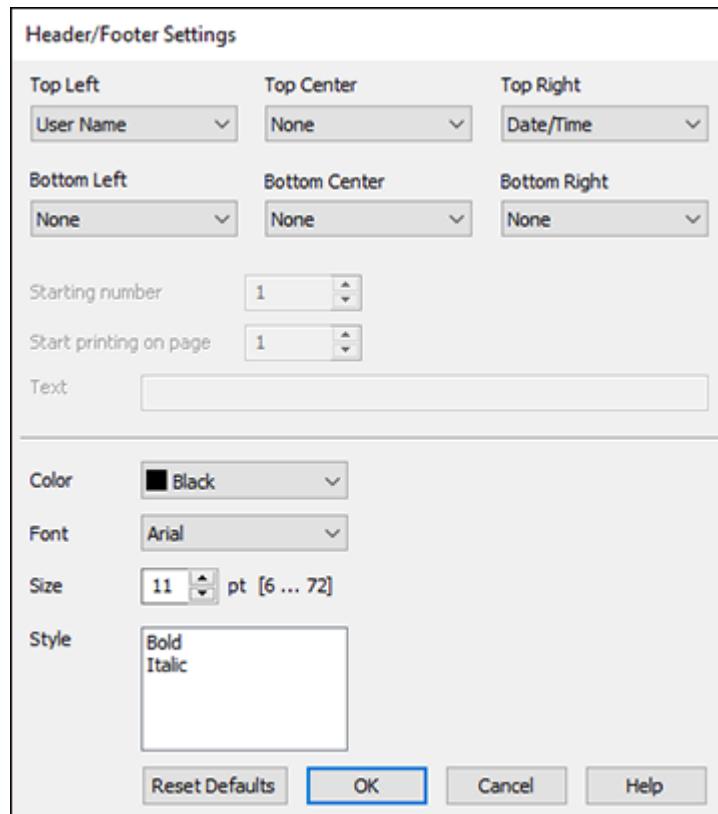
Flips the printed image left to right.

### **Parent topic:** [Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

## **Header/Footer Settings - Windows**

You can select any of the Header/Footer Settings options to add headers or footers when you print. The items are available to print at the top or bottom of your pages, in either the left, right, or center of the page.

**Note:** These settings are not saved with your document.



You can select to print the following information:

- User Name
- Computer Name
- Date
- Date/Time
- Document Name
- Collate Number
- Page Number
- Text

You can also adjust the text settings for the printed information.

**Note:** The user name, computer name, date, and time come from the Windows Control Panel on your computer.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

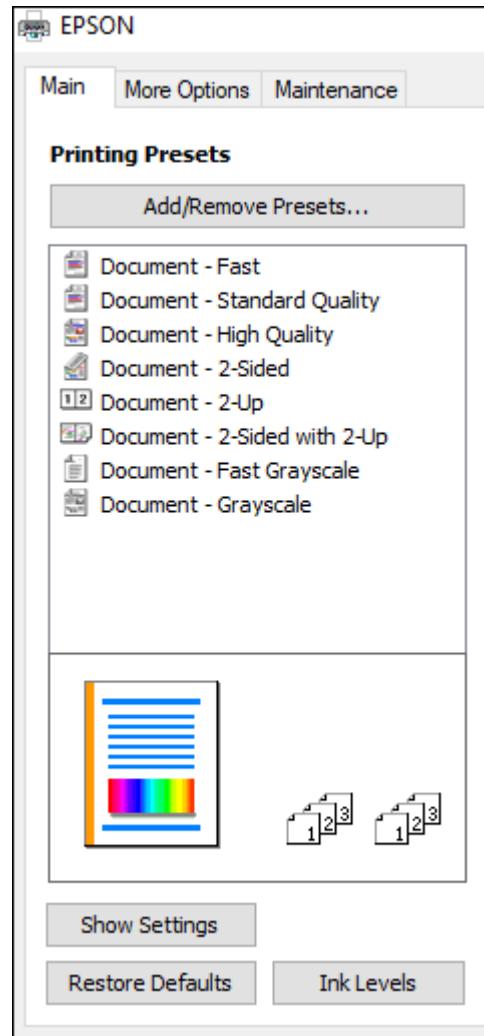
## Selecting a Printing Preset - Windows

For quick access to common groups of print settings, you can select a printing preset on the **Main** or **More Options** tab.

**Note:** You can create your own preset by clicking the **Add/Remove Presets** button.

1. Click the **Main** or **More Options** tab.

You see the available **Printing Presets** on the left:



2. Place your cursor over one of the **Printing Presets** to view its list of settings.
3. Click on a preset to change its settings or delete it, or use any of the available options on the screen to control your printing presets.

4. To choose a preset for printing, select it.
5. Click **OK**.

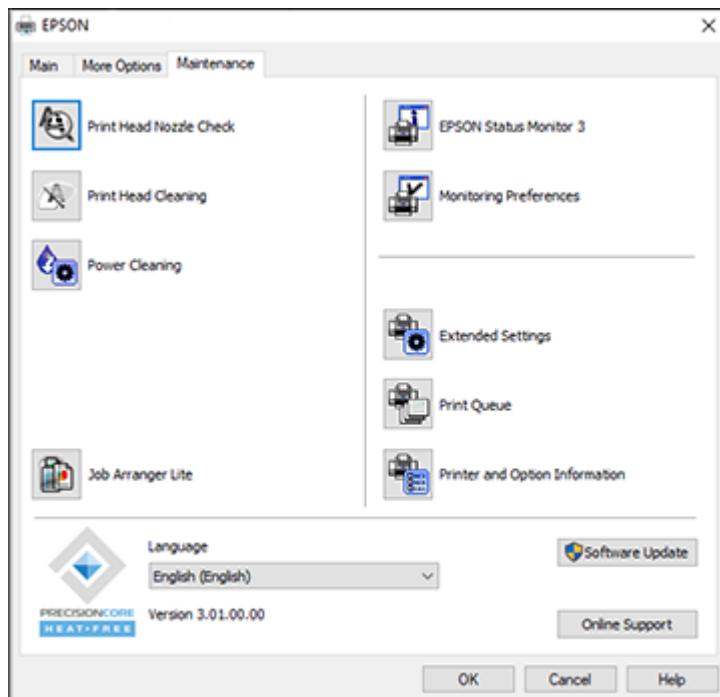
**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

## Selecting Extended Settings - Windows

You can select additional settings that apply to all the print jobs you send to your product.

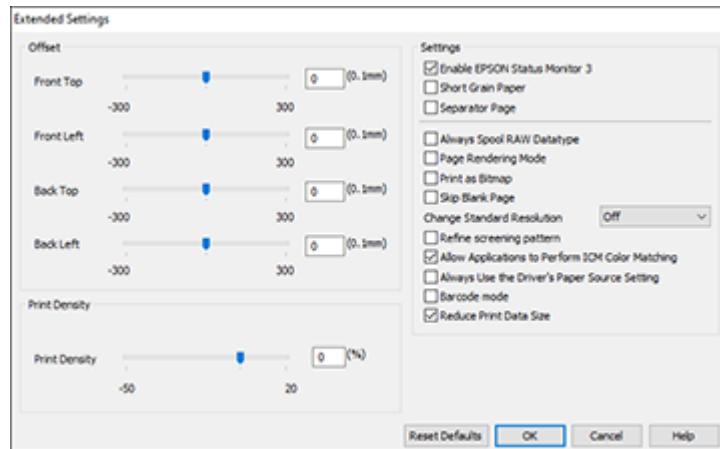
1. Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click .
2. Select **Printer Settings**.
3. Click the **Maintenance** tab.

You see the maintenance options:



4. Click the **Extended Settings** button.

You see this window:



5. Select any of the extended settings to customize your print.
6. Click **OK** to close the Extended Settings window.
7. Click **OK** to close the printer software window.

#### [Extended Settings - Windows](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

#### **Extended Settings - Windows**

You can select these settings on the Extended Settings window.

##### **Enable EPSON Status Monitor 3**

Enables product monitoring for ink and paper supplies and other issues.

##### **Short Grain Paper**

Prevents ink from smearing when you print on envelopes or other thick paper.

##### **Separator Page**

Before each document, prints a separator page containing the title, user, date, and time.

##### **Always Spool RAW Datatype**

Increases print speed and may solve other printing problems.

##### **Page Rendering Mode**

Increases print speed when printing is extremely slow or the print head stops during printing.

**Print as Bitmap**

Increases print speed when printing is extremely slow or the print head stops during printing, and other settings do not help.

**Skip Blank Page**

Ensures that your product does not print pages that contain no text or images.

**Change Standard Resolution**

Reduces the resolution of print data to correct printing problems.

**Refine screening pattern**

Prints graphics with a finer screening pattern.

**Allow Applications to Perform ICM Color Matching**

Allows applications to perform ICM color matching.

**Always Use the Driver's Paper Source Setting**

Prints using the paper source setting in the printer driver, rather than the setting in your application.

**Barcode mode**

Reduces bleeding when printing barcodes on plain paper, letterhead paper, recycled paper, preprinted paper, envelopes, and thick paper.

**Reduce Print Data Size**

Increases print data compression to improve print speed. Not recommended when printing fine patterns.

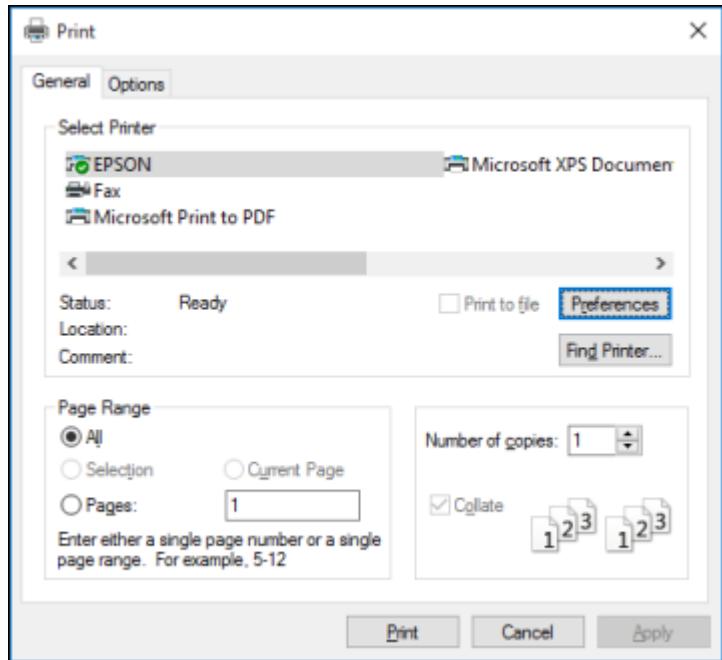
**Parent topic:** [Selecting Extended Settings - Windows](#)

## Printing Your Document - Windows

Once you have selected your print settings, you are ready to save your settings and print.

1. Click **OK** to save your settings.

You see your application's Print window, such as this one:



2. Click **OK** or **Print** to start printing.

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

## Locking Printer Settings - Windows

Windows administrators can lock access to some printer settings to prevent unauthorized changes.

1. Do one of the following:

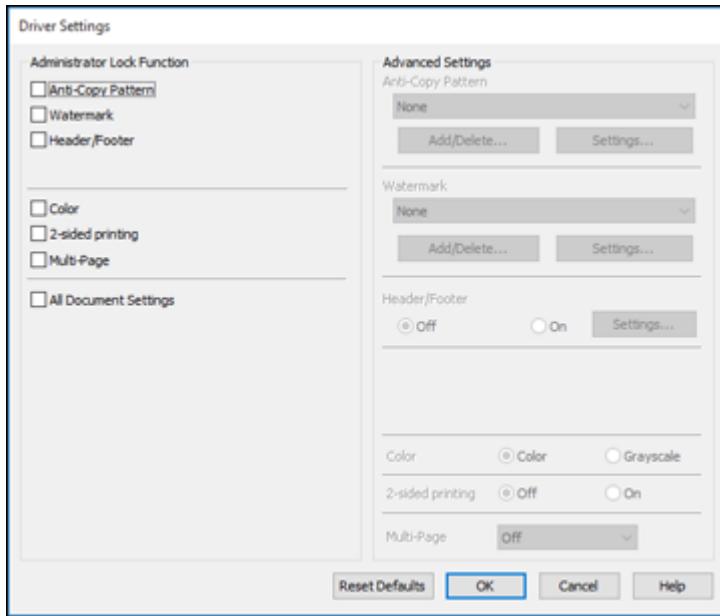
- **Windows 10:** Click and select (Settings) > **Devices > Printers & scanners**. Select your product name and select **Manage > Printer properties**.
- **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers**. Right-click your product and select **Printer properties**.
- **Windows 7:** Click and select **Devices and Printers**. Right-click your product and select **Printer properties**.

- **Windows Vista:** Click  and select **Control Panel**. Click **Printer** under **Hardware and Sound**, then right-click your product and select **Properties**.
2. Click the **Optional Settings** tab.

**Note:** You can prevent access to the **Optional Settings** tab by changing the user or group permissions in the **Security** tab.

3. Click **Driver Settings**.

You see this window:



4. Select the checkbox for each setting you want to lock. To lock all print settings, select **All Document Settings**.
5. Under **Advanced Settings**, select the setting option you want to use for each locked setting.
6. Click **OK**.

#### Locked Setting Options

**Parent topic:** Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows

## Locked Setting Options

Select the options you want to use for any locked print settings.

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Anti-Copy Pattern</b>	Various data items	Lets you select the data to use for the pattern or prohibit anti-copy patterns
	<b>Add/Delete</b>	Lets you add or delete a customized anti-copy pattern
	<b>Settings</b>	Lets you select the arrangement, size, and other settings for the custom anti-copy pattern
<b>Watermark</b>	Various text watermarks	Lets you select the text for the watermark or prohibit watermarks
	<b>Add/Delete</b>	Lets you add or delete a customized text or image-based watermark
	<b>Settings</b>	Lets you select the size, position, and other watermark settings
<b>Header/Footer</b>	<b>Off</b>	Prohibits headers or footers
	<b>On</b>	Allows headers and footers
	<b>Settings</b>	Lets you select the text and position for printing headers and footers
<b>Color</b>	<b>Color</b>	Allows color printing
	<b>Grayscale</b>	Allows printing in black or shades of gray only
<b>2-sided printing</b>	<b>Off</b>	Allows printing on one side of the paper only
	<b>On</b>	Allows printing on both sides of the paper
<b>Multi-Page</b>	<b>Off</b>	Prohibits multi-page settings
	<b>2-Up</b>	Allows printing of 2 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>4-Up</b>	Allows printing of 4 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>6-Up</b>	Allows printing of 6 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>8-Up</b>	Allows printing of 8 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>9-Up</b>	Allows printing of 9 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>16-Up</b>	Allows printing of 16 pages on one sheet of paper

Setting	Options	Description
All Document Settings	—	Lets you lock all print settings

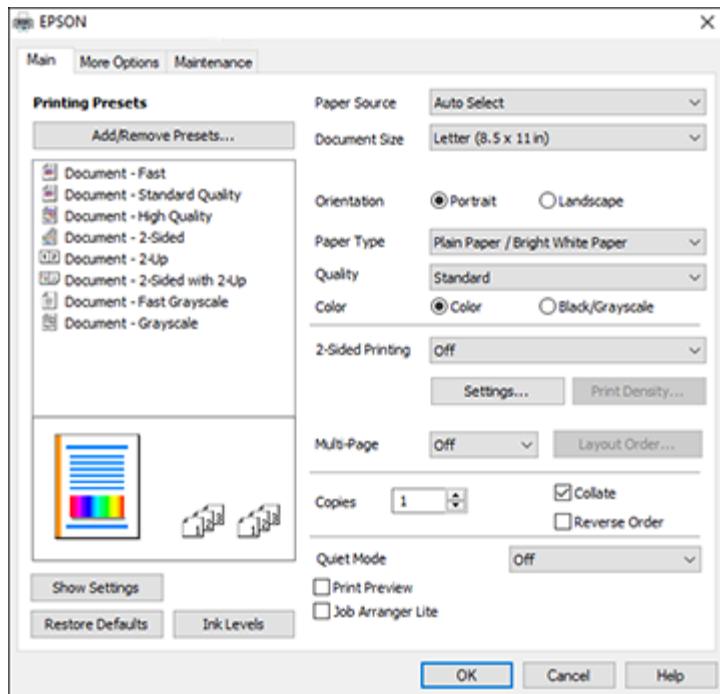
**Parent topic:** [Locking Printer Settings - Windows](#)

## Selecting Default Print Settings - Windows

When you change your print settings in a program, the changes apply only while you are printing in that program session. If you want to change the print settings you use in all your Windows programs, you can select new default print settings.

1. Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click .
2. Select **Printer Settings**.

You see the printer settings window:



3. Select the print settings you want to use as defaults in all your Windows programs.
4. Click **OK**.

These settings are now the defaults selected for printing. You can still change them as needed for printing in any program session.

#### [Changing the Language of the Printer Software Screens](#)

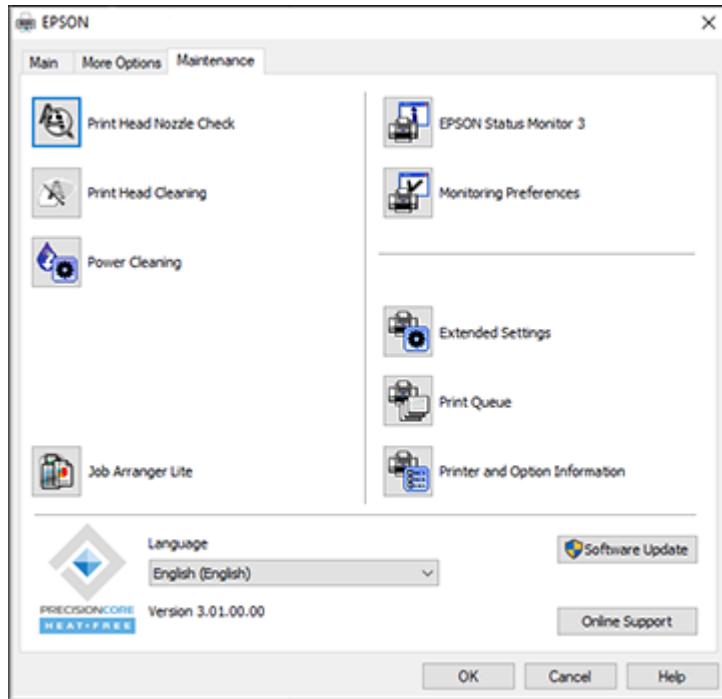
**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

### **Changing the Language of the Printer Software Screens**

You can change the language used on the Windows printer software screens.

1. Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click .
2. Select **Printer Settings**.  
You see the printer settings window.
3. Click the **Maintenance** tab.

You see the maintenance options:



4. Select the language you want to use as the **Language** setting.
5. Click **OK** to close the printer software window.

The printer software screens appear in the language you selected the next time you access them.

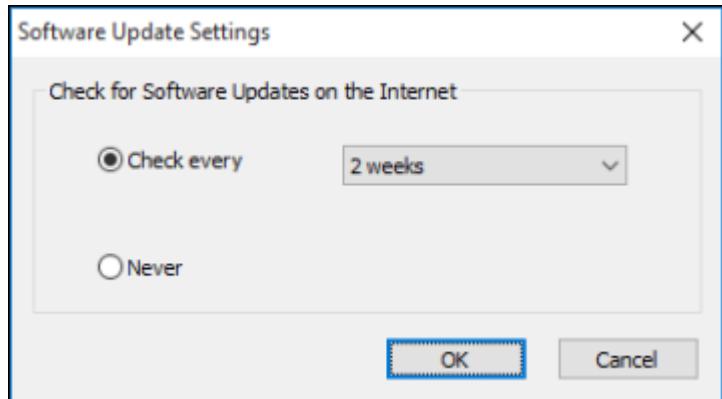
**Parent topic:** [Selecting Default Print Settings - Windows](#)

## Changing Automatic Update Options

Your printer software for Windows automatically checks for updates to the product software. You can change how often the software checks for updates or disable this feature.

1. Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click .
2. Select **Software Update Settings**.

You see this window:



3. Do one of the following:
  - To change how often the software checks for updates, select a setting in the **Check every** menu.
  - To disable the automatic update feature, select the **Never** option.
4. Click **OK** to exit.

**Note:** If you choose to disable the automatic update feature, you can check for updates manually.

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Standard Epson Printer Software - Windows](#)

**Related tasks**

[Checking for Software Updates](#)

## Printing with the Built-in Epson Driver - Windows 10 S

You can print with the built-in Epson printer driver using any printing program on Windows 10 S, as described in these sections.

**Note:** The built-in Epson driver in Windows 10 S does not include all the available print settings for your product. To print with additional settings, download and install the Epson Print and Scan utility from the Windows Store. You cannot download and install any Epson product software from the Epson website for use with Windows 10 S; you must obtain software only from the Windows Store.

[Selecting Print Settings - Windows 10 S](#)

[Parent topic: Printing from a Computer](#)

## Selecting Print Settings - Windows 10 S

Select the settings for your print job in your Windows 10 S application.

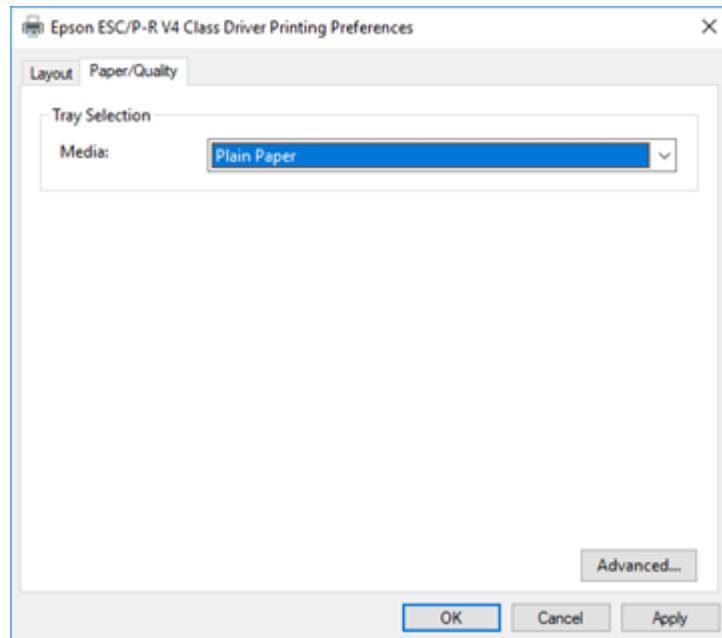
1. Open a document for printing.
2. Select the print command in your application.

**Note:** You may need to select a print icon on your screen, the **Print** option in the **File** menu, or another command. See your application's help utility for details.

3. If necessary, select your product name as the printer you want to use.

**Note:** You may also need to select **Properties** or **Preferences** to view your print settings.

You see a window like this:

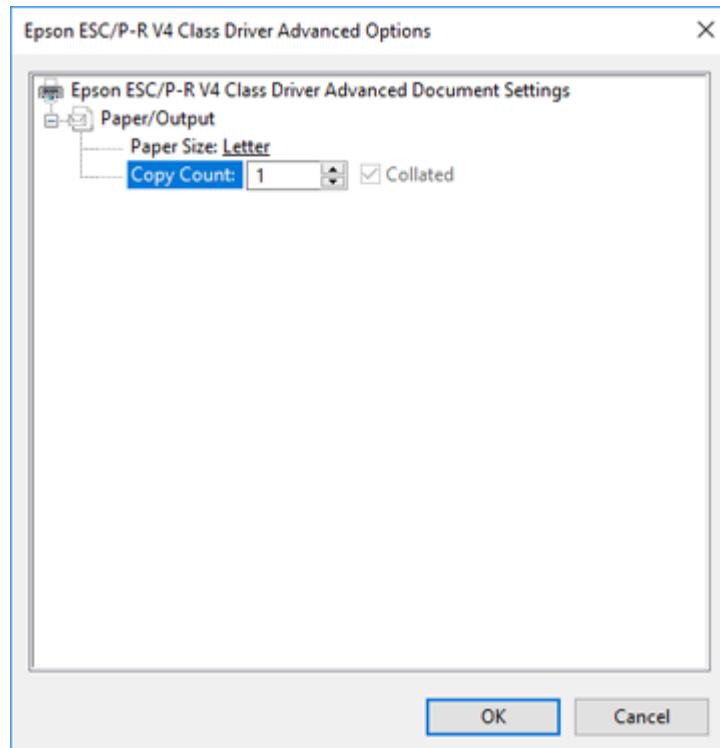


4. Select the type of paper you loaded as the **Media** setting.

**Note:** The setting may not exactly match the name of your paper. Check the paper type settings list for details.

5. Click the **Advanced** button.

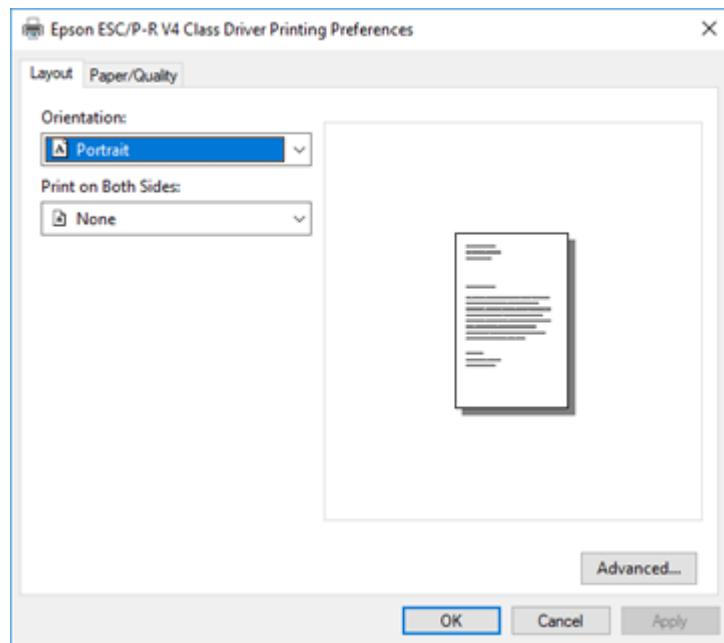
You see a window like this:



6. Select the size of the paper you loaded as the **Paper Size** setting.
7. To print multiple copies, select or enter the number as the **Copy Count** setting.
8. To print multiple copies of multi-page documents in sets, select the **Collated** checkbox.
9. Click **OK**.

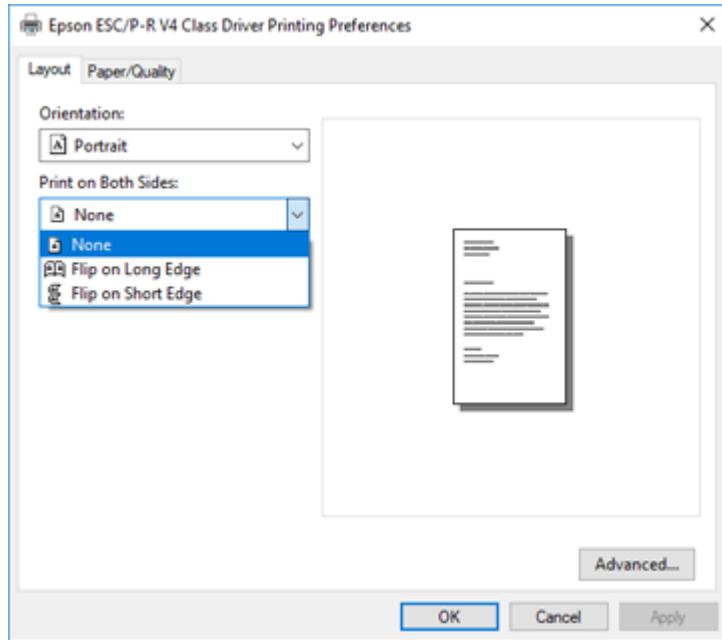
You return to the printing preferences window.

10. Select the **Layout** tab.



11. Select the orientation of your document as the **Orientation** setting.

12. To print double-sided, select one of the **Print on Both Sides** options, depending on how you want to orient the page layout. The icon next to each option shows the layout.



13. Click **OK** to save your settings.

You see your application's **Print** window.

14. Click **OK** or **Print** to start printing.

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Built-in Epson Driver - Windows 10 S](#)

## Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac

You can print with your product using any Mac printing program, as described in these sections.

**Note:** If you have an Internet connection, it is a good idea to check for updates to your product software on Epson's support website.

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Print Layout Options - Mac](#)  
[Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Mac](#)  
[Managing Color - Mac](#)  
[Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac](#)  
[Printing Your Document - Mac](#)  
**Parent topic:** [Printing from a Computer](#)

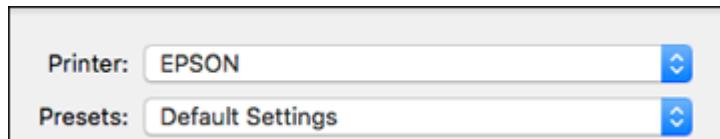
## Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac

Select the basic settings for the document or photo you want to print.

1. Open a photo or document for printing.
2. Select the print command in your application.

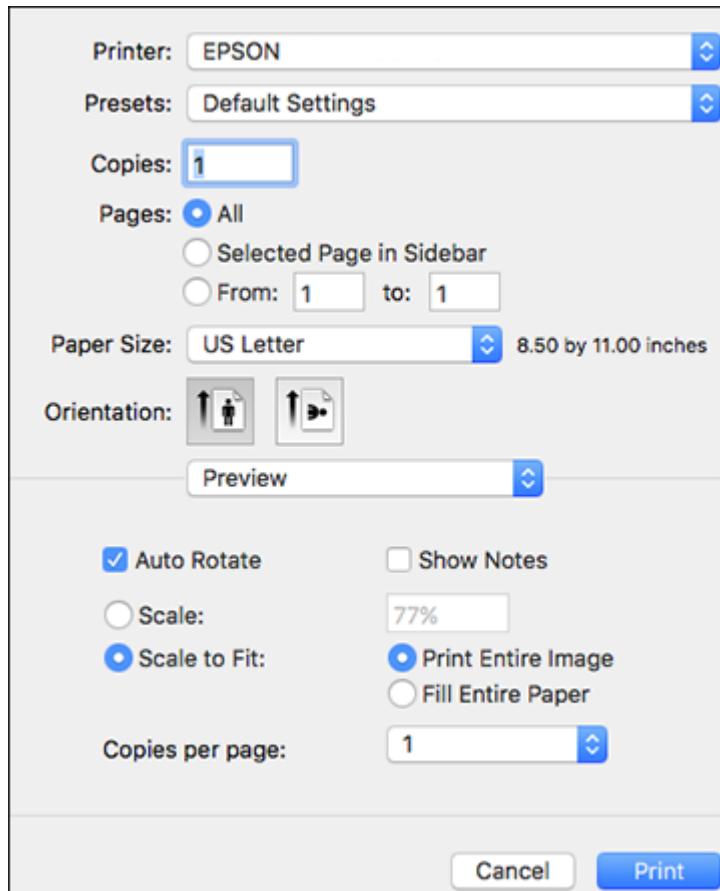
**Note:** You may need to select a print icon on your screen, the **Print** option in the File menu, or another command. See your application's help utility for details.

3. Select your product as the **Printer** setting.



4. If necessary, click the arrow next to the Printer setting or the **Show Details** button to expand the print window.

You see the expanded printer settings window for your product:



**Note:** The print window may look different, depending on the Mac OS version and the application you are using.

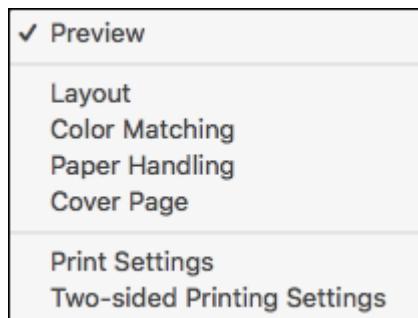
5. To use an existing set of print settings, select **Presets** and choose a preset from the list.
6. Select the **Copies** and **Pages** settings as necessary.

**Note:** If you do not see these settings in the print window, check for them in your application before printing.

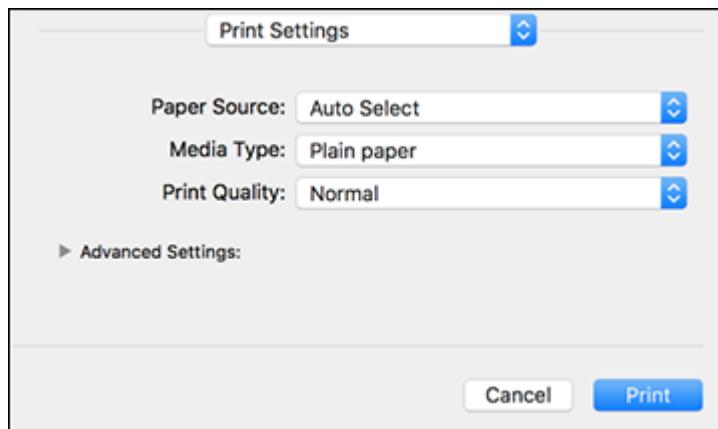
7. Select the page setup options: **Paper Size** and **Orientation**.

**Note:** If you do not see these settings in the print window, check for them in your application before printing. They may be accessible by selecting **Page Setup** from the File menu.

8. Select any application-specific settings that appear on the screen, such as those shown in the image above for the Preview application.
9. Select **Print Settings** or **Printer Features** from the pop-up menu.



You see these settings:



**Note:** The available print settings and appearance of the print window may be different than those covered here, depending on the Mac OS version and the application you are using.

10. Select the **Paper Source** you wish to print from.
11. Select the type of paper you loaded as the **Media Type** setting.

**Note:** The setting may not exactly match the name of your paper. Check the paper type settings list for details.

12. Select the **Print Quality** setting you want to use.
13. Select any of the available print options.

[Paper Source Options - Mac](#)

[Print Quality Options - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

#### **Related references**

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software](#)

#### **Related tasks**

[Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac](#)

[Printing Your Document - Mac](#)

### **Paper Source Options - Mac**

You can select any of the available options in the Paper Source menu to print on the paper loaded in that source.

#### **Auto Select**

Automatically selects the paper source based on the selected paper size.

#### **Paper Cassette**

Selects the paper in the cassette as the paper source.

#### **Rear Paper Feed Slot**

Selects the paper in the rear feed slot as the paper source.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

### **Print Quality Options - Mac**

You can select any of the available Print Quality options to fine-tune the quality of your print. Some settings may be unavailable, depending on the paper type setting you have chosen.

**Draft**

For draft printing on plain paper.

**Normal**

For everyday text and image printing.

**Normal - Vivid**

For everyday text and image printing with good quality and print speed.

**Fine**

For text and graphics with good quality and print speed.

**Quality**

For text and graphics with increased quality and print speed.

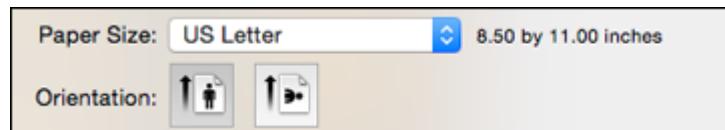
**Best Quality**

For the best print quality, but the slowest print speed.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

## Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac

Depending on your application, you may be able to select the paper size and orientation settings from the print window.



**Note:** If you do not see these settings in the print window, check for them in your application before printing. They may be accessible by selecting **Page Setup** from the File menu.

1. Select the size of the paper you loaded as the **Paper Size** setting.
2. Select the orientation of your document or photo as shown in the print window.

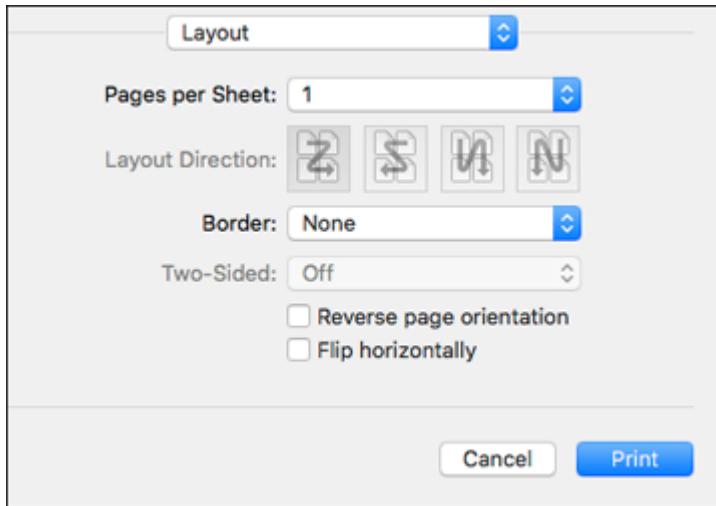
**Note:** If you are printing an envelope, select the icon.

**Note:** You can reduce or enlarge the size of the printed image by selecting **Paper Handling** from the pop-up menu and selecting a scaling option.

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

## Selecting Print Layout Options - Mac

You can select a variety of layout options for your document or photo by selecting **Layout** from the pop-up menu on the print window.

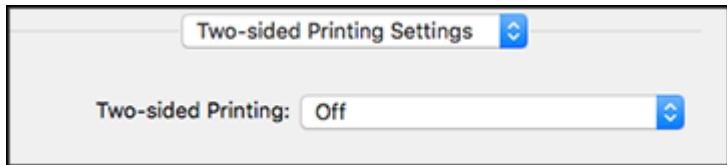


- To print multiple pages on one sheet of paper, select the number of pages in the **Pages per Sheet** pop-up menu. To arrange the print order of the pages, select a **Layout Direction** setting.
- To print borders around each page on the sheet, select a line setting from the **Border** pop-up menu.
- To print on both sides of each page, select a setting from the **Two-Sided** pop-up menu.
- To invert or flip the printed image, select the **Reverse page orientation** or **Flip horizontally** settings.

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

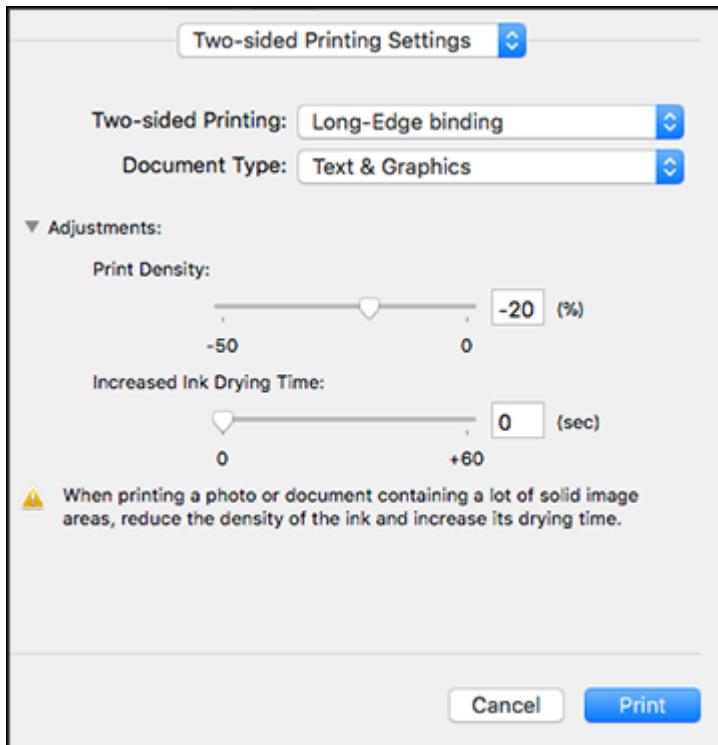
## Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Mac

You can print on both sides of the paper by selecting **Two-sided Printing Settings** from the pop-up menu on the print window.



**Note:** Some options may be pre-selected or unavailable, depending on other settings you have chosen or if you are accessing the product over a network. This screen may be different, depending on the Mac OS version you are using.

1. Select one of the **Two-sided Printing** options.
2. Select the type of document you are printing as the **Document Type** setting. The software automatically sets the Adjustments options for that document type.



3. If necessary, customize the Adjustments settings as instructed on the screen.

4. Print a test copy of your double-sided document to test the selected settings.
5. Follow any instructions displayed on the screen during printing.

[Double-sided Printing Options and Adjustments - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

## **Double-sided Printing Options and Adjustments - Mac**

You can select any of the available options in the **Two-sided Printing Settings** pop-up menu to set up your double-sided print job.

### **Long-Edge binding**

Orients double-sided printed pages to be bound on the long edge of the paper.

### **Short-Edge binding**

Orients double-sided printed pages to be bound on the short edge of the paper.

### **Print Density**

Sets the level of ink coverage for double-sided printing.

### **Increased Ink Drying Time**

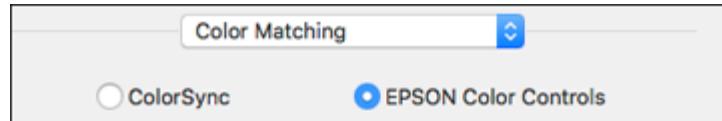
Sets the amount of time required for drying ink after printing on one side of the paper before printing the other side in double-sided printing.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Double-sided Printing Settings - Mac](#)

## **Managing Color - Mac**

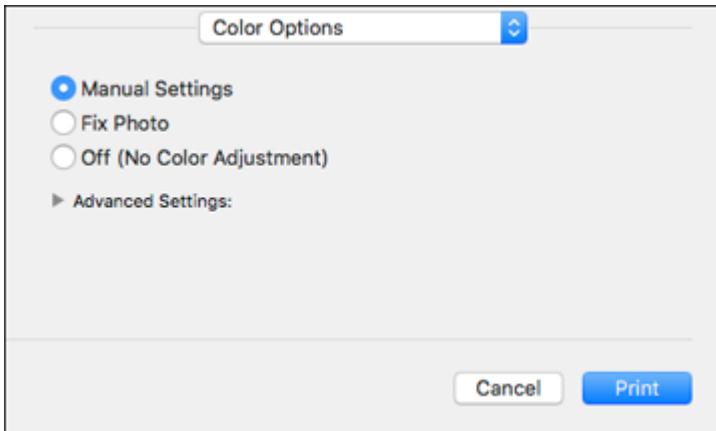
You can adjust the Color Matching and Color Options settings to fine-tune the colors in your printout or turn off color management in your printer software.

1. Select **Color Matching** from the pop-up menu in the print window.



2. Select one of the available options.

3. Select **Color Options** from the pop-up menu in the print window.



**Note:** The available settings on the Color Options menu depend on the option you selected on the Color Matching menu.

4. Select one of the available options.

[Color Matching and Color Options - Mac](#)

[Parent topic: Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

## Color Matching and Color Options - Mac

You can select these settings on the **Color Matching** and **Color Options** menus.

### Color Matching Settings

#### EPSON Color Controls

Lets you manage color using controls in your printer driver or turn off color management.

#### ColorSync

Prints using standard color profiles for your product and paper to help match image colors. You can customize the conversion method and filter settings on the ColorSync pop-up menu in the print window.

## Color Options Settings

### Manual Settings

Lets you select manual color adjustments. Click the arrow next to **Advanced Settings** and select settings for **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Saturation**, and individual color tones. You can also select a color **Mode** setting for printing photos and graphics and the **Fix Red-Eye** setting to reduce or remove red-eye in photos. Depending on the selected color mode, you can also adjust the midtone density using the **Gamma** setting.

### Fix Photo

Improves the color, contrast, and sharpness of flawed photos. Click the arrow next to **Advanced Settings** and select the **Fix Red-Eye** setting to reduce or remove red-eye in photos.

**Note:** Fix Photo uses a sophisticated face recognition technology to optimize photos that include faces. For this to work, both eyes and the nose must be visible in the subject's face. If your photo includes a face with an intentional color cast, such as a statue, you may want to turn off **Fix Photo** to retain the special color effects.

### Off (No Color Adjustment)

Turns off color management in your printer software so you can manage color using only your application software.

**Note:** An ICC profile is required if color management is turned off.

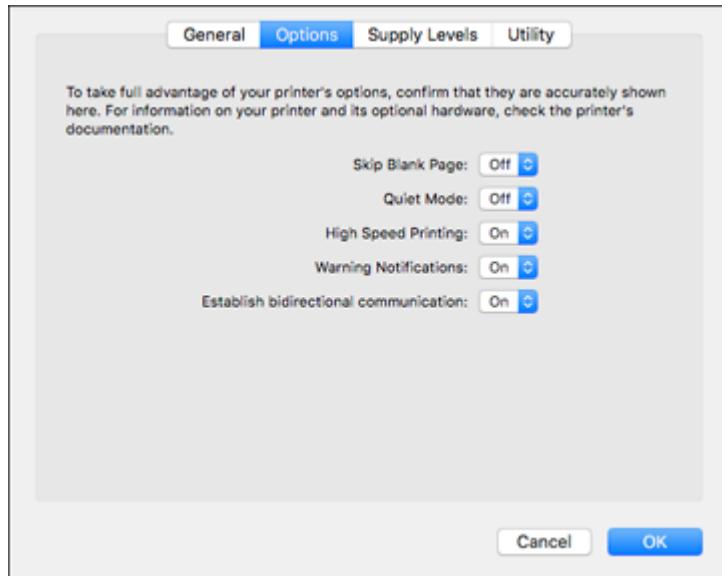
Parent topic: [Managing Color - Mac](#)

## Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac

You can select printing preferences that apply to all the print jobs you send to your product.

1. In the Apple menu or the Dock, select **System Preferences**.
2. Select **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners**, select your product, and select **Options & Supplies**.
3. Select **Driver** or **Options**.

You see a screen like this:



**Note:** The available settings and appearance of the options window may be different than those covered here, depending on the Mac OS version and the application you are using.

4. Select any of the available printing preferences.
5. Click **OK**.

#### [Printing Preferences - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

#### **Printing Preferences - Mac**

You can select these settings on the **Options** or **Driver** tab.

##### **Skip Blank Page**

Ensures that your product does not print pages that contain no text or images.

##### **Quiet Mode**

Lessens noise during printing but may decrease print speed.

##### **High Speed Printing**

Speeds up printing but may reduce print quality.

### **Warning Notifications**

Lets you choose whether or not to receive warning notifications from the printer software for various operating conditions.

### **Establish bidirectional communication**

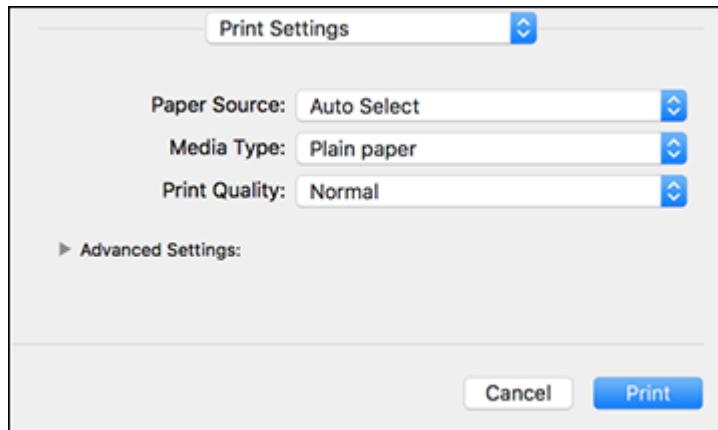
Allows the product to communicate with the computer. Do not change the default setting unless you experience issues when using a shared printing pool.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac](#)

## **Printing Your Document - Mac**

Once you have selected your print settings, you are ready to print.

Click **Print** at the bottom of the print window.



[Checking Print Status - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the Epson Standard Printer Software - Mac](#)

### **Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Print Layout Options - Mac](#)

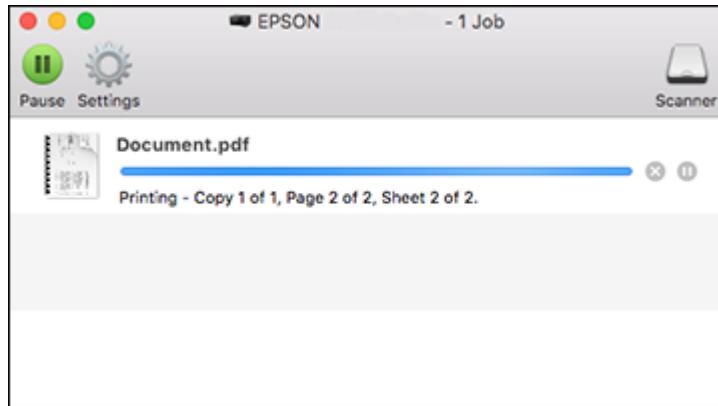
[Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac](#)

## Checking Print Status - Mac

During printing, you can view the progress of your print job, control printing, and check ink status.

1. Click the printer icon when it appears in the Dock.

You see the print status window:



2. Select the following options as necessary for your Mac OS version:

- To cancel printing, click the print job and click or **Delete**.
- To pause a print job, click the print job and click or **Hold**. To resume a print job, click the paused print job and click or **Resume**.
- To pause printing for all queued print jobs, click **Pause** or **Pause Printer**.
- To display other printer information, click **Settings** or **Supply Levels**.

**Parent topic:** [Printing Your Document - Mac](#)

## Printing with the PCL Printer Software - Windows

You can print with the PCL printer software using any Windows printing program, as described in these sections (ET-5180).

[Synchronizing Printer Settings - PCL Driver - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - PCL Driver - Windows](#)

[Selecting Default Print Settings - PCL Driver - Windows](#)

## Synchronizing Printer Settings - PCL Driver - Windows

You may need to synchronize the printer driver with the product if the printer driver does not detect the correct information or settings from the product.

1. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows 10:** Click  and select  (Settings) > **Devices > Printers & scanners**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Manage > Printer properties**.
  - **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Printer properties**.
  - **Windows 7:** Click  and select **Devices and Printers**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Printer properties**.
  - **Windows Vista:** Click  and select **Control Panel**. Click **Printer** under **Hardware and Sound**, then right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Properties**.
2. Click the **Optional Settings** tab.
3. Make sure **Acquire from Printer** is selected and click **Get**.  
The product's settings and other information appears in the Current Printer Information area.
4. Click **OK**.

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the PCL Printer Software - Windows](#)

## Selecting Basic Print Settings - PCL Driver - Windows

Select the basic settings for the document or photo you want to print.

**Note:** The names of settings on the PCL driver screens may vary slightly, depending on the version of the driver you have installed.

1. Open a photo or document for printing.

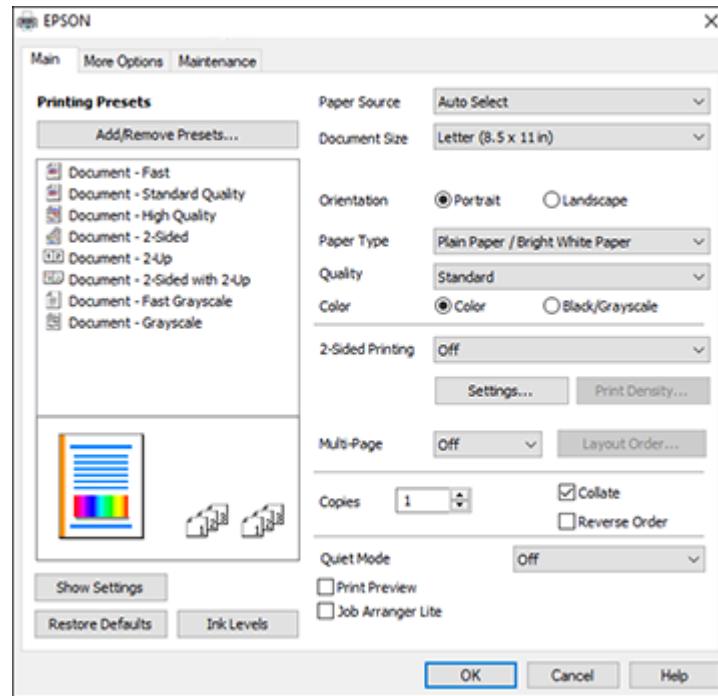
2. Select the print command in your application.

**Note:** You may need to select a print icon on your screen, the **Print** option in the **File** menu, or another command. See your application's help utility for details.

3. If necessary, select the PCL option of your product as the printer you want to use.

**Note:** You may also need to select **Properties** or **Preferences** to view your print settings.

You see the **Main** tab of your printer settings window:



**Note:** For more information about a setting, right-click it and select **Help**.

4. For the **Paper Source** setting, select where you loaded the paper you want to print on.

5. Select the size of the paper you loaded as the **Document Size** setting.

**Note:** You can also select the **User-Defined** setting to create a custom paper size.

6. Select the orientation of your document.

**Note:** If you are printing an envelope, select **Landscape**.

7. Select the type of paper you loaded as the **Paper Type** setting.

**Note:** The setting may not exactly match the name of your paper. Check the paper type settings list for details.

8. Select any of the available print options.

9. To select a variety of additional layout and printing options for your document or photo, select the **More Options** tab and select the printing options you want.

10. To select maintenance and other optional settings, select the **Maintenance** tab and select the options you want.

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the PCL Printer Software - Windows](#)

#### **Related references**

[Paper Source Options - Windows](#)

[Print Quality Options - Windows](#)

[Multi-Page Printing Options - Windows](#)

[Double-sided Printing Options - Windows](#)

[Print Density Adjustments - Windows](#)

[Custom Color Correction Options - Windows](#)

[Image Options and Additional Settings - Windows](#)

[Header/Footer Settings - Windows](#)

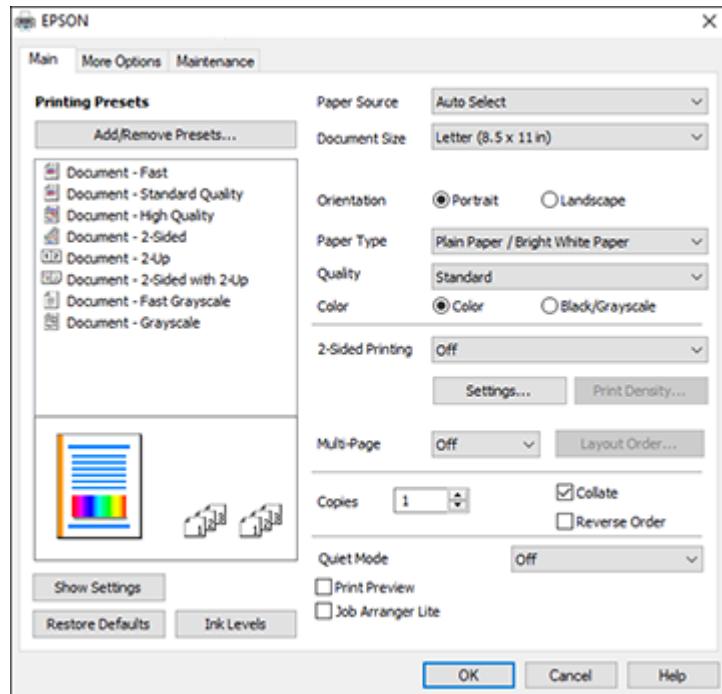
## **Selecting Default Print Settings - PCL Driver - Windows**

When you change your print settings in a program, the changes apply only while you are printing in that program session. If you want to change the print settings you use in all your Windows programs, you can select new default print settings.

1. Do one of the following:

- **Windows 10:** Click  and select  (Settings) > **Devices** > **Printers & scanners**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Manage** > **Printing preferences**.
- **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Devices and Printers**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Printing preferences**.
- **Windows 7:** Click  and select **Devices and Printers**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Printing preferences**.
- **Windows Vista:** Click  and select **Control Panel**. Click **Printer** under **Hardware and Sound**, then right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Properties**.

You see the printer settings window:



**Note:** For more information about a setting, right-click it and select **Help**.

2. Select the print settings you want to use as defaults in all your Windows programs.
3. Click **OK**.

These settings are now the defaults selected for printing. You can still change them as needed for printing in any program session.

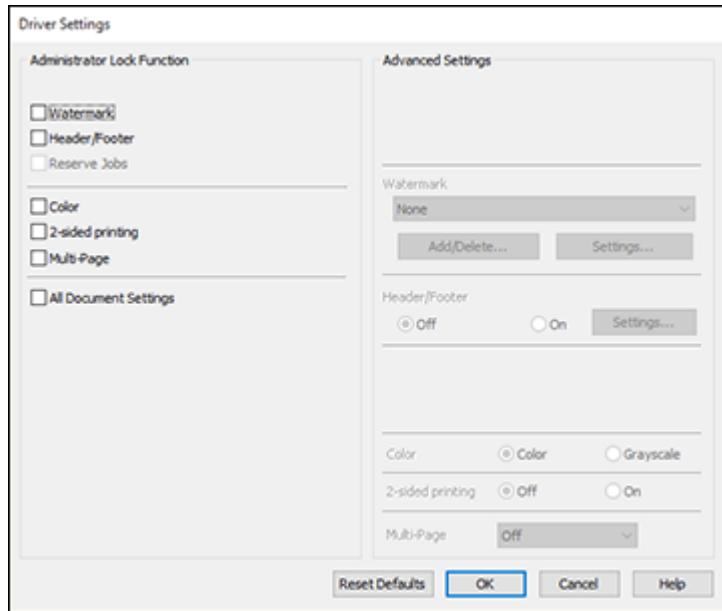
**Parent topic:** [Printing with the PCL Printer Software - Windows](#)

## Locking Printer Settings - PCL Driver - Windows

Administrators can lock some printer settings to prevent unauthorized changes.

1. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows 10:** Click  and select  (Settings) > **Devices** > **Printers & scanners**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Manage** > **Printer properties**.
  - **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Devices and Printers**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Printer properties**.
  - **Windows 7:** Click  and select **Devices and Printers**. Right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Printer properties**.
  - **Windows Vista:** Click  and select **Control Panel**. Click **Printer** under **Hardware and Sound**, then right-click on your product, select the PCL option, and select **Properties**.
2. Click the **Optional Settings** tab.
3. Click **Driver Settings**.

You see this window:



4. Select the checkbox for the settings you want to lock. To lock all print settings, select **All Document Settings**.
5. Under **Advanced Settings**, select the setting option you want to use for each locked setting.
6. Click **OK**.

#### [PCL Driver Locked Setting Options](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the PCL Printer Software - Windows](#)

#### **PCL Driver Locked Setting Options**

Select the options you want to use for any locked print settings.

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Watermark</b>	Various text watermarks	Lets you select the text for the watermark or prohibit watermarks
	<b>Add/Delete</b>	Lets you add or delete a customized text or image-based watermark
	<b>Settings</b>	Lets you select the size, position, and other watermark settings
<b>Header/Footer</b>	<b>Off</b>	Prohibits headers or footers
	<b>On</b>	Allows headers and footers
	<b>Settings</b>	Lets you select the text and position for printing headers and footers
<b>Color</b>	<b>Color</b>	Allows color printing
	<b>Grayscale</b>	Allows printing in black or shades of gray only
<b>2-sided printing</b>	<b>Off</b>	Allows printing on only one side of the paper
	<b>On</b>	Allows printing on both sides of the paper
<b>Multi-Page</b>	<b>Off</b>	Prohibits multi-page settings
	<b>2-Up</b>	Allows printing of 2 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>4-Up</b>	Allows printing of 4 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>6-Up</b>	Allows printing of 6 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>8-Up</b>	Allows printing of 8 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>9-Up</b>	Allows printing of 9 pages on one sheet of paper
	<b>16-Up</b>	Allows printing of 16 pages on one sheet of paper

Parent topic: [Locking Printer Settings - PCL Driver - Windows](#)

## Printing with the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Windows

You can print with the PostScript (PS3) printer software using any Windows printing program, as described in these sections (ET-5180).

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Windows](#)

[Selecting Default Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Windows](#)

[Parent topic: Printing from a Computer](#)

## Selecting Basic Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Windows

Select the basic settings for the document or photo you want to print.

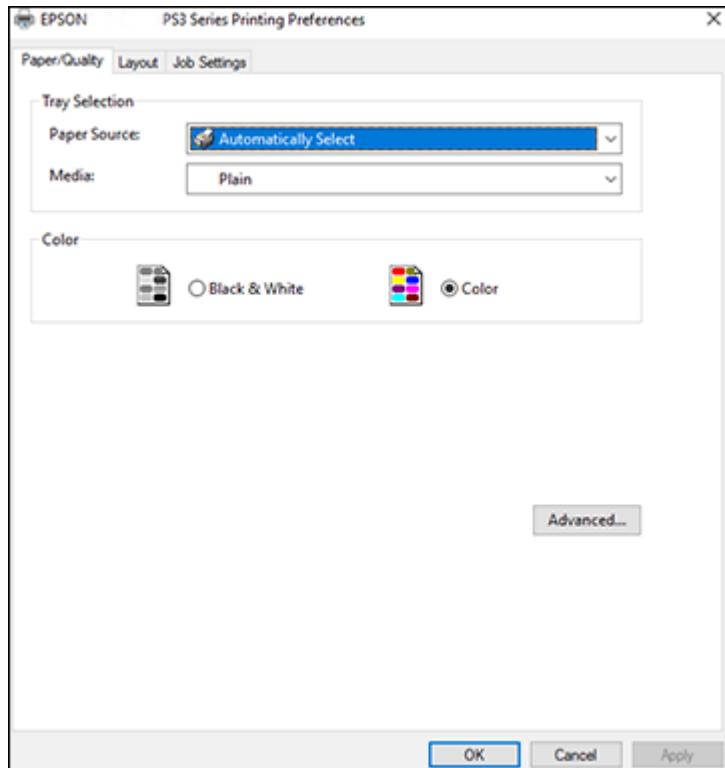
The PostScript printer software supports plain paper printing on these paper and envelope sizes:

- A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm])
  - Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])
  - Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm])
  - A6 (4.1 × 5.8 inches [105 × 148 mm])
  - Executive (7.25 × 10.5 inches [184 × 267 mm])
  - No. 10 (4.1 × 9.5 inches [105 × 241 mm])
1. Open a photo or document for printing.
  2. Select the print command in your application.

**Note:** You may need to select a print icon on your screen, the **Print** option in the **File** menu, or another command. See your application's help utility for details.

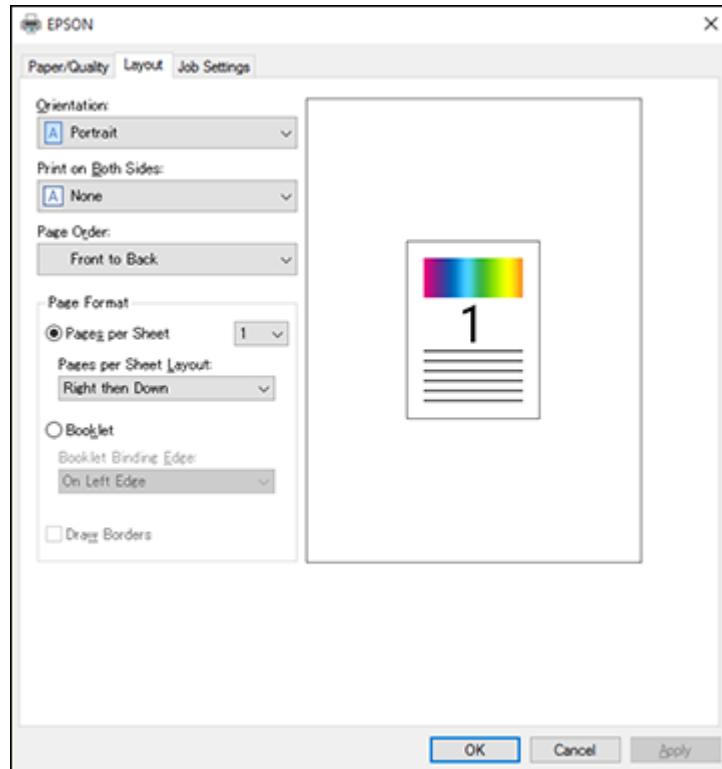
3. If necessary, select your product name as the printer you want to use, and then click the **Preferences** button.

You see this window:



4. Select the **Paper Source** that matches where you loaded the paper you want to print on.
5. Select **Plain** as the **Media** setting.
6. Select one of the following as the Color setting:
  - To print text and graphics in black only, select the **Black & White** setting.
  - To print a color document or photo, select the **Color** setting.
7. To select additional layout and printing options, select **Advanced** and select additional settings as necessary.
8. Click the **Layout** tab.

You see this window:



9. Select the print options as necessary.
10. Click **OK** when you are finished.

**Parent topic:** Printing with the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Windows

**Related references**

[Paper Source Options - Windows](#)

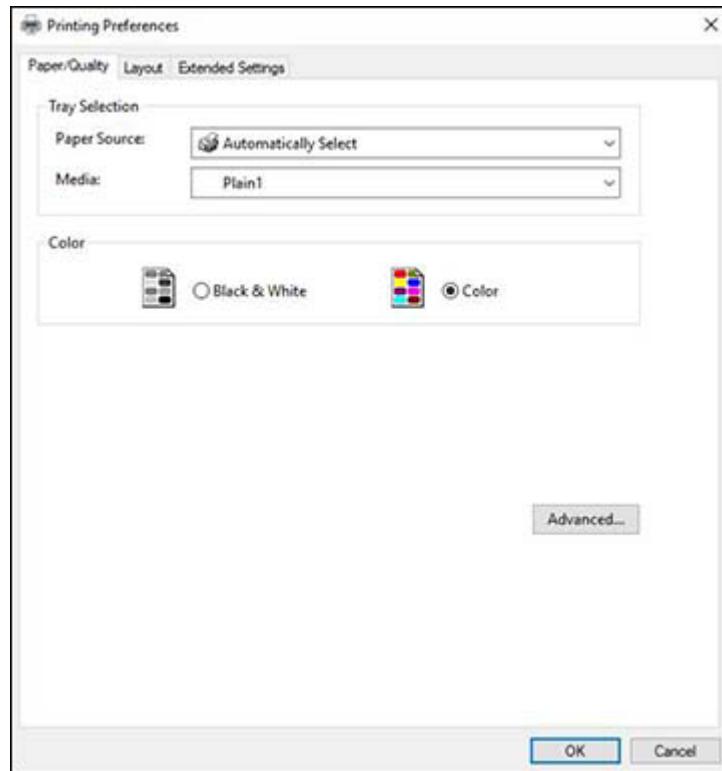
## Selecting Default Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Windows

When you change your print settings in a program, the changes apply only while you are printing in that program session. If you want to change the print settings you use in all your Windows programs, you can select new default print settings.

1. Do one of the following:

- **Windows 10:** Click  and select  (Settings) > **Devices > Printers & scanners**. Select your product name and select **Manage > Printing preferences**.
- **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers**. Right-click your product name and select **Print Preferences**.
- **Windows 7:** Click  and select **Devices and Printers**. Right-click your product name and select **Printing Preferences**.
- **Windows Vista:** Click  and select **Control Panel**. Click **Printer** under **Hardware and Sound**, right-click your product name, and select **Printing Preferences**.

You see the printer settings window:



2. Select the print settings you want to use as defaults in all your Windows programs.
3. Click **OK**.

These settings are now the defaults selected for printing. You can still change them as needed for printing in any program session.

#### [PostScript Printer Driver Options - Windows](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing with the PostScript \(PS3\) Printer Software - Windows](#)

#### **PostScript Printer Driver Options - Windows**

Select the print options you want to use for PostScript printing.

**Note:** Menus may vary depending on the option selected.

#### **Paper/Quality Options**

<b>Setting</b>	<b>Options</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Tray Selection</b>	<b>Paper Source</b>	Select the paper source from which the paper is fed
	<b>Media</b>	Select the type of paper on which you want to print <b>Unspecified:</b> printing is performed from the paper source for which the paper type is set to the following in the printer's settings: plain paper, Preprinted, Letterhead, Color, Recycled, High quality plain paper.  <b>Note:</b> Paper cannot be fed from a paper source that is set to off in the printer's <b>Auto Select Settings</b> .
<b>Color</b>	<b>Black &amp; White</b>	Select the color for your print job
	<b>Color</b>	

#### **Layout Options**

<b>Setting</b>	<b>Options</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Orientation</b>	various	Select the orientation you want to use to print
<b>Print on Both Sides</b>	—	Select to perform 2-sided printing

Setting	Options	Description
Page Order	various	Select to print from the top or the last page. If you select <b>Back to Front</b> , the pages are stacked in the correct order based on page number after printing.
Page Format	Pages per Sheet	Allows you to specify the page layout when printing several pages on one sheet
	Booklet	Select the binding position for a booklet
	Draw Borders	Select to place a border line for each page when printing several pages on one sheet or when creating a booklet

### Job Options

**Note:** Printer use may be restricted by the administrator. Printing is available after registering your account to the printer driver. Contact the administrator for details on your user account.

Setting	Options	Description
Save Access Control Settings	User Name	Allows you to enter a user name and password when you set <b>Access Control Settings</b>
	Password	

### Advanced Options

Setting	Options	Description
Paper/Output	Paper Size	Select the paper size and number of copies
	Copies	
Graphic	Print Quality	Select the print quality you want to use for your print job
	Image Color Management	Select the ICM you want to use for your print job
	Scaling	Allows you to reduce or enlarge the document
	TrueType Font	Sets the font substitute to TrueType Font

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Document Options</b>	<b>Advanced Printing Features</b>	Allows you to make detailed settings for printing features
	<b>PostScript Options</b>	Allows you to make optional settings
	<b>Printer Features</b>	<p>Set the following menu items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Color Mode:</b> Select whether to print in color or in monochrome</li> <li>• <b>Press Simulation:</b> Select a CMYK ink color to simulate when you print by reproducing the CMYK ink color of the offset press</li> <li>• <b>Ink Save Mode:</b> Conserves ink by reducing the print density</li> <li>• <b>Rotate by 180°:</b> Rotates the data 180 degrees before printing</li> </ul>

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Default Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Windows](#)

## Printing with the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Mac

You can print with the PostScript (PS3) printer software using any Mac printing program, as described in these sections (ET-5180).

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Printing from a Computer](#)

## Selecting Basic Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Mac

Select the basic settings for the document or photo you want to print.

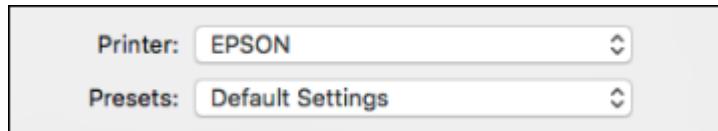
The PostScript printer software supports plain paper printing on these paper and envelope sizes:

- A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm])
- Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm])
- No. 10 (4.1 × 9.5 inches [105 × 241 mm])
- A5 (5.8 × 8.2 inches [148 × 210 mm])
- A6 (4.1 × 5.8 inches [105 × 148 mm])

- Executive (7.25 × 10.5 inches [184 × 267 mm])
  - Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm])
1. Open a photo or document for printing.
  2. Select the print command in your application.

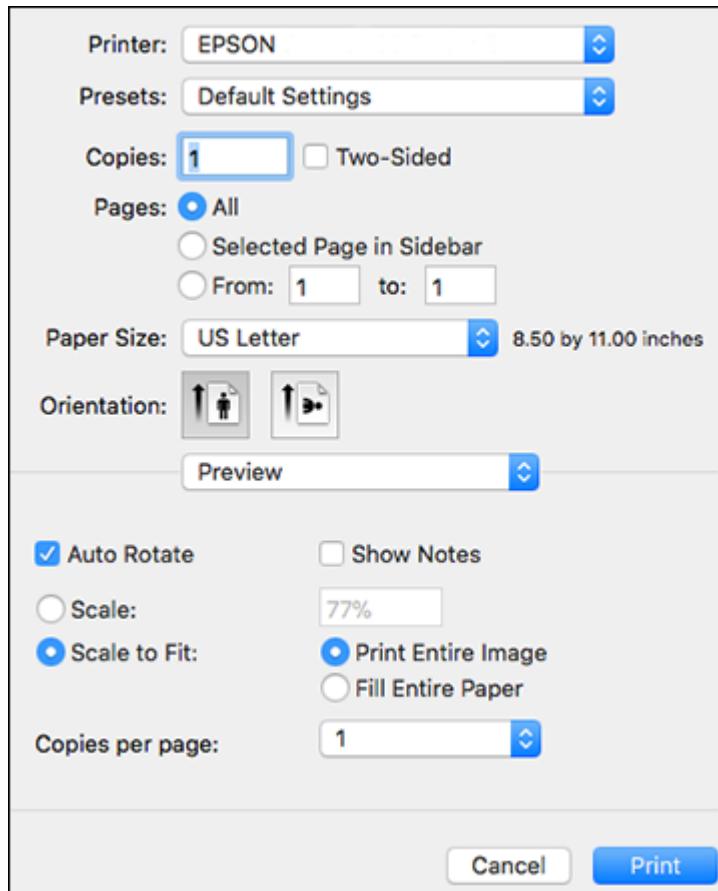
**Note:** You may need to select a print icon on your screen, the **Print** option in the **File** menu, or another command. See your application's help utility for details.

3. Select your product as the **Printer** setting.



4. If necessary, click the arrow next to the Printer setting or the **Show Details** button to expand the print window.

You see the expanded printer settings window for your product:



**Note:** The print window may look different, depending on the Mac OS version and the application you are using.

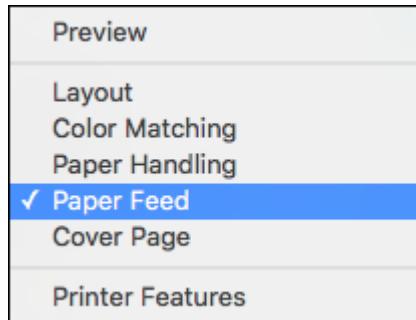
5. Select the **Two-Sided**, **Copies**, and **Pages** settings as necessary.

**Note:** If you do not see these settings in the print window, check for them in your application before printing.

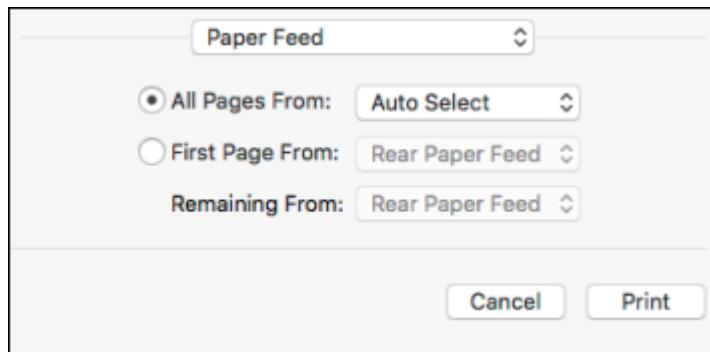
6. Select the page setup options: **Paper Size** and **Orientation**.

**Note:** If you do not see these settings in the print window, check for them in your application before printing. They may be accessible by selecting **Page Setup** from the File menu.

7. Select any application-specific settings that appear on the screen, such as those shown in the image above for the Preview application.
8. Select **Paper Feed** from the pop-up menu.

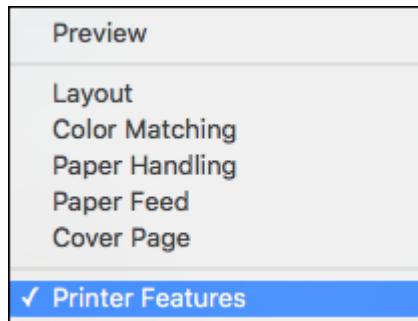


You see these settings:

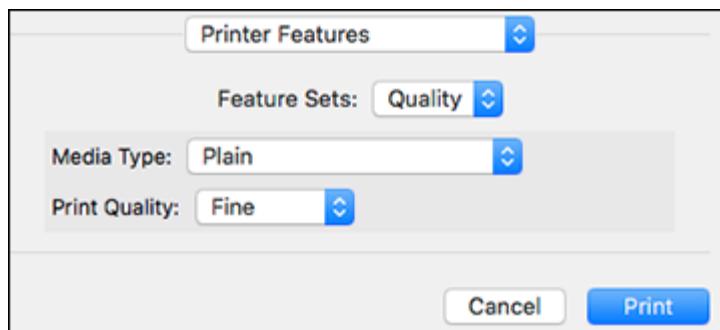


9. Select **All Pages From** or **First Page From** and select the paper source you want to print from.

10. Select **Printer Features** from the pop-up menu.



You see these settings:



11. Select **Plain** as the **Media Type** setting.

12. Select one of the following **Print Quality** options:

- For fast printing with reduced quality, select **Fast**.
- For printing text and graphics with good quality and print speed, select **Fine**.
- For the best printing with reduced speed, select **Maximum**.

13. Select any of the following from the pop-up menu as necessary:

- Select **Layout** to adjust a variety of layout options for your document or photo.
- Select **Paper Handling** to adjust the size of the image as you print it.

- Select **Color Matching** to fine-tune the colors in your printout.

[PostScript Printer Driver Options - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** Printing with the PostScript (PS3) Printer Software - Mac

**Related tasks**

[Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Print Layout Options - Mac](#)

[Printing Your Document - Mac](#)

**PostScript Printer Driver Options - Mac**

Select the print options you want to use for PostScript printing.

**Note:** Menus may vary depending on the option selected.

**Layout Options**

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Pages per Sheet</b>	—	Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet
<b>Layout Direction</b>	various	Allows you to specify the order in which the pages will print
<b>Border</b>	—	Select to print a border around the pages
<b>Two-Sided</b>	—	Select to perform 2-sided printing
<b>Reverse Page Orientation</b>	—	Rotates the page 180 degrees before printing
<b>Flip Horizontally</b>	—	Select to invert the printed image

**Color Matching Options**

Setting	Options	Description
<b>ColorSync/In Printer</b>	various	Select a color adjustment option to minimize the difference in color between the printer and the computer display

**Paper Handling Options**

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Collate Pages</b>	—	Select to print multi-page documents collated in order and sorted into sets
<b>Pages to Print</b>	—	Select to print only odd or even pages
<b>Page Order</b>	various	Select to print from the top or the last page
<b>Scale to Fit Paper Size</b>	—	Select to scale the image to fit on the paper size you loaded
<b>Destination Paper Size</b>	various	Select the paper size to print on
<b>Scale Down Only</b>	—	Select when reducing the size of the document

### Paper Feed Options

Setting	Options	Description
<b>All Pages From</b>	—	Selecting <b>Auto Select</b> selects the paper source that matches the Paper Setting on the printer automatically
<b>First Page From/Remaining From</b>	various	Select the paper source for each page

### Cover Page Options

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Print Cover Page</b>	various	Select whether or not to print a cover page. When you want to add a back cover, select <b>After document</b> .
<b>Cover Page Type</b>	various	Select the contents of the cover page

### Printer Features Options

Setting	Options	Description
Quality	Media Type	Select the type of paper on which you want to print <b>Unspecified:</b> printing is performed from the paper source for which the paper type is set to the following in the printer's settings: plain paper, Preprinted, Letterhead, Color, Recycled, High quality plain paper. <b>Note:</b> Paper cannot be fed from a paper source that is set to off in the printer's <b>Auto Select Settings</b> .
	Print Quality	Select the print quality you want to use for printing
Color	Color Mode	Select whether to print in color or in monochrome
	Press Simulation	Select a CMYK ink color to simulate when you print by reproducing the CMYK ink color of the offset press
Others	Ink Save Mode	Select to conserve ink by reducing the print density

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Basic Print Settings - PostScript Printer Software - Mac](#)

## Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet

You can print from a smartphone or tablet running iOS or Android using the Epson Smart Panel app.

**Note:** Your device must be connected to the same wireless network as your Epson product, and Epson Smart Panel must be configured for use with your product.

1. Download the Epson Smart Panel app from your device's app store or from Epson's website. See the link below.
2. Open the Epson Smart Panel app and select a print menu on the home screen.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to begin printing.

**Parent topic:** [Printing from a Computer](#)

### Related tasks

[Using the Epson Smart Panel Mobile App](#)

[Setting Up Wireless Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet](#)

## Cancelling Printing Using a Product Button

If you need to cancel printing, select **Cancel** on the LCD screen.

**Parent topic:** [Printing from a Computer](#)

---

# Scanning

You can scan your originals and save them as digital files.

[Starting a Scan](#)

## Starting a Scan

After placing your originals on your product for scanning, start scanning using one of these methods.

[Starting a Scan Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Scanning to a Connected Computer](#)

[Scanning to the Cloud](#)

[Setting Up a WSD Port \(Windows 7/Windows Vista\)](#)

[Scanning Using WSD - Windows](#)

[Control Panel Scanning Options](#)

[Changing Default Scan Job Settings](#)

[Starting a Scan Using Epson ScanSmart](#)

[Starting a Scan Using the Epson Scan 2 Icon](#)

[Starting a Scan from a Scanning Program](#)

[Starting a Scan from a Smartphone or Tablet](#)

[Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart](#)

[Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings](#)

[Scanning in Epson Scan 2](#)

[Parent topic: Scanning](#)

## Starting a Scan Using the Product Control Panel

You can scan an image to a variety of destinations using your product's control panel.

Your product automatically selects default scan settings, but you can view or change them as necessary.

If you are scanning to a computer, you can change the default scan settings using the Event Manager utility on the computer.

1. Make sure you installed the product software and connected the product to your computer or network.

**Note:** Restart your computer after installing the product software to enable scanning from the control panel. Also make sure the Event Manager program is not being blocked by your firewall or security software.

2. Place your original on the product for scanning.

**Note:** To scan a double-sided or multi-page document, place your originals in the ADF.

3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Scan**.

You see a screen like this:



5. Select one of the following **Scan to** options:
  - **Computer** lets you scan to a connected computer using your saved scan settings.
  - **Cloud** sends your scanned files to a destination that you have registered with Epson Connect.
  - **WSD** lets you manage network scanning in Windows 10, Windows 8.x, Windows 7, or Windows Vista (English only). To use this feature, you must first set up a WSD (Web Services for Devices) port on your Windows 7 or Windows Vista computer (the port is set up automatically on Windows 10 and Windows 8.x).
6. Follow the instructions in the links below to complete your scan.

**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

**Related tasks**

[Entering Characters on the LCD Screen](#)

[Using Epson Scan to Cloud](#)

[Setting Up Wireless Printing from a Smartphone or Tablet](#)

**Related topics**

[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

## Scanning to a Connected Computer

You can scan an original and save it to a connected computer using your product's control panel. The computer must be connected using a USB cable or connected to the same network as your product.

You can save the scanned file as a JPEG or PDF file, or attach it to an email. You can also set up custom scan settings using Event Manager and automatically scan using those settings on your product control panel.

**Note:** Be sure you have installed Epson ScanSmart, Epson Scan 2, and Event Manager on your computer before scanning to your computer.

1. Place your original on the product for scanning.

**Note:** To scan a multi-page document, place all of the pages in the ADF.

2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Select **Scan**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Select **Computer**.

**Note:** Select **OK** to close the information screen, if necessary.

5. Select **Select a computer** and choose one of the following options:
  - If your computer is connected to your product over a network, select a connected computer from the displayed list. (If the computer is not listed, select **Search Again**.)
  - If your computer is connected to your product using a USB cable, select **USB Connection**.
6. Select **Preview on Computer** and choose one of the following options:
  - **Preview on Computer** to preview the scanned image on your computer before saving it.
  - **Save as JPEG** to save the scanned image as a JPEG file on your computer or as an image capture on a Mac.
  - **Save as PDF** to save the scanned document or image as a PDF file on your computer or as an image capture on a Mac.
7. Select **Send** on the LCD screen to start scanning.

Epson ScanSmart opens and your product scans your original and saves the scanned file to your computer.

**Note:** Click **Help** in Epson ScanSmart for detailed information.

[Parent topic: Starting a Scan](#)

**Related tasks**

[Changing Default Scan Job Settings](#)

## Scanning to the Cloud

You can use the control panel to send your scanned files to a destination that you have registered with Epson Connect.

**Note:** Make sure to set up your product using Epson Connect before using this feature.

1. Place your original on the product for scanning.
2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Select **Scan**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Select **Cloud**.

You see a screen like this:



**Note:** You must register your product with Epson Connect to select a destination.

5. Press the **OK** button to select a destination.
6. Change any of the displayed settings on the **Scan** tab as necessary.
7. Select the **Advanced Settings** tab to view and change additional scan settings, if necessary.
8. On the **Scan** tab, select **Upload** to start scanning.

Your product scans your original and saves the scanned file to the selected destination.

**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

## Setting Up a WSD Port (Windows 7/Windows Vista)

You can scan to a networked Windows computer using WSD (Web Services for Devices). You must first set up a WSD port on your Windows 7 or Windows Vista system (the port is set up automatically on Windows 10 and Windows 8.x).

Before you set up a WSD port, make sure you installed your product software, and connected your product and computer to the same network.

1. Turn on your product.
2. Print a network status sheet so you can identify the network name and model name for your product on the network.
3. Click or **Start** and select **Computer**.

4. On the left side of the window, select **Network**.
5. Locate your product on the Network screen, right-click it, and select **Install**.
6. When you see the User Account Control screen, click **Continue**.

**Note:** If you see an Uninstall screen, click **Uninstall** and repeat these steps as necessary.

7. When you see the message **Your device is ready to use** in the Windows taskbar, click the message.
8. On the Driver Software Installation screen, make sure your product is listed as **Ready to use**. Then click **Close**.
9. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows 7:** Click  and select **Devices and Printers**.
  - **Windows Vista:** Click **Start** and select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers**.
10. Make sure that an icon appears for your product's name on the network.

When you use WSD, select your product name to scan over the network.

**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

## Scanning Using WSD - Windows

You can scan originals to a computer from the product control panel using WSD (Web Services for Devices) for network scanning in Windows.

**Note:** To use this feature on Windows 7 or Windows Vista, you must first set up WSD on the computer. See Windows help for instructions.

1. Make sure you installed the product software and connected the product to your computer or network.
2. Place your original on the product for scanning.
3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Scan**.

You see a screen like this:



5. Select **WSD**.
6. Select a computer.
7. Select  $\diamond$  **Save** on the LCD screen to start scanning.

Your product scans your original and saves the scanned file to your computer.

**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

## Control Panel Scanning Options

Select the options you want to use for scanning.

**Note:** Not all options or settings may be available, depending on the **Scan to** option selected.

Scan to setting	Available options	Description
<b>Color Mode</b>	<b>Color</b>	Select whether to scan images in color or black and white
	<b>B&amp;W</b>	
<b>File Format</b>	<b>JPEG</b>	Select for photos
	<b>PDF</b>	Select for documents

Scan to setting	Available options	Description
Scan Area	Various sizes	Select the page size for documents, then select the orientation of the original
	Auto Cropping	Select for photos with dark edges
	Max Area	Select for most photos
Original Type	Text	Specifies the type of original you are scanning
	Text & Image	
	Photo	
Density	-4 to +4	Adjusts the lightness or darkness of scanned images.
Remove Shadow	On	Erases the shadows that appear in the center of a document when copying a book or the shadows that appear around a document when copying thick paper
	Off	
Remove Punch Holes	On	Erases the binding holes on a document
	Off	
Clear All Settings	Yes	Resets the scan settings to the default settings
	No	

Parent topic: [Starting a Scan](#)

## Changing Default Scan Job Settings

You can view or change the default scan job settings your product uses when you scan to your computer. You do this using the Event Manager program.

- Do one of the following to open Event Manager:
  - Windows 10:** Click  and select **Epson Software > Event Manager**.
  - Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Event Manager**.
  - Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start > All Programs or Programs > Epson Software > Event Manager**.
  - Mac:** Open the **Applications** folder, click **Epson Software**, and select **Event Manager**.

2. Open the **Scanner** (Windows) or **Select Scanner** (Mac) drop-down list and select your product, if necessary.
3. Click **Make Job Settings**.
4. Open the **Edit Job Settings** drop-down list and select the scan job settings you want to view or change.
5. Change the settings as necessary.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Click **Close** to close the Event Manager window.

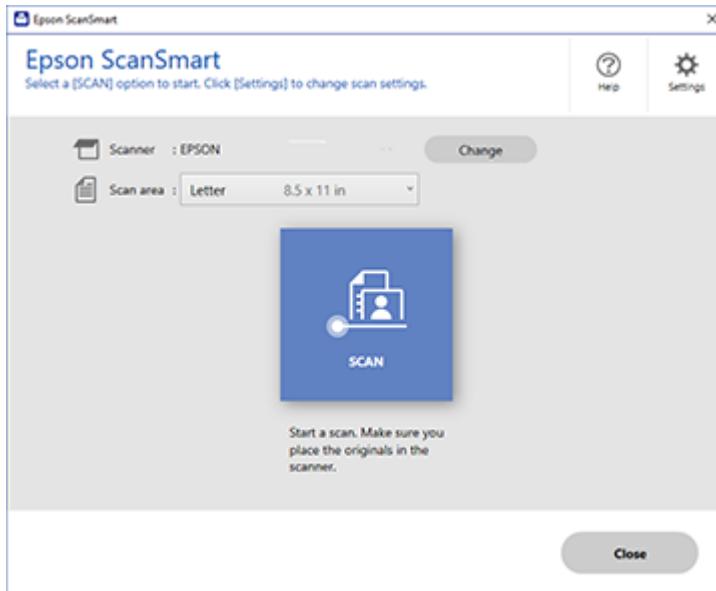
**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

## Starting a Scan Using Epson ScanSmart

You can start the Epson ScanSmart program to scan originals and easily review and edit scanned images. After that, you can save, print, or share them.

- **Windows 10:** Click  > **Epson Software** > **Epson ScanSmart**.
- **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Epson ScanSmart**.
- **Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start**, and select **All Programs** or **Programs**. Select **Epson Software** > **Epson ScanSmart**.
- **Mac:** Open the **Applications** folder, open the **Epson Software** folder, and select **Epson ScanSmart**.

You see a screen like this:



**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

## Starting a Scan Using the Epson Scan 2 Icon

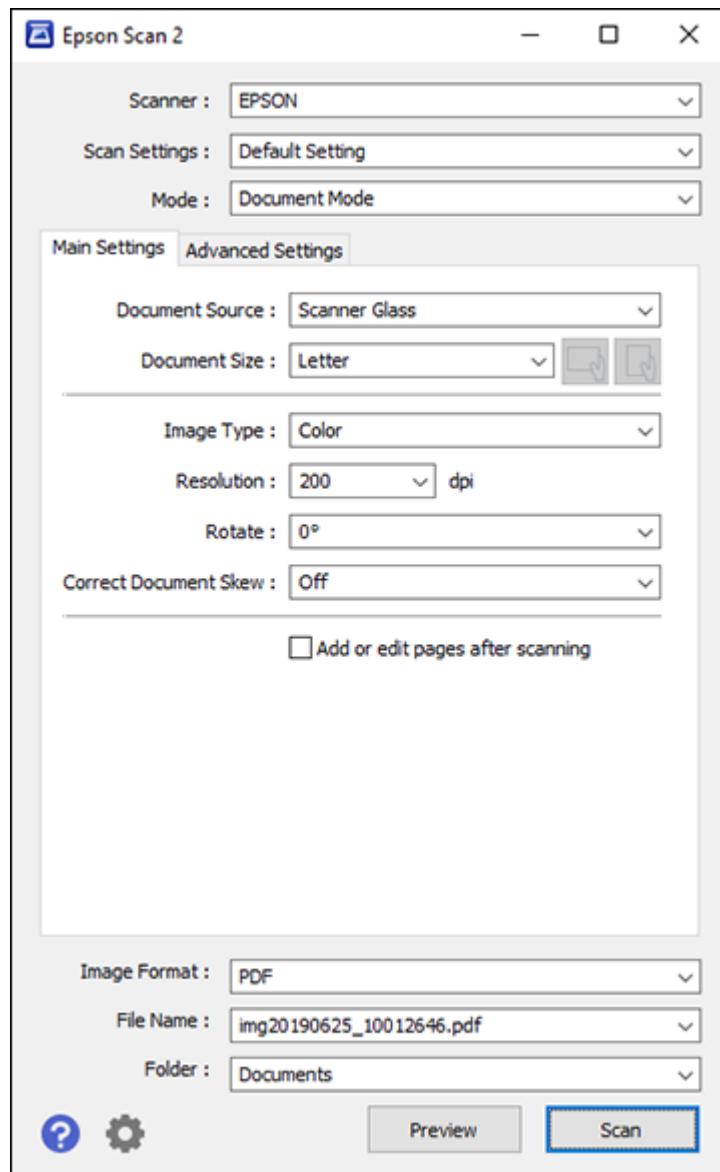
You can start the Epson Scan 2 program to select scan settings, scan, and save the scanned image to a file.

**Note:** If you are using your Epson product with the Windows 10 S operating system, you cannot use the software described in this section. You also cannot download and install any Epson product software from the Epson website for use with Windows 10 S; you must obtain software only from the Windows Store.

- **Windows 10:** Click  and select **EPSON > Epson Scan 2**.
- **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Epson Scan 2**.
- **Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start**, and select **All Programs or Programs**. Select **EPSON > Epson Scan 2 > Epson Scan 2**.

- Mac: Open the **Applications** folder, open the **Epson Software** folder, and select **Epson Scan 2**.

You see an Epson Scan 2 window like this:



[Parent topic: Starting a Scan](#)

## Starting a Scan from a Scanning Program

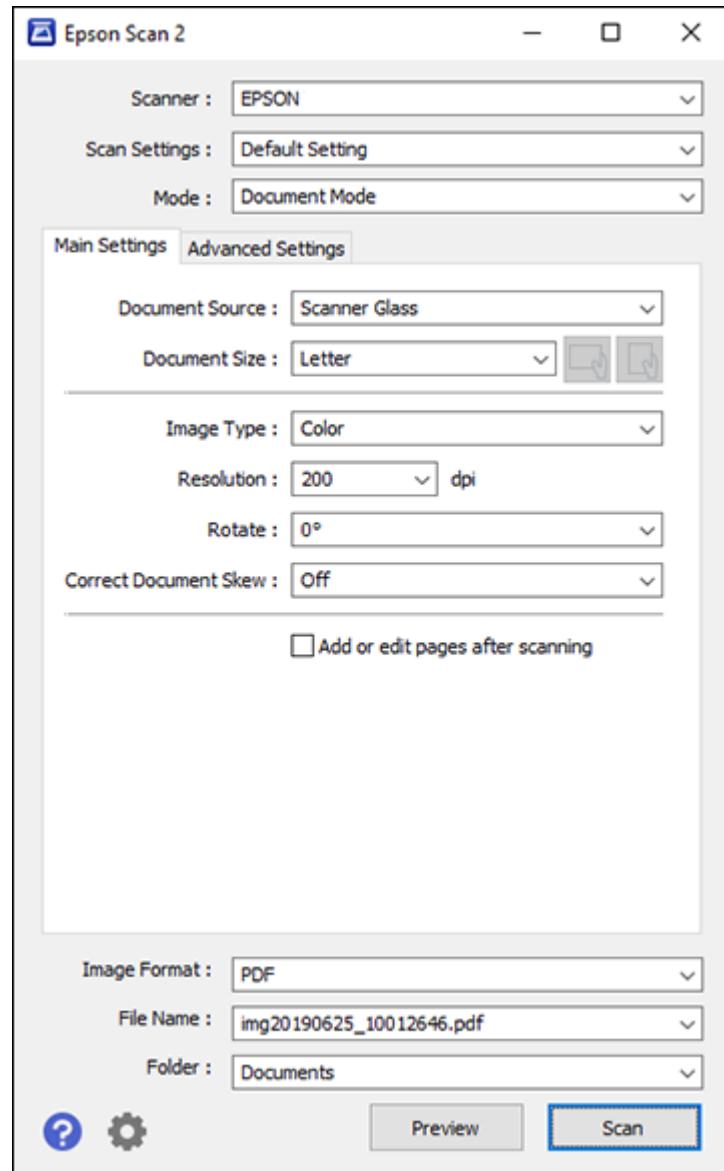
You can start Epson Scan 2 from a TWAIN-compliant scanning program to select scan settings, scan, and open the scanned image in the program.

**Note:** If you are using your Epson product with the Windows 10 S operating system, you cannot use the software described in this section. You also cannot download and install any Epson product software from the Epson website for use with Windows 10 S; you must obtain software only from the Windows Store.

1. Open your scanning program and select its scanning option. (See your scanning program help for instructions.)
2. Select your product.

**Note:** In certain programs, you may need to select your product as the "source" first. If you see a **Select Source** option, choose it and select your product. With Windows, do not select a **WIA** option for your product; not all scan functions will be available.

You see an Epson Scan 2 window like this:



[Parent topic: Starting a Scan](#)

## Starting a Scan from a Smartphone or Tablet

You can use the Epson Smart Panel app to scan from a network scanner to an iOS or Android device over a direct Wi-Fi connection.

1. Download the Epson Smart Panel app from your device's app store or from Epson's website. See the link below.
2. Place your original on the product for scanning.
3. Open the Epson Smart Panel app and select a scan menu on the home screen.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to scan and save your original.

[Parent topic: Starting a Scan](#)

### Related tasks

[Using the Epson Smart Panel Mobile App](#)

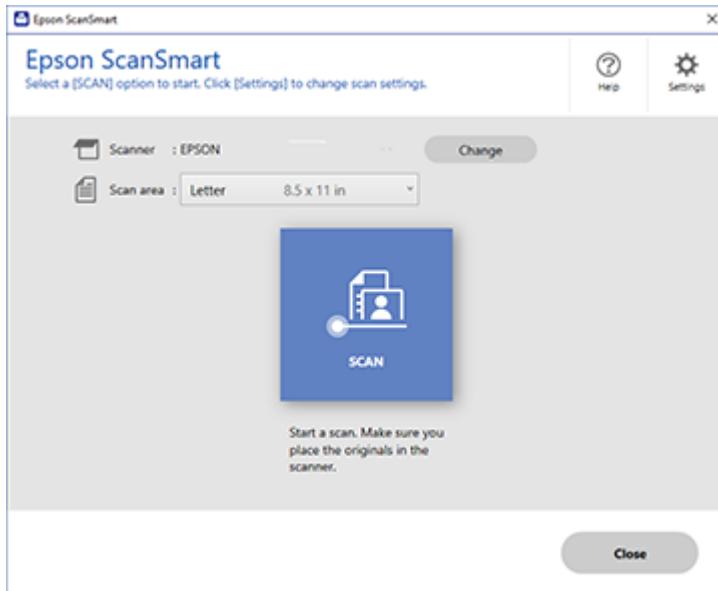
## Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart

You can scan and review documents and photos in Epson ScanSmart.

**Note:** The images in this guide show Windows screens. Mac screens may be slightly different. Depending on your product model and software version, not all options may be available.

1. Load your original into the product.
2. Open Epson ScanSmart on your computer. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows 10:** Click  > **Epson Software** > **Epson ScanSmart**.
  - **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Epson ScanSmart**.
  - **Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start**, and select **All Programs** or **Programs**. Select **Epson Software** > **Epson ScanSmart**.
  - **Mac:** Open the **Applications** folder, open the **Epson Software** folder, and select **Epson ScanSmart**.

You see a screen like this:

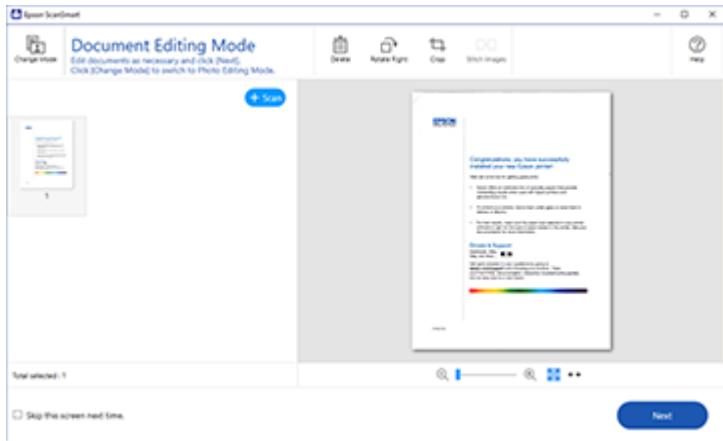


3. Select an option for the **Scan area** setting, if necessary.

**Note:** The **Scan area** setting limits the scan area to a selected size starting at the placement arrow on the scanner bed. It does not scale the image to the selected size.

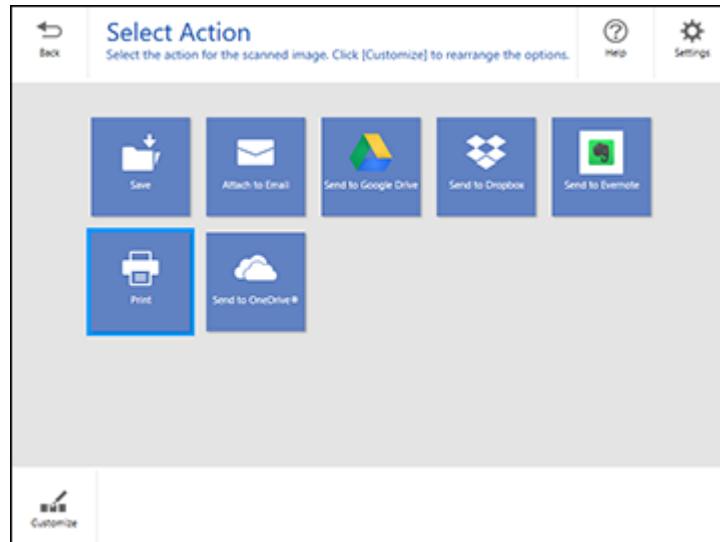
4. Select **SCAN**.

The original is scanned. When scanning is complete, you see a screen like this:



5. You can review, edit, or reorder the scanned images as follows:
  - Select **+ Scan** to scan more originals.
  - Select **Delete** to delete selected scanned images.
  - Select **Rotate Right** to rotate each scanned image.
  - Select **Crop** to crop the selected image.
  - Control-click two images, select **Stitch Images**, and follow the on-screen instructions to combine them into a single image.
6. If Photo Mode is automatically detected, the following enhancement options are available:
  - **Auto Color Enhancement**: automatically adjusts the brightness, contrast, and saturation of your photos
  - **Restore Faded Colors**: restores the colors in faded photos automatically
  - **Remove Red Eye**: automatically removes the red-eye effect from your photos
  - **Auto Cropping**: automatically crops the scanned image edges
7. When you finish reviewing and editing the scanned images, click **Next**.

You see a screen like this:



8. Select an option to save, send, or print the scanned images. See the links below.

[Saving a Scan](#)

[Attaching a Scan to Email](#)

[Sending a Scan to a Cloud Service](#)

[Printing a Scan](#)

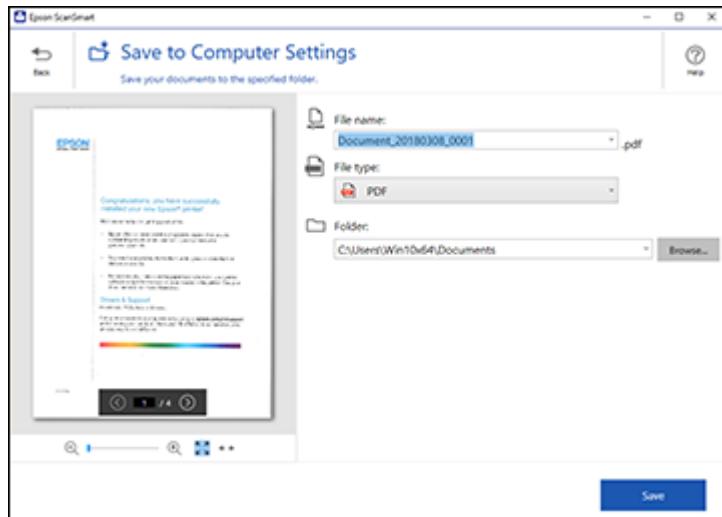
**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

### Saving a Scan

You can save a scanned image to your computer in a variety of formats.

1. Make sure your originals are scanned and reviewed. See the link below.
2. In the **Select Action** window, click **Save**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Change the settings as follows:
  - The document type and scan date for the file name are automatically detected. You can change them as necessary.
  - You can save the scanned image in a variety of formats. If you select Searchable PDF as the **File type** setting, you can select the OCR (Optical Character Recognition) language.
  - Select the folder on your computer where the document is saved.
4. Click **Save**.

**Parent topic:** Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart

#### Attaching a Scan to Email

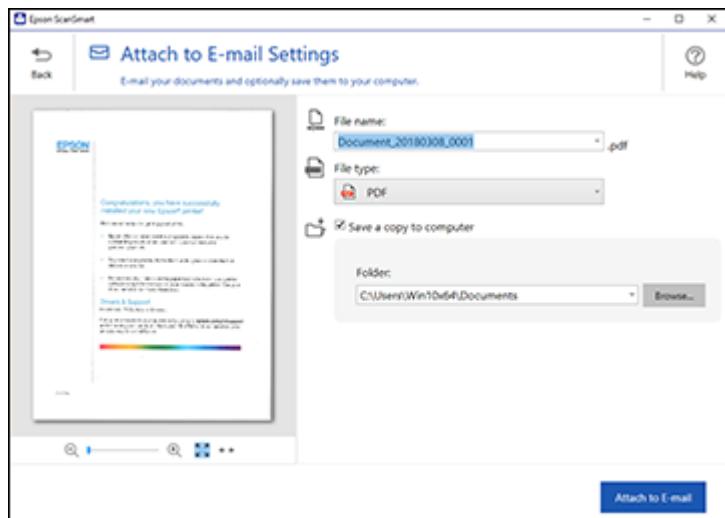
You can attach a scanned image to an email as a file attachment.

**Note:** Your email app and account settings should be configured before scanning. You must install a MAPI-type email program such as Outlook Express, Windows Live Mail, Entourage, or Mac Mail. Web-based email services such as Gmail are not supported. If you do not have a supported email program, you see an error message.

1. Make sure your originals are scanned and reviewed. See the link below.

2. In the **Select Action** window, click **Attach to Email**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Change the settings as follows:

- The document type and scan date for the file name are automatically detected. You can change them as necessary.
- You can save the scanned image in a variety of formats. If you select Searchable PDF as the **File type** setting, you can select the OCR (Optical Character Recognition) language.
- If you also want to save a copy of the scanned image to your computer, make sure the checkbox is selected and select the folder on your computer in which to save the file.

4. Click **Attach to E-mail**.

Your email program opens with the file attached to a new email.

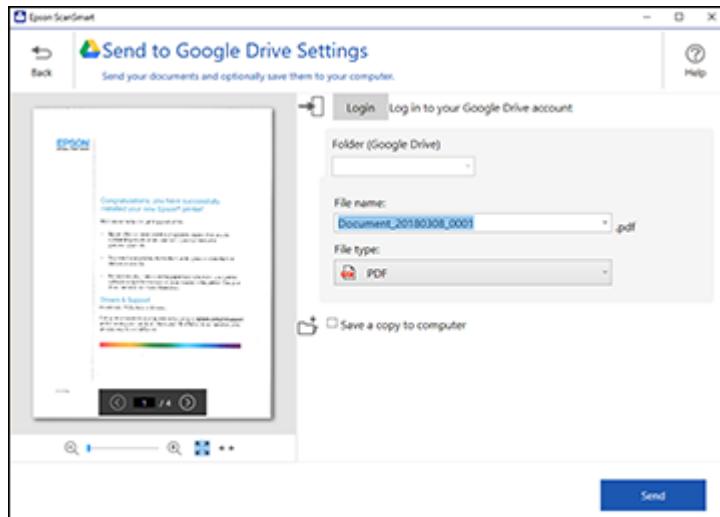
**Parent topic:** Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart

## Sending a Scan to a Cloud Service

You can upload scanned images to a cloud service.

1. Make sure your originals are scanned and reviewed. See the link below.
2. In the **Select Action** window, click one of the cloud service send options.

You see a screen like this:



3. Log in to your account.

**Note:** You may need to allow Epson ScanSmart access to your account. The first time you log in, you may be prompted to enter an authentication code.

4. Change the settings as follows:

- Select the folder in your account where you want to send the document.
- The document type and scan date for the file name are automatically detected. You can change them as necessary.
- You can save the scanned image in a variety of formats. If you select Searchable PDF as the **File type** setting, you can select the OCR (Optical Character Recognition) language.
- If you also want to save a copy of the scanned image to your computer, click the checkbox.

5. Click **Send**.

**Parent topic:** [Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart](#)

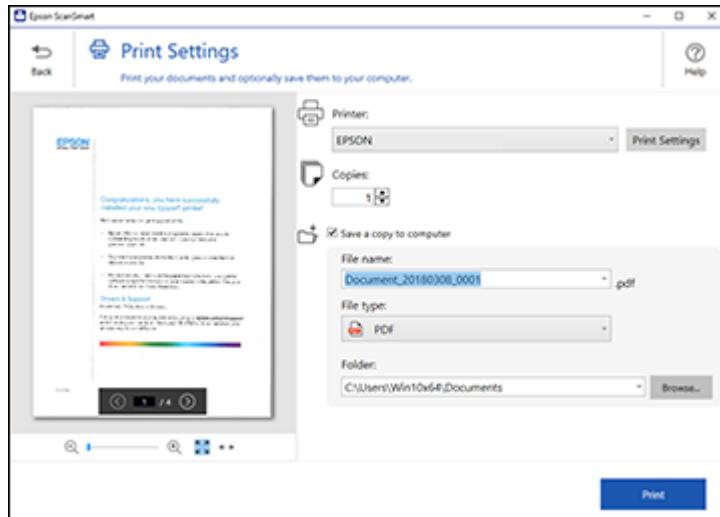
## Printing a Scan

You can print your scanned image and save the scanned file to your computer.

**Note:** Printing scanned images is available only with Epson printers.

1. Make sure your originals are scanned and reviewed. See the link below.
2. In the **Select Action** window, click **Print**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Change the settings as follows:
  - Select the Epson printer and change the print settings, if necessary.
  - Select the number of copies you want to print.
  - If you also want to save a copy of the scanned image to your computer, click the checkbox.
  - The document type and scan date for the file name are automatically detected. You can change them as necessary.
  - You can save the scanned image in a variety of formats. If you select Searchable PDF as the **File type** setting, you can select the OCR (Optical Character Recognition) language.
  - Select the folder on your computer in which to save the file.
4. Click **Print**.

**Parent topic:** Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart

## Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings

After starting Epson ScanSmart, you can change various scanning settings.

[Changing the Epson Product](#)

[Changing the Scan Settings](#)

[Changing the File Name Settings](#)

[Changing the Save Settings](#)

[Save Settings](#)

[Customizing Action Icons](#)

**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

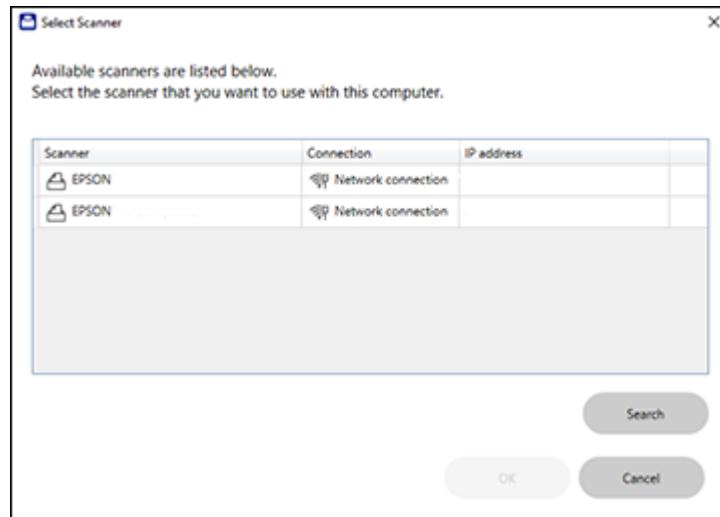
### Changing the Epson Product

If you are using more than one Epson product with Epson ScanSmart, you can change the product that you are using with your computer.

**Note:** A product connected to your computer via USB takes priority over a product with a Wi-Fi connection.

1. On the main screen, click **Change**.

You see a screen like this:



2. Select the Epson product you want to use with your computer and click **OK**.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings](#)

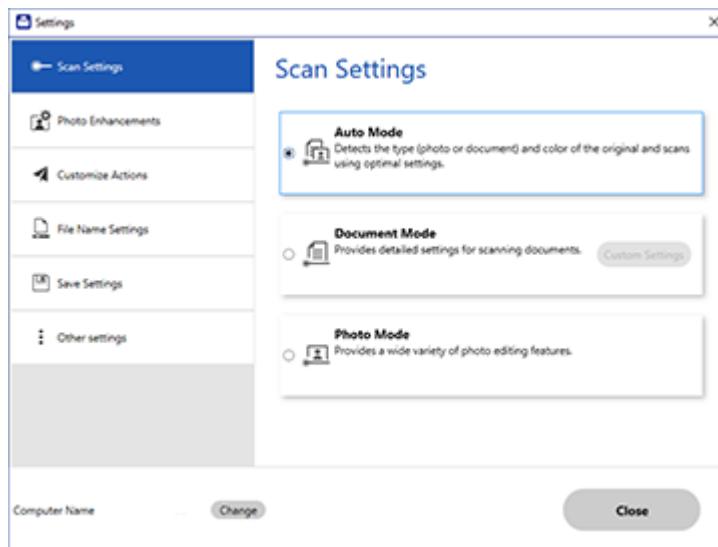
## Changing the Scan Settings

You can change detailed scan settings such as the resolution, document size, and more.

**Note:** If you select **Auto Mode**, you cannot change the scan settings.

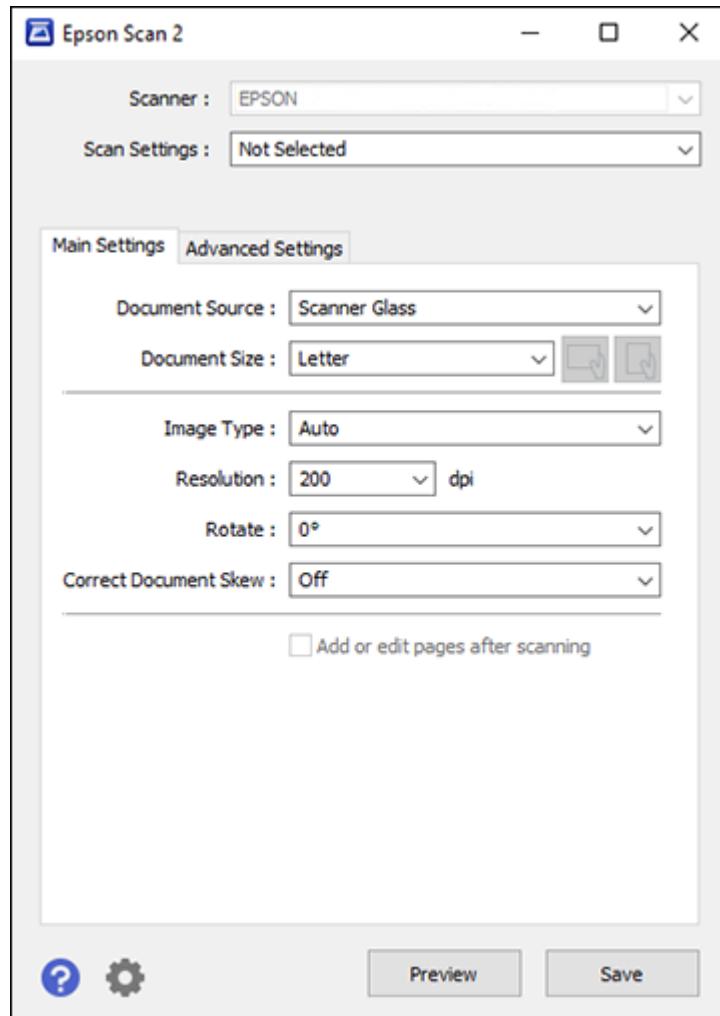
1. Click the  **Settings** button.

You see a screen like this:



2. Do one of the following:
  - To change Document Mode settings, select **Document Mode** > **Custom Settings**.
  - To change Photo Mode settings, select **Photo Mode** and click **Close**. When you start a scan, you will be prompted to select scan settings.

You see a screen like this:



3. Change the settings as necessary and click **Save**.

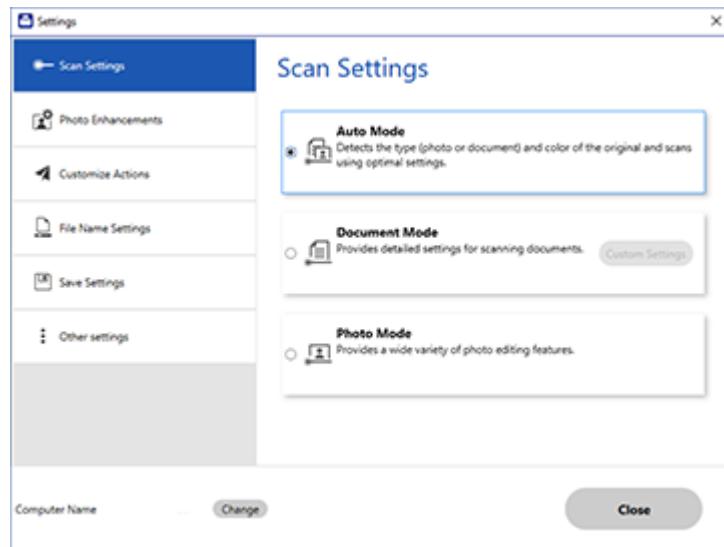
**Parent topic:** [Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings](#)

### Changing the File Name Settings

You can change the default file naming method for your scans.

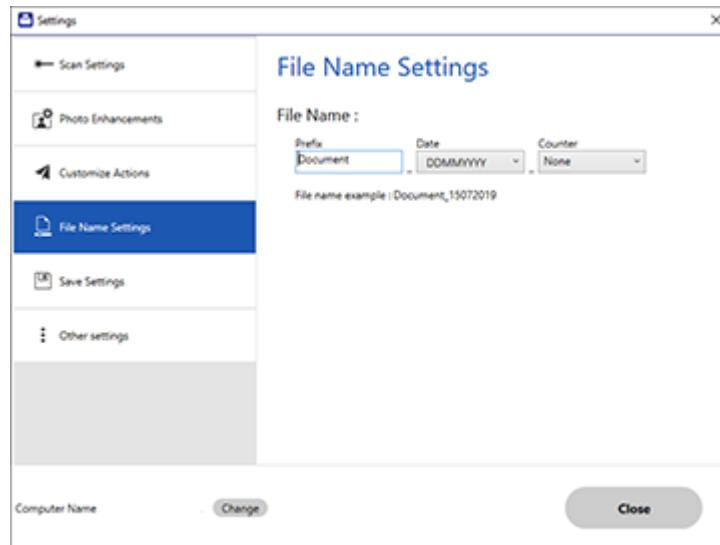
1. Click the  **Settings** button.

You see a screen like this:



2. Click the **File Name Settings** tab.

You see a screen like this:



3. Change the settings as necessary:
  - Enter a prefix for the file name.
  - Select the date format.
  - Select a numbering format as the counter format.
4. Click **Close**.

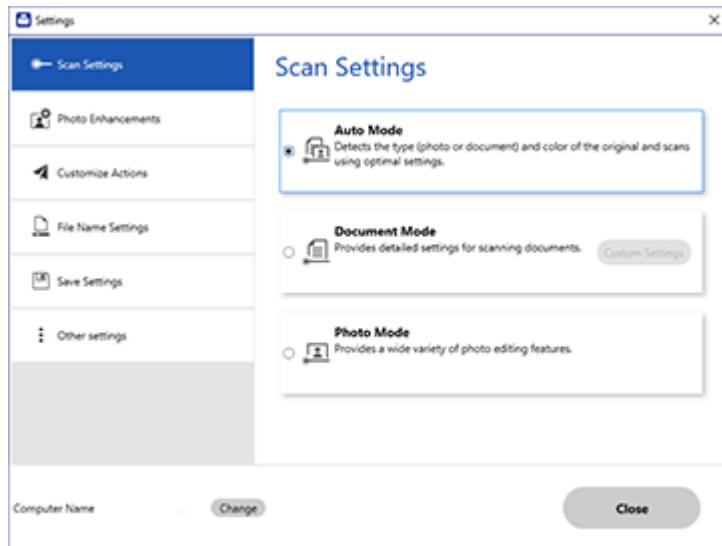
**Parent topic:** [Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings](#)

### Changing the Save Settings

You can change the file type options for saving your scans.

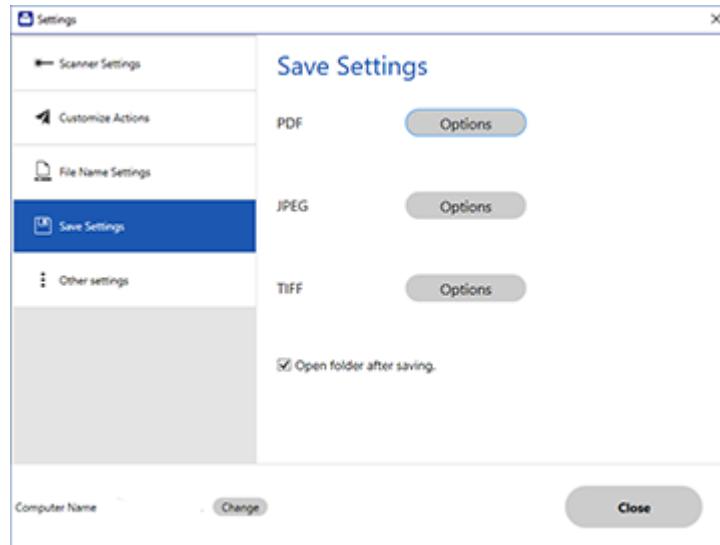
1. Click the  **Settings** button.

You see a screen like this:



2. Click the **Save Settings** tab.

You see a screen like this:



3. Click **Options** for a file format and change the settings as necessary.
4. Click **Open folder after saving** to open the file folder after a file is saved.
5. Click **Close**.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings](#)

## Save Settings

You can change the settings for how scanned images are saved.

### PDF Options

Setting	Options	Description
<b>General</b>	<b>Generate PDF/A File</b>	Creates a PDF that conforms to PDF/A-1 standards
	<b>Create file with all pages</b>	Saves all pages as one file
	<b>Compression Level</b>	Selects the compression level for color or grayscale images

## JPEG Options

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Image Quality Options</b>	—	Sets a compression level by moving a slider or entering a value. File size increases the higher the resolution is.
<b>Encoding</b> (Windows only)	<b>Standard</b>	Images load from top to bottom in a web browser. It takes longer to load the entire image.
	<b>Progressive</b>	Images first load completely at low resolution and then adjust to high resolution in a web browser
<b>Embed ICC Profile</b> (Windows only)	—	Allows you to add ICC profiles to the image

## TIFF Options

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Byte Order</b>	<b>Windows</b> <b>Macintosh</b>	Specifies the operating system where the scanned image will be used
<b>Compression</b> (Windows only)	—	Specifies the compression format and level for Color/Grayscale and B&W images. File size increases with higher quality.
<b>Embed ICC Profile</b> (Windows only)	—	Allows you to add ICC profiles to the image

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings](#)

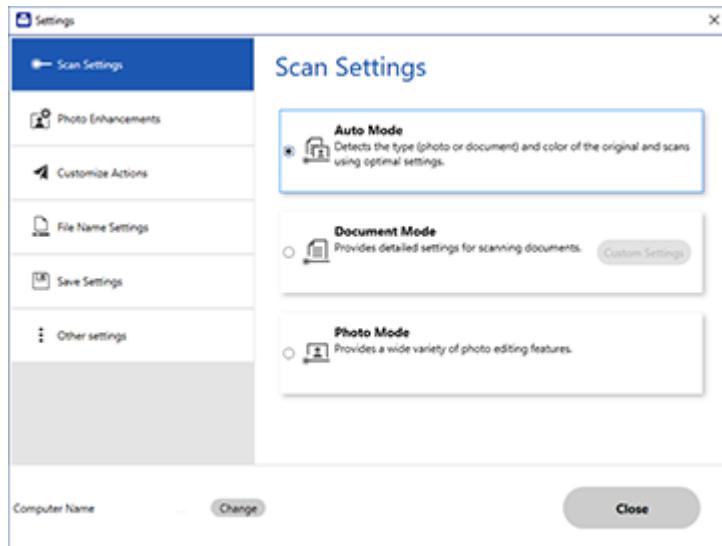
### Customizing Action Icons

You can customize which scan action icons appear on the **Select Action** screen.

**Note:** You can also customize them by clicking the **Customize** icon on the **Select Action** screen.

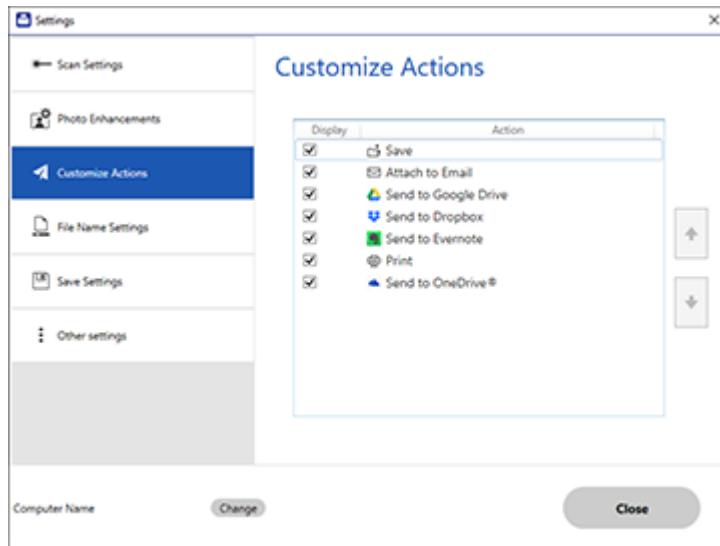
1. Click the  **Settings** button.

You see a screen like this:



2. Click the **Customize Actions** tab.

You see a screen like this:



3. Choose which action icons to display by selecting or deselecting each checkbox. Click the arrow icons to move the icons up or down in the display order you want.
4. Click **Close**.

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Epson ScanSmart Settings](#)

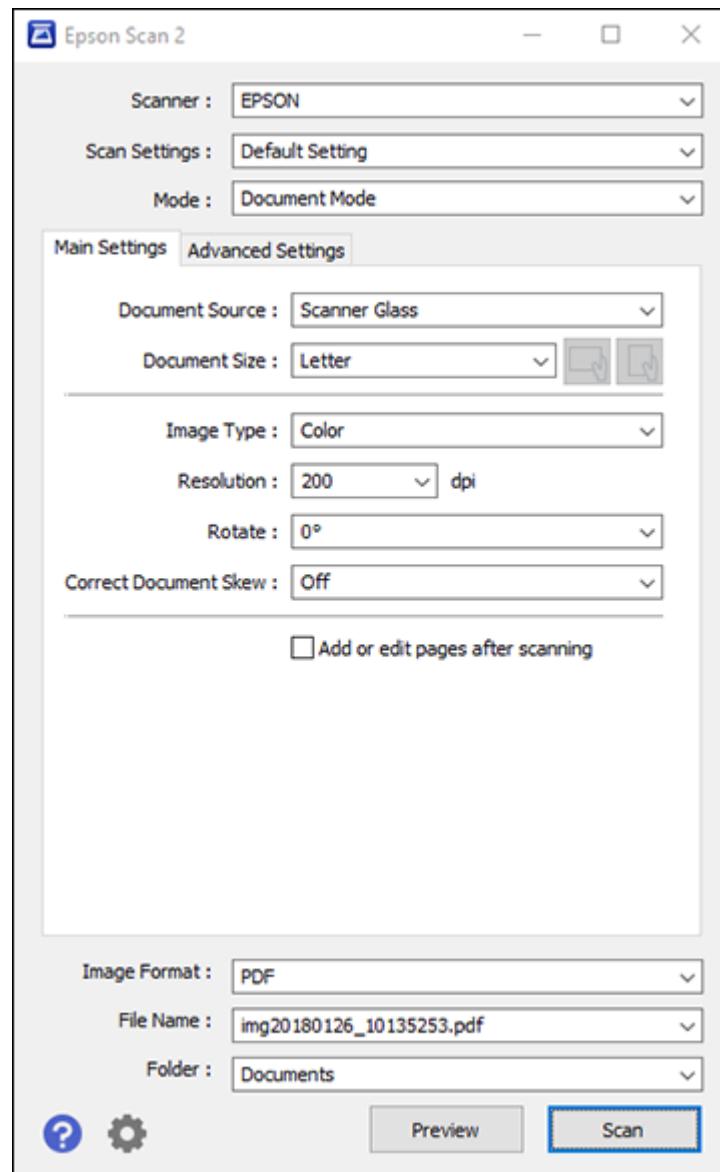
## Scanning in Epson Scan 2

Epson Scan 2 gives you access to basic and advanced scanning features. You can scan your document and save the scanned image in various file formats in your operating system's Documents or My Documents folder, or open it in your scanning program. You can preview the scanned image and select or change settings as necessary.

**Note:** If you are using your Epson product with the Windows 10 S operating system, you cannot use the software described in this section. You also cannot download and install any Epson product software from the Epson website for use with Windows 10 S; you must obtain software only from the Windows Store.

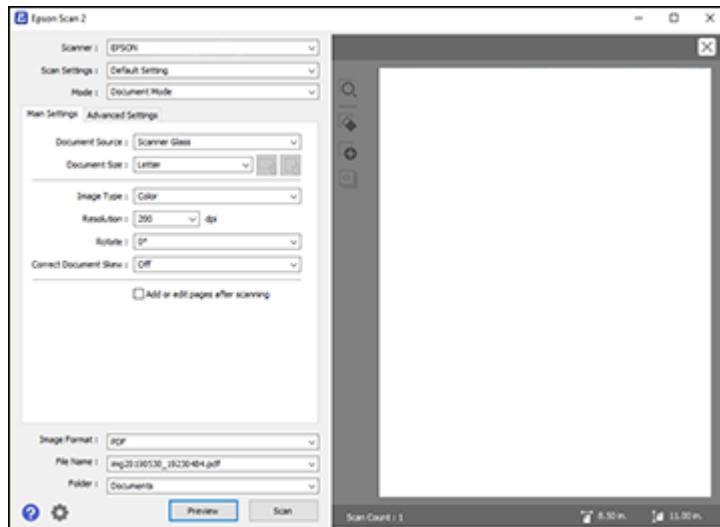
1. Start Epson Scan 2.

You see this window:



2. Select the **Mode** setting that matches the type of original you are scanning.
3. Select the **Document Source** setting that matches where you placed your original, or select **Auto Detect** to have Epson Scan 2 automatically detect the source.
4. Select the **Document Size** setting that matches the size of your original. You can select **Customize** to enter a custom size, if necessary.
5. Select the image type of your original and how you want it scanned as the **Image Type** setting.
6. Select the **Resolution** setting you want to use for your scan.
7. Select the **Rotate** setting to rotate the scanned image.
8. Select the **Correct Document Skew** setting to correct skewed originals, image contents, or both.
9. Click the **Preview** button.

Epson Scan 2 previews your original and displays the results in the Epson Scan 2 window.



10. Reinsert your original into the ADF, if necessary.
11. Select any of the additional settings that you want to use on the Main Settings tab.
12. Do one of the following:
  - If you're scanning in Document Mode, select any of the additional settings that you want to use on the Main Settings tab.

- If you're scanning in Photo Mode, select the **Color Management** and **Thumbnail Options** settings as necessary.
13. Click the **Advanced Settings** tab and select any settings that you want to use.
  14. Select the format in which you want to save your scanned file as the **Image Format** setting. If necessary, select **Options** and select any desired format options.
  15. Enter the file name for your scanned file in the **File Name** field. If necessary, select **Settings** to modify the file name settings.
  16. Select the location in which you want to save your scanned file as the **Folder** setting. If necessary, select **Select** to create a new folder.
  17. Click **Scan**.

The product scans your original and saves the scanned file in the location you specified.

[Additional Scanning Settings - Main Settings Tab](#)

[Additional Scanning Settings - Advanced Settings Tab](#)

[Saving Scanned Documents as a Searchable PDF Using Epson Scan 2](#)

[Image Format Options](#)

[Scan Resolution Guidelines](#)

**Parent topic:** [Starting a Scan](#)

## **Additional Scanning Settings - Main Settings Tab**

You can select these additional scanning settings on the Epson Scan 2 Main Settings tab. Not all adjustment settings may be available, depending on other settings you have chosen.

### **Rotate**

Rotates the original image clockwise to the desired angle before scanning it. Select **Auto** to allow your product to automatically rotate the image based on the orientation of the text (may take longer to scan).

### **Correct Document Skew**

Corrects skewed originals, image contents, or both.

### **Add or edit pages after scanning**

Lets you add, remove, or edit the pages in a scan, including rotating pages and changing the page order.

**Note:** To save multiple pages in a single file, you must select a file format that supports multiple pages such as **PDF** or **Multi-TIFF**. If you select another file format, each scanned image or page is saved as a separate file.

**Parent topic:** Scanning in Epson Scan 2

## Additional Scanning Settings - Advanced Settings Tab

You can select these additional scanning settings on the Epson Scan 2 Advanced Settings tab. Not all adjustment settings may be available, depending on other settings you have chosen.

### Remove Background

Removes the background of the originals.

### Text Enhancement

Sharpens the appearance of letters in text documents.

### Auto Area Segmentation

Makes black and white images clearer and text recognition more accurate by separating the text from the graphics.

### Threshold

Adjusts the level at which black areas in text and line art are delineated, improving text recognition in OCR (Optical Character Recognition) programs.

### Color Enhance

Enhances the shades of the color you select in the scanned image. This setting is available only if you select **Grayscale** or **Black & White** as the Image Type setting.

### Brightness

Adjusts the overall lightness and darkness of the scanned image.

### Contrast

Adjusts the difference between the light and dark areas of the overall scanned image.

### Saturation

Adjusts the density of colors in the overall image.

### Gamma

Adjusts the midtone density of the scanned image.

### Unsharp Mask

Makes the edges of certain image areas clearer. Turn off this option to leave softer edges.

### Descreening

Removes the ripple pattern that might appear in subtly shaded image areas, such as skin tones. This option improves results when scanning magazines or newspapers. (The results of descreening do not appear in the preview image, only in your scanned image.)

### Color Restoration

Corrects color in faded images (when scanning in Photo Mode).

**Backlight Correction**

Lightens darkly backlit images (when scanning in Photo Mode).

**Dust Removal**

Removes dust on scanned images (when scanning in Photo Mode).

**Edge Fill**

Corrects shadowing around the edges of the image by filling the shadows with black or white.

**Dual Image Output**

Scans the original image twice using different output settings (Windows only).

**Watermark**

Adds a watermark to a scanned image.

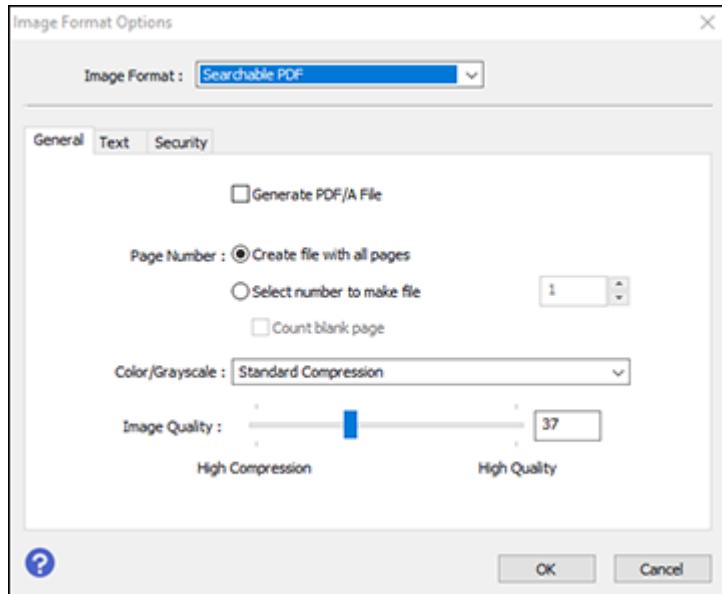
**Parent topic:** [Scanning in Epson Scan 2](#)**Saving Scanned Documents as a Searchable PDF Using Epson Scan 2**

You can scan a document and save the text in a searchable PDF. In a searchable PDF, text is recognized using Optical Character Recognition (OCR) and then embedded in the scanned original.

**Note:** The required Epson Scan 2 OCR Component is installed automatically when you install your product software as instructed on the *Start Here* sheet. If you install your scanner software programs individually, be sure to also install this component if you want to perform OCR.

1. Load your original in the product for scanning.
2. Start Epson Scan 2.
3. Select your scan settings.
4. Click **Preview** and adjust the area you want to scan, if necessary.
5. If you are using the ADF, reload the ejected original.
6. Select **Searchable PDF** as the Image Format setting.
7. Select **Options** from the Image Format list.

You see this window:



8. Select any of the options on the General tab.
9. Select the **Text** tab.
10. Make sure the language used in the document text is selected as the **Text Language** setting.
11. Select the **Security** tab if you want to add a password to the PDF or protect printing or editing properties.
12. Click **OK**.
13. Confirm the **File Name** setting and select a **Folder** setting for your document.
14. Click **Scan**.

The scanned image is saved as a searchable PDF.

**Parent topic:** [Scanning in Epson Scan 2](#)

## Image Format Options

You can select different image formats and related options. For details on available options, click the ? icon on the Epson Scan 2 Image Format Options window. Not all image formats have options.

**BITMAP (\*.bmp)**

A standard image file format for most Windows programs.

**JPEG (\*.jpg)**

An image format that lets you highly compress image data. However, the higher the compression, the lower the image quality. (The TIFF format is recommended when you need to modify or retouch your scanned image.)

**PNG (\*.png)**

An image format that does not lose quality during editing.

**TIFF (\*.tif)**

A file format created for exchanging data between many programs, such as graphic and DTP software.

**Multi-TIFF (\*.tif)**

A TIFF file format when multiple pages are saved to the same file, allowing you to edit the images using a compatible program.

**PDF (\*.pdf)**

A document format that is readable by Windows and Mac systems using Adobe Reader, Acrobat, or other programs. You can save multi-page documents in one PDF file.

**Searchable PDF (\*.pdf)**

A document format that is readable by Windows and Mac systems using Adobe Reader, Acrobat, or other programs. You can save multi-page documents in one PDF file. Recognized text in the scanned document can be searched.

**Parent topic:** [Scanning in Epson Scan 2](#)

## Scan Resolution Guidelines

The **Resolution** setting, measured in dpi (dots per inch), controls the amount of detail captured in your scans. Increasing the resolution raises the amount of detail captured but comes with the following disadvantages:

- Larger file sizes
- It takes longer to scan your originals, send/receive your scans by email or fax, and to print your scans
- The image may become too large to fit on your display or print on paper

If you plan to enlarge a scanned image so you can print it at a larger size, you may need to increase the resolution from the default resolution set by Epson Scan 2. Follow these guidelines to determine the resolution setting you need:

- You will scan the image at its original size but enlarge it later in an image-editing program.

Increase the Epson Scan 2 Resolution setting in your scan. Increase the resolution by the same amount you will increase the image size to retain a high image quality. For example, if the resolution is 300 dpi (dots per inch) and you will double the image size later, change the Resolution setting to 600 dpi.

- You will scan the image at 100% or a smaller size.

Select the Epson Scan 2 Resolution setting based on how you will use the scanned image:

- Email/view on a computer screen/post on the web: 96 to 200 dpi
- Print/fax/convert to editable text (OCR)/create searchable PDF: 200 to 300 dpi

**Parent topic:** [Scanning in Epson Scan 2](#)

---

# Faxing

See these sections to fax using your product (ET-5170/ET-5180).

**Note:** This product allows you to store names, telephone numbers, and fax data in its memory even when the power is turned off. Make sure you restore all of the default settings if you give away or dispose of the product. This will erase all of your network settings and fax data.

[Connecting a Telephone or Answering Machine](#)

[Setting Up Fax Features](#)

[Setting Up Contacts and Contact Groups](#)

[Sending Faxes](#)

[Receiving Faxes](#)

[Checking Fax Status](#)

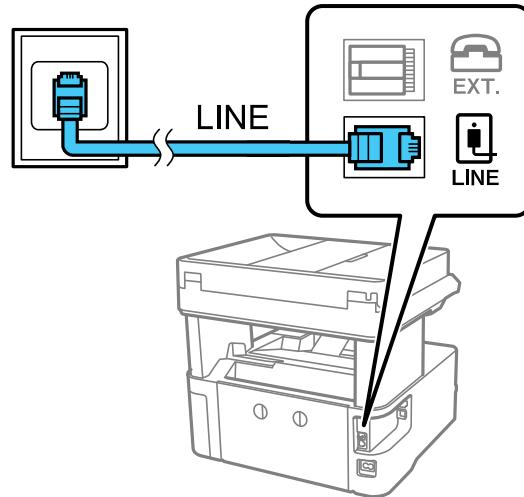
[Printing Fax Reports](#)

## Connecting a Telephone or Answering Machine

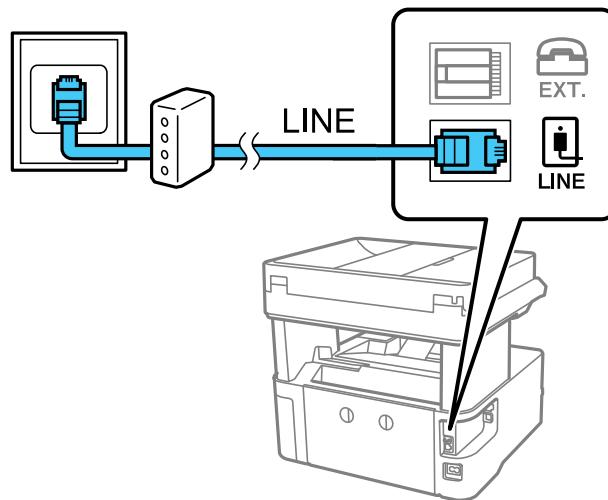
You must connect your product to a telephone wall jack to send or receive faxes. If you want to use the same telephone line to receive calls, you can connect a telephone or answering machine to your product using an additional phone cable.

**Note:** If you do not connect a telephone to your product, make sure Receive Mode is set to **Auto**. Otherwise, you cannot receive faxes.

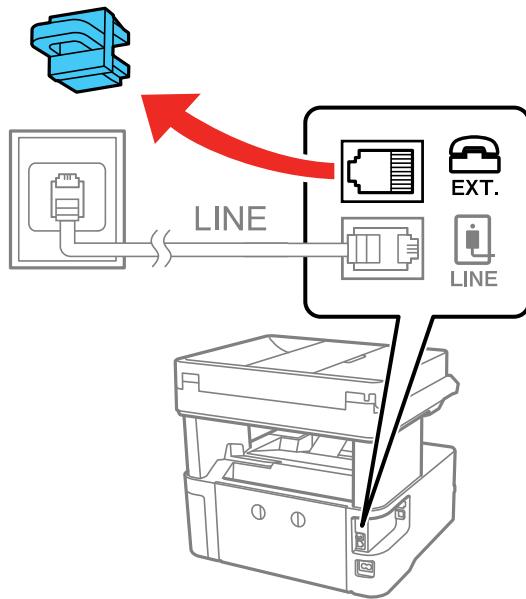
1. Connect a phone cable to your telephone wall jack and to the **LINE** port on your product.



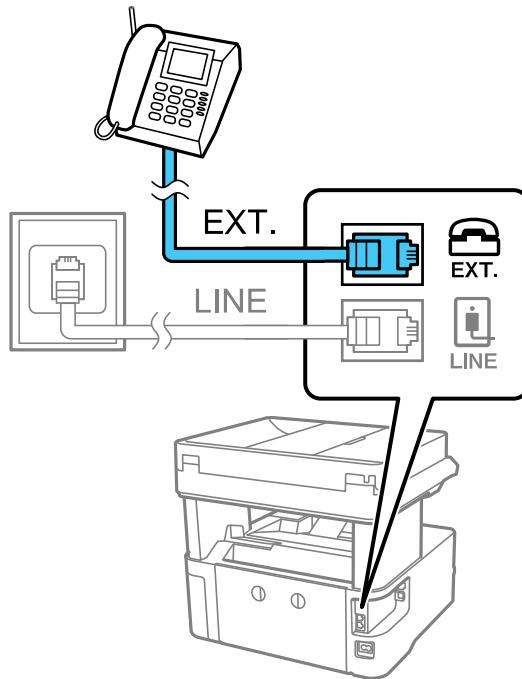
**Note:** If you have a DSL or ISDN connection, you must connect the appropriate DSL filter, or ISDN terminal adapter or router to the wall jack to be able to use the line for faxing or voice calls using your product. Contact your DSL or ISDN provider for the necessary equipment.



2. If you are connecting a telephone or answering machine to your product using a second phone cable, remove the cap from the **EXT** port on your product.



3. Connect a second phone cable to your telephone or answering machine and to the **EXT** port on your product.



**Note:** If you connect an answering machine and Receive Mode is set to **Auto**, set the number of rings before your product answers a call to a number that is higher than your answering machine's setting for the number of rings.

Any phone or answering machine must be connected to the **EXT** port for your product to detect an incoming fax call when the phone is picked up. Epson cannot guarantee compatibility with VoIP, cable phone systems, or fiberoptic digital services such as FIOS.

**Parent topic:** [Faxing](#)

**Related references**

[Basic Settings - Fax](#)

# Setting Up Fax Features

Before faxing with your product, set up your fax header and select the fax features you want to use.

**Note:** If you leave your product unplugged for a long period of time, you may need to reset the date and time settings for faxes.

[Setting Up Basic Fax Features](#)

[Selecting Advanced Fax Settings](#)

[Setting Up the Fax Utility - Windows](#)

[Setting Up Fax Features Using the Fax Utility - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Faxing](#)

**Related tasks**

[Receiving Faxes Automatically](#)

## Setting Up Basic Fax Features

See these sections to select the basic settings you need to use the product's fax features.

[Using the Fax Setup Wizard](#)

[Selecting the Line Type](#)

[Setting the Number of Rings to Answer](#)

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Fax Features](#)

### Using the Fax Setup Wizard

You can setup the product's basic fax settings using the Fax Setting Wizard. This wizard is automatically displayed when the product is turned on for the first time. You can also change these settings individually from the Fax Settings menu.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Fax Setting Wizard**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Make sure a phone line is connected and select **Proceed**.
4. Use the displayed keyboard to enter the sender name for your fax source, such as your name or a business name. You can enter up to 40 characters. Select **OK** when finished.
5. Use the numeric keypad to enter your fax number, up to 20 characters. Select **OK** when finished.

**Note:** The name and phone number in the fax header identifies the source of the faxes you send.

6. On the Distinctive Ring Setting screen, do one of the following:
  - If you have subscribed to a distinctive ring service from your telephone company, select **Settings**. Select the ring pattern to be used for incoming faxes or select **All**. If you selected **All**, go to the next step. If you selected another ring pattern, go to step 9.
  - If you do not have a distinctive ring service, select **Skip** and go to step 9.

**Note:** Distinctive ring services allows you to have several phone numbers on one phone line. Each number is assigned a different ring pattern. You can use one number for voice calls and another for fax calls. Select the ring pattern assigned to fax calls in the Distinctive Ring Setting. If you select a ring pattern other than **All**, Receive Mode is automatically set to **Auto**.

7. On the Receive Mode Setting screen, do one of the following:
  - If you have connected an external telephone or answering machine to the product, select **Yes** and go to the next step.

- If you did not connect an external telephone or answering machine, select **No** and go to step 9. (Receive Mode is automatically set to **Auto**; otherwise you cannot receive faxes.)
8. On the next Receive Mode Setting screen, select **Yes** to receive faxes automatically or select **No** to receive faxes manually.

**Note:** If you connect an external answering machine and select to receive faxes automatically, make sure the **Rings to Answer** setting is correct. If you select to receive faxes manually, you need to answer every call and use the product's control panel or your phone to receive faxes.

9. On the Proceed screen, confirm the displayed settings and select **Proceed**, or press the back arrow to change the settings.
10. On the Run Check Fax Connection screen, select **Start Checking** and follow the on-screen instructions to check the fax connection and print a report of the check result. If there are any errors reported, try the solutions on the report and run the check again.
11. If the Select Line Type screen appears, select the correct line type.

**Note:** If you are connecting the product to a standard phone line, select **PSTN** and then select **Do Not Detect** on the Confirmation screen that appears. However, selecting this setting may cause the product to drop the first digit of a fax number and send the fax to the wrong number.

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Basic Fax Features](#)

**Related tasks**

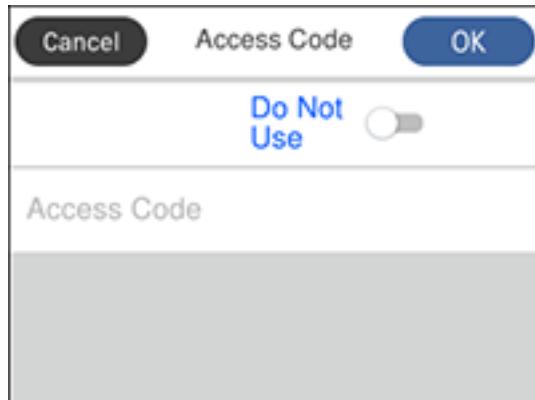
[Entering Characters on the LCD Screen](#)

## Selecting the Line Type

If you connect the product to a PBX phone system or terminal adapter, you must change the product's line type. PBX (Private Branch Exchange) is used in office environments where an external access code such as "9" must be dialed to call an outside line. The default Line Type setting is PSTN (Public Switched Telephone Network), which is a standard home phone line.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Basic Settings > Line Type > PBX**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Set the switch to **Use** to activate the setting.
4. Select **Access Code**.
5. Use the numeric keypad to enter the access code, such as 9, and select **OK**.

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Basic Fax Features](#)

**Related tasks**

[Entering Characters on the LCD Screen](#)

### Setting the Number of Rings to Answer

If you connect an external answering machine and select to receive faxes automatically, make sure the Rings to Answer setting is correct. The number of rings should be higher than the number of rings your answering machine is set to for answering a call.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Basic Settings > Rings to Answer**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select the number of rings and select **OK**. Make sure to select a number higher than the number of rings your answering machine is set to for answering a call.

**Note:** An answering machine picks up every call faster than the product, but the product can detect fax tones and start receiving faxes. If you answer the phone and hear a fax tone, check that the product has started receiving the fax, then hang up the phone.

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Basic Fax Features](#)

## Selecting Advanced Fax Settings

You can select a variety of advanced fax settings.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **General Settings**.
4. Scroll down and select **Fax Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



5. Select the group of settings you want to change.

[Receive Settings - Fax](#)

[Report Settings - Fax](#)

[Basic Settings - Fax](#)

[Security Settings - Fax](#)

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Fax Features](#)

### **Receive Settings - Fax**

Select the fax output or print options you want to use for incoming faxes.

#### **Fax Output Settings**

<b>Setting</b>	<b>Options</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Save to Inbox</b>	<b>Save to Inbox</b>	Saves received faxes in the product's inbox
	<b>Options when memory is full</b>	Selects an action to perform when you receive an incoming fax and the inbox is full
	<b>Inbox Password Settings</b>	Sets a password for the inbox. You cannot set a password if you selected <b>Receive and print faxes</b> for the <b>Options when memory is full</b> setting.

Setting	Options	Description
Save to Computer	No	Converts received faxes to PDFs and saves them on a computer connected to the product
	Yes	
	Yes and Print	

### Print Settings

Setting	Options	Description
Auto Reduction	On	Select to reduce the size of large received faxes to fit on the paper size
	Off	Select to print large incoming faxes at their original size on multiple sheets, if necessary
Split Page Settings	Delete Print Data After Split	Select how to split large incoming faxes across multiple sheets
	Overlap When Split	
Auto Rotation	On	If you have loaded A5-size paper, select <b>On</b> to rotate landscape-oriented incoming faxes so that they print correctly on the paper
	Off	
Add Reception Information	On	Select <b>On</b> to include the date, time, the sender's information, and a page number in the header of your incoming faxes
	Off	
2-Sided	On	Select <b>On</b> to print incoming faxes double sided. You can also select the <b>Binding Margin</b> .
	Off	
Print Start Timing	All Pages Received	Select to print incoming faxes after the product receives all of the pages of the document
	First Page Received	Select to print incoming faxes as soon as the product receives the first page of the document
Collation Stack	On	Select <b>On</b> to print incoming faxes so that the pages are stacked in the correct page order. (When the product is low on memory, this option may not be available.)
	Off	

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Print Suspend Time</b>	Off	Select <b>On</b> to set a time period to stop automatic printing of faxes or reports and save received faxes in the product's memory. (Make sure there is enough free memory before using this function.)
	On	
	Time to Stop	
	Time to Restart	
<b>Quiet Mode</b>	On	Select <b>On</b> to reduce noise during printing. (Printing speed may be reduced.)
	Off	

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Advanced Fax Settings](#)

## Report Settings - Fax

Select the options you want to use for fax reports.

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Fax Log Auto Print</b>	Off	Does not print a fax log
	On(Every 30)	Prints a fax log after every 30 fax jobs are completed
	On(Time)	Prints a fax log at a specified time. If the number of completed fax jobs exceeds 30, the fax log prints before the specified time.
<b>Attach Fax Image to Report</b>	Off	Does not include an image on the Transmission Report
	On(Large Image)	Prints a Transmission Report that includes the upper part of the first page of the sent document
	On(Small Image)	Prints a Transmission Report that includes a reduced size of the entire first page of the sent document
<b>Report Format</b>	Simple	Prints a simple fax report
	Detail	Prints a fax report that includes error codes

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Advanced Fax Settings](#)

## Basic Settings - Fax

Set the basic options you want to use for incoming and outgoing faxes.

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Fax Speed</b>	<b>Fast(33,600bps)</b>	Sets the speed at which you send and receive faxes
	<b>Medium(14,400bps)</b>	
	<b>Slow(9,600bps)</b>	
<b>ECM</b>	<b>On</b>	Turns on Error Correction Mode (ECM) to automatically correct errors in sent or received fax data
	<b>Off</b>	Turns off Error Correction Mode (ECM); color faxes cannot be sent or received
<b>Dial Tone Detection</b>	<b>On</b>	Automatically dials the number you enter for faxing when the product detects a dial tone
	<b>Off</b>	Turns off automatic dial tone detection, which may be necessary if the product is connected to a PBX (Private Branch Exchange) or a TA (Terminal Adapter). However, turning this setting off may cause the product to drop the first digit of a fax number.
<b>Line Type</b>	<b>PSTN</b>	Selects a standard phone line (Public Switched Telephone Network)
	<b>PBX</b>	Selects Private Branch Exchange, the type of phone line used in office environments where an access code such as 9 must be used to call an outside line
<b>Header</b>	<b>Fax Header</b>	Select to enter the header information and your phone number for inclusion on outgoing faxes
	<b>Your Phone Number</b>	
<b>Receive Mode</b>	<b>Manual</b>	Lets you confirm whether an incoming fax should be printed; a telephone must be connected to the product
	<b>Auto</b>	Automatically receives and prints faxes

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Distinctive Ring</b>	All	If you are using a Distinctive Ring Service on your phone line, your telephone company can assign two or more phone numbers to the same line and assign different ring patterns to each. If you use this service, select the number of rings for your fax number so your product can receive faxes on the correct number of rings. Select <b>All</b> for phones lines that do not use this service.
	Single	
	Double	
	Triple	
	Double&Triple	
<b>Rings to Answer</b>	1 to 9	Sets the number of rings before your product receives a fax. If Receive Mode is set to <b>Auto</b> and an answering machine is connected to the product, make sure this setting is set higher than the number of rings your answering machine is set to answer a call.
<b>Remote Receive</b>	Off	Lets you start receiving faxes using your phone instead of operating the product (if Receive Mode is set to <b>Auto</b> ). When you select <b>On</b> , you must also set a <b>Start Code</b> . If you are using a cordless handset with its base connected to the product, you can start receiving the fax by entering the code using the handset.
	On	
	Start Code	
<b>Rejection Fax</b>	Various	Lets you automatically reject faxes from blocked numbers, with blank headers, or from unrecognized contacts

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Advanced Fax Settings](#)

## Security Settings - Fax

Set the security options you want to use for fax data.

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Direct Dialing Restrictions</b>	Off	Does not restrict dialed fax numbers
	On	Allows faxing only to numbers stored in the contacts list or history
	Enter Twice	Requires you to enter fax numbers twice to prevent errors

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Confirm Address List</b>	<b>Off</b>	Selects whether or not to display a recipient confirmation screen before a fax is sent
	<b>On</b>	
<b>Backup Data Auto Clear</b>	<b>Off</b>	Automatically erases sent or received fax data from your product's memory
	<b>On</b>	
<b>Clear Backup Data</b>	—	Deletes all sent or received fax data remaining in your product's memory; run this function if you are giving away or disposing of your product

**Parent topic:** [Selecting Advanced Fax Settings](#)

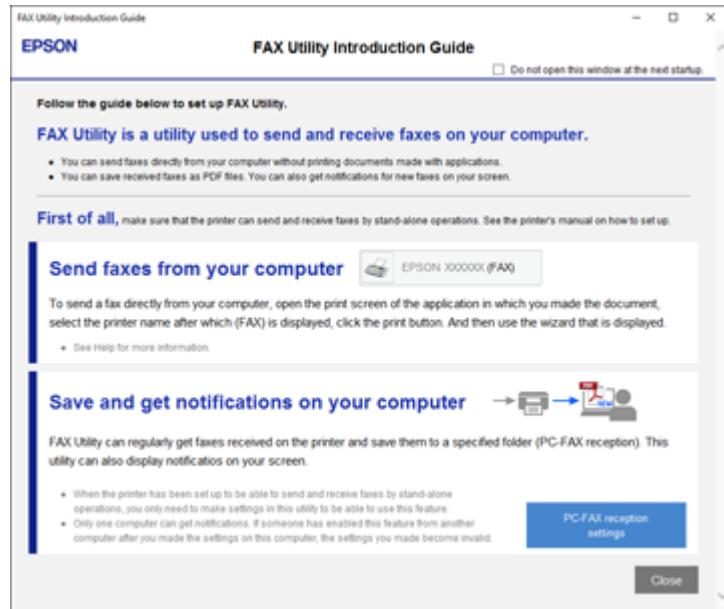
## Setting Up the FAX Utility - Windows

You can set up the FAX Utility for Windows for use with your product.

**Note:** Before using the FAX Utility for Windows, make sure you have set up the fax features on your product using the product control panel. Also first confirm that you can send and receive faxes using the control panel.

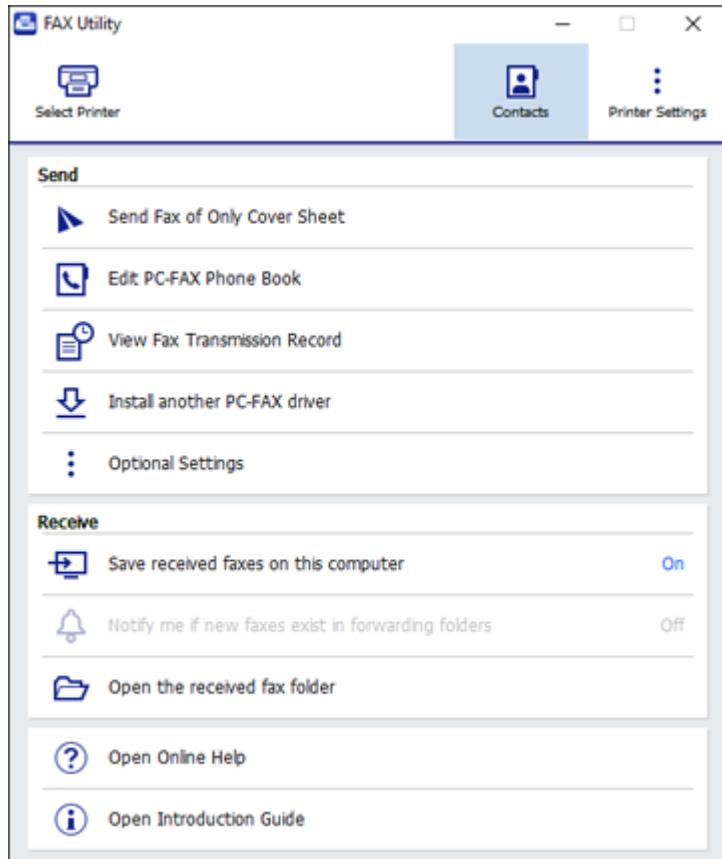
1. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows 10:** Click  and select **EPSON Software**.
  - **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen.
  - **Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start > Programs or All Programs > EPSON Software**.
2. Select **FAX Utility**.

The first time you use the FAX Utility, you see this introduction window:



3. Read about the FAX Utility and click **Close** at the bottom of the window.

You see this window:



4. Click **Select Printer** and follow the on-screen instructions to transfer your product's fax settings to the FAX Utility.

**Note:** For detailed information, click **Help** or **Open Online Help**.

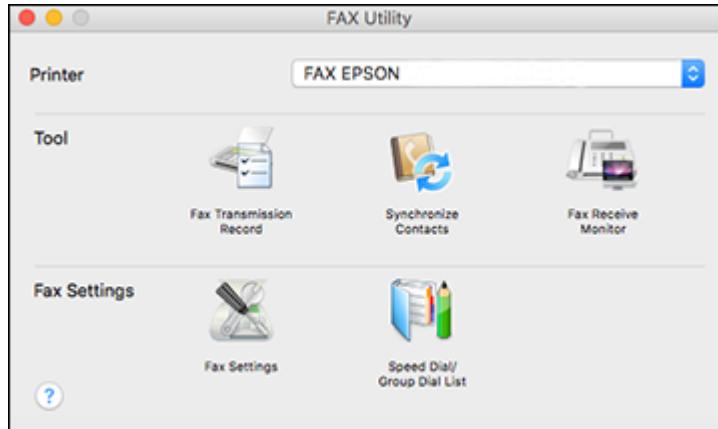
**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Fax Features](#)

## Setting Up Fax Features Using the Fax Utility - Mac

You can set up your fax header and select your fax settings using the FAX Utility for Mac.

1. In the Apple menu or the Dock, select **System Preferences**. Select **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners**, select the **FAX** option for your product, and select **Options & Supplies**. Select **Utility** and select **Open Printer Utility**.
2. Double-click **FAX Utility**, if necessary.

You see a window like this:



3. Select your **FAX** product in the Printer list.
4. Select **Fax Settings**.
5. Follow the prompts that appear on the screen to enter your fax header information and select your fax settings.

**Note:** For detailed information, select the FAX Utility ? icon.

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Fax Features](#)

## Setting Up Contacts and Contact Groups

You can set up a list of contacts and their fax numbers so you can quickly select them for faxing. You can also set up contact groups to send a fax message to multiple contacts.

[Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel](#)

**Parent topic:** [Faxing](#)

## Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel

You can set up your contacts and contact groups using the control panel on your product.

[Creating a Contact](#)

[Editing or Deleting a Contact](#)

[Creating a Contact Group](#)

[Editing or Deleting a Contact Group](#)

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Contacts and Contact Groups](#)

### Creating a Contact

You can create a list of contacts to save frequently used fax numbers.

**Note:** You can create up to 100 contacts and contact groups combined.

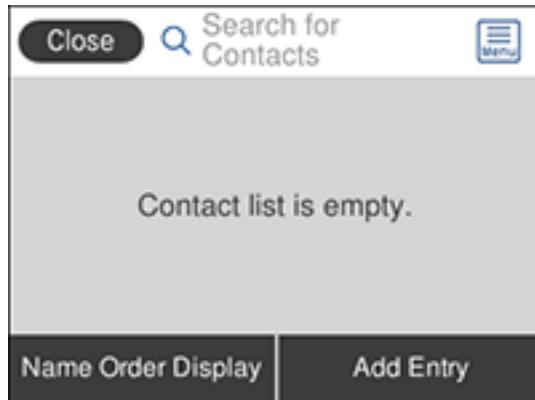
1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Contacts**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Select **Add Entry**.
5. Select **Add Contact**.

You see a screen like this:



6. Select the registry number you want to use for the contact you are adding.
7. Select the **Name** field, use the displayed keyboard to enter the contact name (up to 30 characters), and select **OK**.

8. Select the **Index Word** field, use the displayed keyboard to enter a word to use when searching for an entry (up to 30 characters), and select **OK**. (This field is optional.)
9. Select the **Fax Number** field, and use the numeric keypad to enter the fax number, and select **OK**. You can enter up to 64 characters.

**Note:** If necessary, enter an outside line access code (such as **9**) at the beginning of the fax number. If the access code has been set up in the **Line Type** setting, enter the **#** pound sign instead of the code.

10. Set any additional settings, if necessary.
11. Select **OK**.

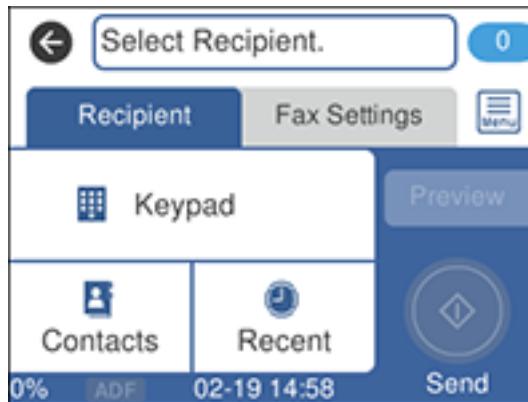
**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel](#)

### Editing or Deleting a Contact

You can edit or delete any of the contacts on your list.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Contacts**.
4. Select the  icon next to the contact you want to edit or delete.

You see a screen like this:

<b>Close</b>	Details
Registry Number	
001	
Name	
name1	
Index Word	
name1	
<b>Delete</b>	<b>Edit</b>

5. Do one of the following:
  - To delete the contact, select **Delete** and select **Yes** on the confirmation screen.
  - To edit the contact, select **Edit**, and change the contact information as necessary. Select **OK** when finished.

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel](#)

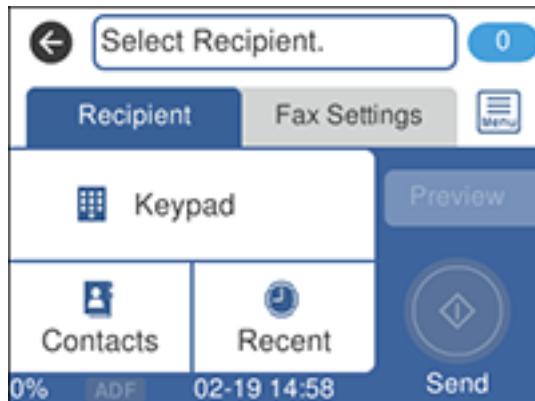
### **Creating a Contact Group**

You can create a group of contacts so that you can easily send faxes to multiple recipients.

**Note:** You can create up to 100 contacts and contact groups combined. You must create a contact before creating a contact group.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Contacts**.
4. Select **Add Entry**.
5. Select **Add Group**.

You see a screen like this:



6. Select the registry number you want to use for the group you are adding.
7. Select the **Group Name** field, use the displayed keyboard to enter the group name (up to 30 characters), and select **OK**.

8. Select the **Index Word** field, use the displayed keyboard to enter a word to use when searching for a group (up to 30 characters), and select **OK**. (This field is optional.)
  9. Select **Contact(s) Added to the Group**.
- You see your contacts list.
10. Select each contact you want to include in your group.

**Note:** To display the contacts in alphabetical order, select **Name Order Display**.

A check mark appears next to each selected contact.

11. Select **Close** when finished.
12. Select **OK** to save the entry.

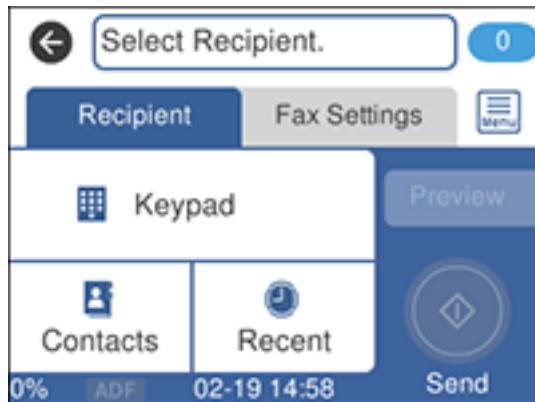
**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel](#)

### Editing or Deleting a Contact Group

You can edit an existing contact group to add or delete entries. You can also delete the entire contact group.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Fax**.

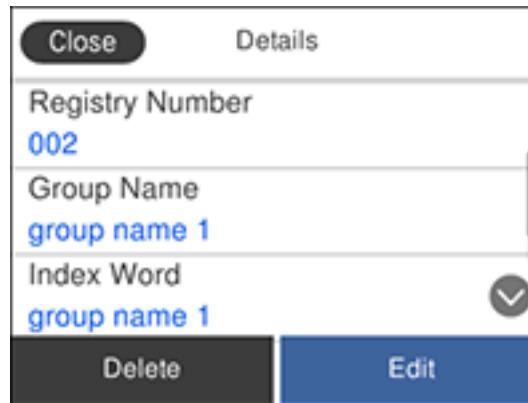
You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Contacts**.

4. Select the  icon next to the group you want to edit or delete.

You see a screen like this:



5. Do one of the following:

- To delete the group, select **Delete** and select **Yes** on the confirmation screen.
- To edit the group, select **Edit** and change the group name or contacts included as necessary. Select **OK** when finished.

**Parent topic:** [Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel](#)

## Sending Faxes

See these sections to send faxes using your product.

[Sending Faxes from the Product Control Panel](#)

[Sending Faxes Using the Fax Utility - Windows](#)

[Sending Faxes Using the Fax Utility - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Faxing](#)

## Sending Faxes from the Product Control Panel

See these sections to send faxes using the product's control panel.

[Sending a Fax Using the Control Panel](#)

[Fax Sending Options](#)

[Sending a Fax at a Specified Time](#)

[Dialing Fax Numbers from a Connected Telephone](#)

**Parent topic:** [Sending Faxes](#)

**Related references**

[Fax Sending Options](#)

**Related tasks**

[Selecting the Line Type](#)

**Related topics**

[Setting Up Contacts Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

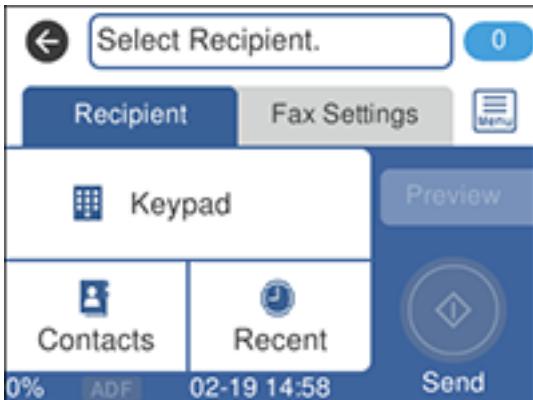
## Sending a Fax Using the Control Panel

You can send a fax from your product control panel by entering the fax number, or selecting the number from either the contact list or fax history.

**Note:** Depending on the product's available memory, you can fax up to 100 pages at a time, including a cover sheet. You can send a black-and-white fax to up to 100 contacts or 99 groups at a time, or send a color fax to one recipient at a time. If your recipient's fax machine does not print in color, your fax is automatically sent in black-and-white.

1. Place your original on the product for faxing.
2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Do one of the following to select fax recipients:
  - **Manually enter a fax number:** Select **Keypad**, enter a fax number using the numeric keypad, and select **OK** when done. To add another fax number, repeat this step; the number of multiple recipients appears in the upper right corner of the LCD screen.  
  
**Note:** If direct dialing has been restricted, you can only select the number from the contact list or fax history. If necessary, enter an outside line access code (such as 9) at the beginning of the fax number. If the access code has been set up in the **Line Type** setting, enter the # pound sign instead of the code. If your fax number requires a brief pause, select – to insert a pause symbol (–).
  - **Select from the contact list:** Select **Contacts** to display the contact list. Select one or more contacts (select the contact again to deselect it), and select **Close**.
  - **Select from the sent fax history:** Select **Recent** to display the sent fax history. Select a recipient from the list.  
  
**Note:** To delete selected recipients, press the number of multiple recipients displayed in the upper right corner of the LCD screen. Select each recipient you want to delete and select **Remove**.
5. If you need to change any fax settings, select **Fax Settings** and select your settings.

6. If you want to preview your fax in black-and-white on the LCD screen, select **Preview**. (If the preview looks incorrect, select **Cancel**, reposition the document or change the fax settings, and repeat this step.) You cannot send the fax in color after previewing it.

**Note:** If you do not touch the preview screen for 20 seconds, your product sends the fax automatically. You cannot preview images when the **Direct Send** setting is turned on.

7. Select **Send**.

**Note:** To cancel faxing, select **Cancel**.

Your product scans your original and prompts you to place additional pages, if necessary.

After scanning your originals, your product dials the number and sends the fax.

**Note:** If the fax number is busy or there is a problem, the product automatically redials after one minute. While the product is sending a color fax, other features are unavailable.

**Parent topic:** [Sending Faxes from the Product Control Panel](#)

## Fax Sending Options

While sending a fax, you can select **Fax Settings** and select these options.

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Original Size (Glass)</b>	<b>Half Letter</b>	Sets the size for a document placed on the scanner glass
	<b>A5</b>	
	<b>Letter</b>	
	<b>A4</b>	
<b>Color Mode</b>	<b>B&amp;W</b>	Select whether to scan images in color or black and white
	<b>Color</b>	

Setting	Options	Description
<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Standard</b>	Adjusts the scan resolution and print quality of outgoing faxes
	<b>Fine</b>	
	<b>Super Fine</b>	
	<b>Ultra Fine</b>	
	<b>Photo</b>	
<b>Density</b>	Varying levels available	Select from various density levels
<b>Remove Background</b>	<b>Auto</b>	Automatically removes any background color on scanned images
	Varying levels available	Lets you select from various levels of background color adjustment
<b>Sharpness</b>	Varying levels available	Lets you enhance the outline of the scanned image
<b>ADF Continuous Scan</b>	<b>Off</b>	Select <b>On</b> to have the product to ask if you want to scan another page after a document in the ADF has finished scanning
	<b>On</b>	
<b>Direct Send</b>	<b>Off</b>	Select <b>On</b> to send black-and-white faxes to a single recipient as soon as the connection is made, without saving the scanned image to memory. You cannot use this setting when sending a color fax or sending a fax to multiple recipients.
	<b>On</b>	
<b>Send Fax Later</b>	<b>Off</b>	Select <b>On</b> to send the current fax at a selected time
	<b>On</b>	
<b>Add Sender Information</b>	<b>Off</b>	Includes a header, your phone number, or a destination list in the selected location on your outgoing faxes
	<b>Outside of Image</b>	
	<b>Inside of Image</b>	
<b>Transmission Report</b>	<b>Print on Error</b>	Selects when or if to print transmission reports
	<b>Print</b>	
	<b>Do Not Print</b>	

**Parent topic:** Sending Faxes from the Product Control Panel

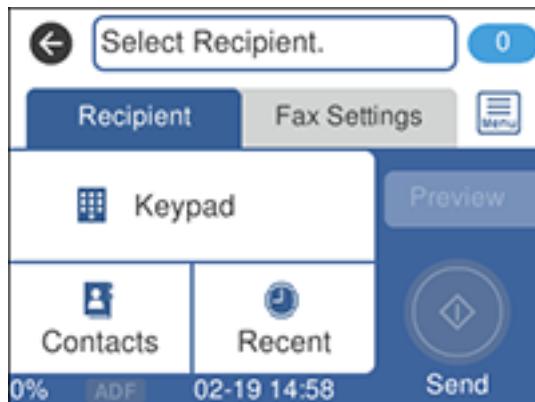
## Sending a Fax at a Specified Time

You can send a fax at a time of your choice. You can only schedule one fax at a time.

**Note:** Make sure the product's date and time settings are correct. You can only send faxes in black-and-white when you use this option.

1. Place your original on the product for faxing.
2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Enter a fax number or select a number from the Contacts or Recent list.
5. Select the **Fax Settings** tab.
6. Select **Send Fax Later**.
7. Select **On**.
8. Select **Time**, use the numeric keypad on the LCD screen to enter your desired time, and select **OK**, then select **OK** again.
9. Select the **Recipient** tab and select **Send**.

**Note:** To cancel faxing, select **Cancel**.

After scanning your originals, your product dials the number and sends the fax at the specified time.

**Note:** If the product is turned off at the specified time, the fax is sent when it is powered on.

**Parent topic:** [Sending Faxes from the Product Control Panel](#)

**Related topics**

[Setting Up Contacts and Contact Groups](#)

[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

## Dialing Fax Numbers from a Connected Telephone

If you connected a telephone to the **EXT** port on your product, you can send a fax by dialing the fax number from the connected telephone. If the recipient's phone number and fax number are the same, you can speak to the recipient before sending the fax.

1. Place your original on the product for faxing.
2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Dial the fax number from the connected telephone. Speak to the recipient if necessary.

**Note:** If you are using a pre-paid calling card, enter the number and password required to use the card before entering the destination fax number.

4. Select **Fax** on the LCD screen.
5. Select the **Fax Settings** tab and select any settings as necessary.

**Note:** Your product now communicates with the recipient's fax machine. Do not hang up the telephone.

6. When you hear a fax tone, select **Send** on the Recipient tab to start sending the fax.

**Note:** If your recipient's fax machine does not print in color, your fax is automatically sent in black-and-white.

7. Hang up the telephone.

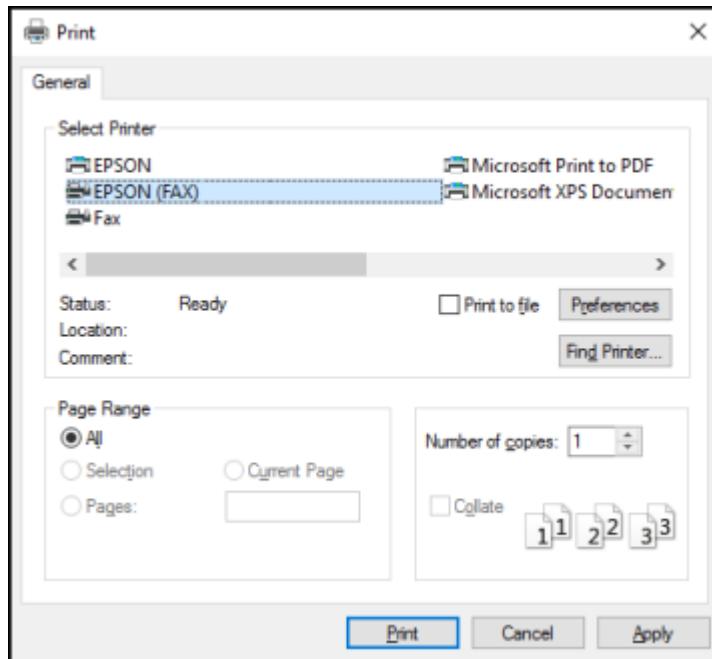
**Parent topic:** [Sending Faxes from the Product Control Panel](#)

## Sending Faxes Using the Fax Utility - Windows

You can send a fax from a printing program in Windows. You can fax up to 100 pages at a time, including a cover sheet.

1. Open the file you want to fax and select the print command.

You see a window like this:

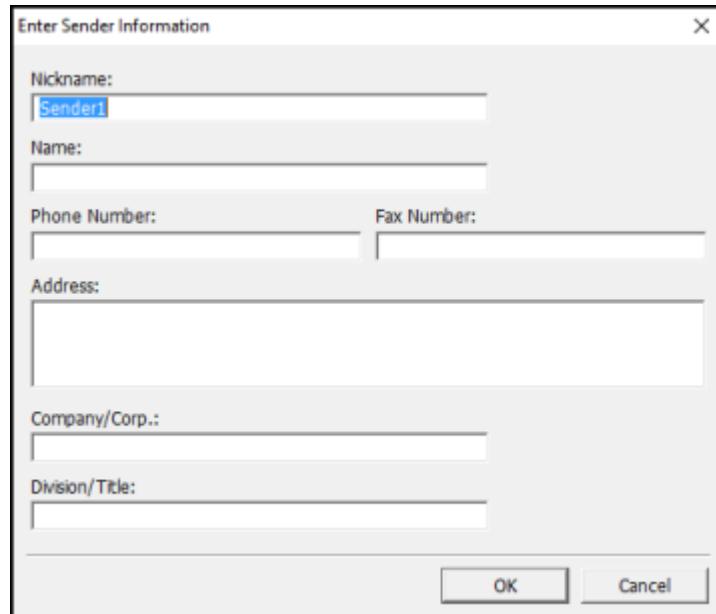


2. Select your product with the **FAX** option as the printer.
3. To change the Paper Size, Orientation, Color, Image Quality, or Character Density settings, click the **Preferences** or **Properties** button, change the necessary settings, and click **OK**.

**Note:** If you see a **Setup**, **Printer**, or **Options** button, click it. Then click **Preferences** or **Properties** on the next screen. For more information about selecting fax print settings, click **Help**.

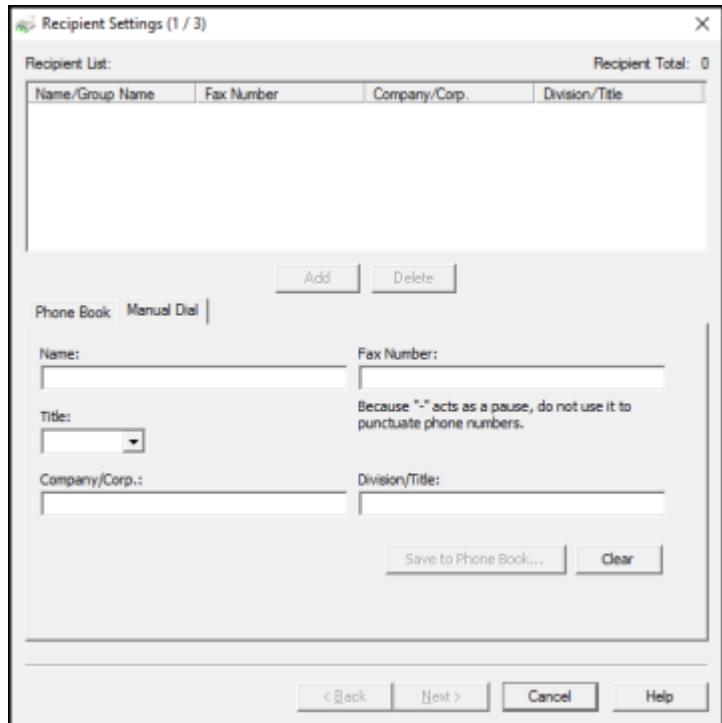
4. Select the Page Range as necessary. (Leave the Number of copies set to **1**.)
5. Click **Print** or **OK**.

If you're faxing for the first time, you see a window like this one:



6. Enter your sender information so that recipients can identify the origin of the fax. Then click **OK** to save the sender information.

You see a window like this:



7. Enter the recipient's name and fax number or select a recipient from the phonebook, then click **Next**.

**Note:** For detailed instructions on using the Epson FAX Utility, click **Help**.

8. Select a cover sheet and enter a subject and message, then click **Next**.
9. Click **Send** to transmit your fax.

**Parent topic:** [Sending Faxes](#)

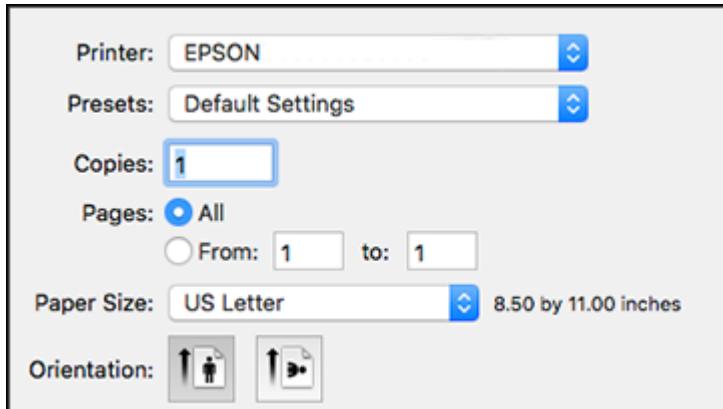
## Sending Faxes Using the Fax Utility - Mac

You can send a fax from a Mac printing program using the FAX Utility. You can fax up to 100 pages at a time, including a cover sheet.

1. Open the file you want to fax.

2. Select the print command in your application.

**Note:** You may need to select a print icon on your screen, the **Print** option in the **File** menu, or another command. See your application's help utility for details.

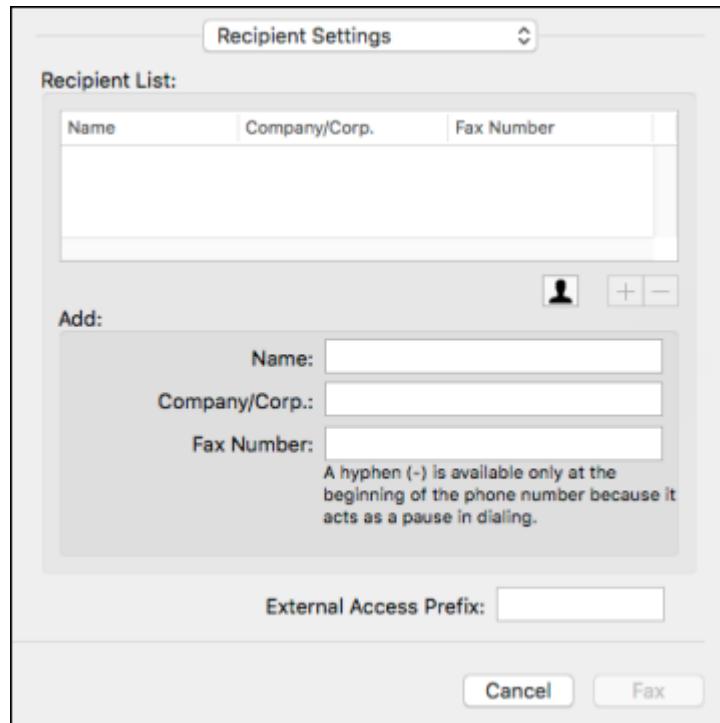


3. Select your product **FAX** option as the **Printer** setting.
4. If necessary, click the arrow next to the Printer setting or the **Show Details** button to expand the print window.
5. Select the number of pages you are faxing as the **Pages** setting.

**Note:** Leave the **Copies** setting set to 1.

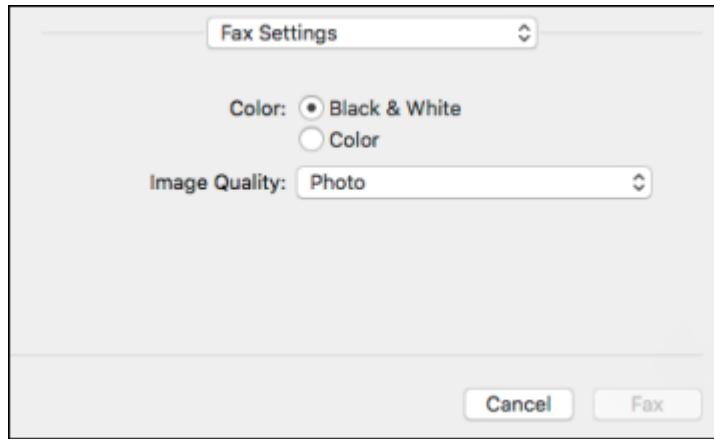
6. Select **Recipient Settings** from the pop-up menu.

You see this window:



7. Do one of the following to choose your recipient:
  - Select a name or group from the **Recipient List**.
  - Enter a name, company, and fax number and click the **+** button.
  - Click the icon and select a recipient from your address book.
8. Select **Fax Settings** from the pop-up menu.

You see this window:



9. Select the **Color** and **Image Quality** settings you want to use for your fax.

10. Click **Fax**.

**Parent topic:** [Sending Faxes](#)

## Receiving Faxes

See these sections to receive faxes with your product.

**Note:** Do not turn the product off while it is receiving a fax. Otherwise, the fax transmission will be lost.

[Fax Reception](#)

[Receiving Faxes Automatically](#)

[Receiving Faxes Manually](#)

[Receiving a Fax by Polling](#)

[Saving and Viewing Received Faxes](#)

**Parent topic:** [Faxing](#)

## Fax Reception

Your product will automatically receive and print faxes when you set the Receive Mode to **Auto**.

If you connected a telephone to your product so you can use the same phone line for faxes and voice calls, you can also set your product to receive faxes manually. This allows you to check for a fax tone using the telephone and press a button on your product to receive the fax.

Make sure to load paper in your product and select your fax settings before receiving a fax.

**Note:** If you run out of paper during fax printing, load more paper and press the button indicated on your product's LCD screen to continue.

**Note:** Do not turn the product off while it is receiving a fax. Otherwise, the fax transmission will be lost.

**Parent topic:** [Receiving Faxes](#)

## Receiving Faxes Automatically

To receive faxes automatically, make sure Receive Mode is set to **Auto** (the default setting for the product).

To change the **Receive Mode** if necessary, select **Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Basic Settings > Receive Mode**.

If an answering machine is connected, make sure the product's **Rings to Answer** setting is set higher than the number of rings your answering machine is set to answer a call. For example, if the answering machine is set to pick up on the fourth ring, set the product to pick up on the fifth ring or later.

**Parent topic:** [Receiving Faxes](#)

### Related references

[Basic Settings - Fax](#)

### Related tasks

[Receiving Faxes Manually](#)

## Receiving Faxes Manually

You can set up your product to receive faxes manually by setting the Receive Mode to **Manual**. This lets you check for a fax tone on the connected telephone before receiving a fax.

1. To change the Receive Mode, select **Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Basic Settings > Receive Mode** and select **Manual**.
2. When the connected telephone rings, answer the call.

3. If you hear a fax tone, select **Fax** on the LCD display.

**Note:** To receive a fax using the attached telephone instead of the product control panel, enable the **Fax Settings > Basic Settings > Remote Receive** setting.

4. Select **Send/Receive**.
5. Select **Receive**.
6. Select the icon to start receiving the fax.
7. Hang up the telephone.

**Parent topic:** [Receiving Faxes](#)

**Related references**

[Basic Settings - Fax](#)

**Related tasks**

[Receiving Faxes Automatically](#)

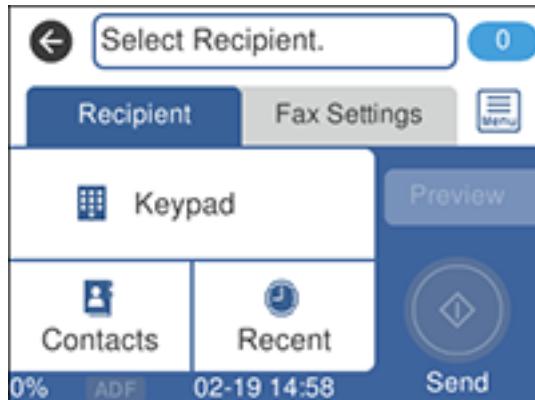
## Receiving a Fax by Polling

You can use polling to receive a fax from another fax machine (such as a fax information service).

**Note:** You cannot use polling to receive a fax from a fax information service that uses audio guidance.

1. Press the home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select the  icon.
4. Set **Polling Receive** to On.
5. Select **Close**.
6. Enter the fax number you expect to receive the fax from.
7. Select **Polling** to start receiving the fax.

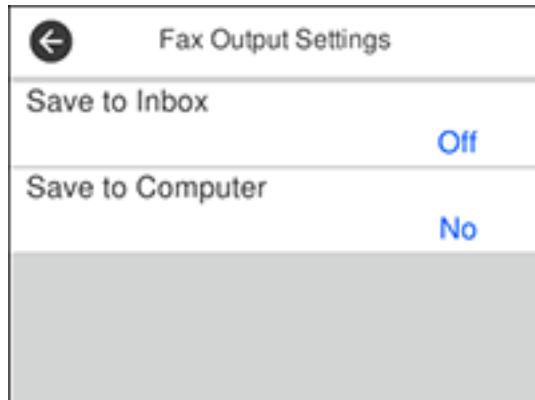
**Parent topic:** [Receiving Faxes](#)

## Saving and Viewing Received Faxes

You can save received faxes in your product's memory and view them on the LCD screen. The inbox can hold up to 100 documents but can vary depending on the file size of the documents.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Receive Settings > Fax Output Settings**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select **Save to Inbox**.
4. Set **Save to Inbox** to **On**.
5. Select **Options When Memory is Full** and choose an option.
6. Select **Inbox Password Settings** to set, change, or reset the password for the inbox.

**Note:** You cannot set an Inbox password if you set **Options When Memory is Full** to **Receive and print faxes**.

7. Press the  home button.
8. Select  . Enter the inbox password, if necessary.
9. Select the fax you want to view.

You see the fax displayed on the screen.

10. Select the  icon.
11. Select one of the printing or deleting options, and follow the on-screen instructions.

**Note:** Delete faxes after you print or view them to prevent the product's memory from filling up. When the memory is full, you can only print or reject incoming faxes.

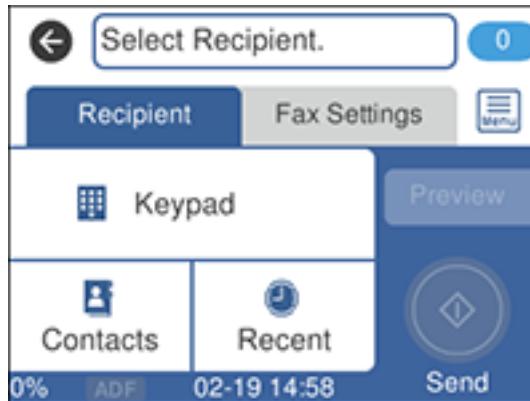
**Parent topic:** [Receiving Faxes](#)

## Checking Fax Status

You can check the status of current fax jobs, or faxes that have been received or sent on the product control panel.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select the  icon.
4. Select **Transmission Log** and select the fax job you want to check.

**Note:** If you see a numbered icon above the  icon on your product's LCD screen or the  received fax light is flashing, received faxes have been temporarily saved to the product's memory.

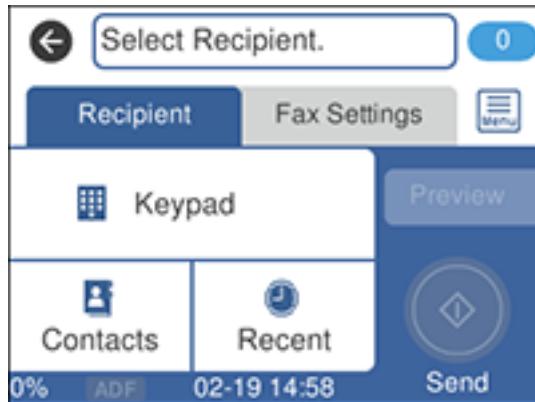
**Parent topic:** [Faxing](#)

## Printing Fax Reports

You can print several types of fax reports whenever necessary.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Fax**.

You see a screen like this:



3. Select the  icon.
4. Select **Fax Report**.
5. Select the fax report you want to print.

#### [Fax Report Options](#)

**Parent topic:** [Faxing](#)

## **Fax Report Options**

Select the fax report or list you want to print.

### **Last Transmission**

Print a report on the previous fax that was sent or received through polling. You can use the **Fax Settings > Transmission Report** setting to print the report automatically.

### **Fax Log**

View or print a report on recent fax transmissions. You can use the **Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Report Settings > Fax Log Auto Print** setting to print the report automatically.

### **Fax Settings List**

Print a list of the current fax communication settings.

### **Protocol Trace**

Print a detailed report for the previous sent or received fax.

**Parent topic:** [Printing Fax Reports](#)

---

# Refilling Ink and Replacing the Maintenance Box

Periodically check the ink tanks to see if they need to be refilled.

Before checking the ink level or refilling an ink tank as described here, be sure to read the ink safety precautions.

**Caution:** Visually check the ink levels in the product's ink tanks to confirm the actual ink levels. Continued use of the product when the ink is expended could damage the product.

[Ink Safety Precautions](#)

[Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels](#)

[Purchase Epson Ink and Maintenance Box](#)

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

[Maintenance Box Replacement](#)

## Ink Safety Precautions

**Note:** The product has a low ink alert system. The accuracy of this system depends on the user refilling the ink tanks correctly. The product cannot directly measure the ink levels in the tanks; instead it estimates the amount of ink remaining by internally monitoring ink usage. The low ink alert system may generate inaccurate messages if the ink tanks are not refilled according to these instructions.

Visually check the ink levels in the product's ink tanks to confirm the actual ink levels. Continued use of the product when the ink is expended could damage the product.

## Ink Handling Precautions

- Keep ink bottles and the ink tanks out of the reach of children. Do not allow children to drink from or handle the ink bottles and bottle caps.
- Do not tilt or shake an ink bottle after opening it; otherwise, ink may leak.
- Be careful not to touch any ink when you handle the ink tanks, ink tank caps, and opened ink bottles or ink bottle caps.
- If ink gets on your skin, wash it thoroughly with soap and water. If ink gets into your eyes, flush them immediately with water. If discomfort or problems persist, see a doctor immediately. If ink gets into your mouth, spit it out and see a doctor right away.
- Do not disassemble the maintenance box; otherwise ink may get into your eyes or on your skin.

- Do not shake or squeeze the ink bottles.
- If ink spills, wipe it up immediately. To prevent the ink from spreading, blot the spill with a dry cloth, then wipe it with a damp cloth. The ink will be hard to remove once it has dried.

### **Ink Refilling Precautions**

- Use ink bottles with the correct part number for this product.
- Epson's warranties do not extend to any damage caused by the use of third-party ink or ink not designed for your printer.
- This product requires careful handling of ink. Ink may splatter when the ink tanks are filled or refilled with ink. If ink gets on your clothes or belongings, it may not come off.
- Do not open the ink bottle package until you are ready to fill an ink tank. Ink bottles are vacuum packed to maintain reliability. If you leave an ink bottle unpacked for a long time before using it, print quality may be affected.
- If the ink level is below the lower line on an ink tank, refill the ink. Continued use of the product when the ink level is below the lower line on an ink tank could damage the product.
- Visually check the ink levels in the product's ink tanks to confirm the actual ink levels. Continued use of the product when the ink is expended could damage the product.
- Do not maintain low ink levels for extended periods of time.
- For optimum printing results, refill the ink tanks to the upper line at least once a year.
- After bringing an ink bottle inside from a cold storage site, allow it to warm up at room temperature for at least three hours before using it.
- Use the ink bottle before the date printed on the package.
- After opening an ink bottle, Epson recommends using it as soon as possible.
- Wipe off any ink around the tanks and ports with a clean, lint-free cloth or cotton swab.
- Store ink bottles in a cool, dark place. Keep them out of direct sunlight.
- Do not store the ink bottles in high or freezing temperatures.
- Store the ink bottles in the same environment as the product. When storing or transporting an opened ink bottle, do not tilt the bottle and do not subject it to impacts or temperature changes. Otherwise, ink may leak even if the cap on the ink bottle is tightened securely. Be sure to keep the ink bottle upright when tightening the cap, and take measures to prevent ink from leaking when you transport the bottle.

## **Ink Bottle and Ink Tank Information**

- To maintain optimum print head performance, some ink is consumed from all ink tanks during printing and when performing maintenance operations, such as cleaning the print head. Ink may also be consumed when the product is turned on.
- Some ink in the ink bottles supplied with your product is used during initial setup; these ink bottles may print fewer pages compared to subsequent ink bottles.
- Quoted ink yields may vary depending on the images you are printing, the paper type you are using, how often you print, and environmental conditions such as temperature.
- The ink bottles may contain recycled materials, but this does not affect product function or performance.
- When printing in monochrome or grayscale, color ink may be used instead of black ink, depending on the paper type or print quality settings. This is because a mixture of color inks is used to create black.
- A reserve amount of ink remains in the tank when your product indicates that a refill is necessary.

**Parent topic:** [Refilling Ink and Replacing the Maintenance Box](#)

## **Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels**

Your product and software will let you know when to refill an ink tank or replace the maintenance box.

[Checking the Ink Levels on Your Product](#)

[Checking Maintenance Box Status on the LCD Screen](#)

[Checking Ink and Maintenance Box Levels - Windows](#)

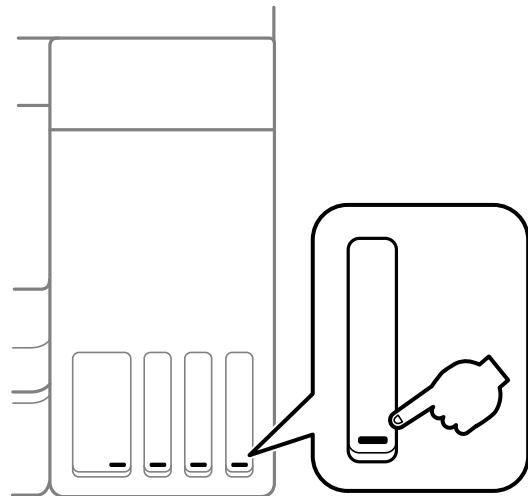
[Checking Ink and Maintenance Box Levels - Mac](#)

[Disabling Special Offers with Windows](#)

**Parent topic:** [Refilling Ink and Replacing the Maintenance Box](#)

## Checking the Ink Levels on Your Product

To confirm the actual ink remaining, visually check the ink levels in the product's ink tanks. Make sure the ink levels are above the lower line on the ink tanks. If any of the ink tanks are below the lower line, fill them to the upper line on the ink tank.



**Note:** The product has a low ink alert system. The accuracy of this system depends on the user refilling the ink tanks correctly. The product cannot directly measure the ink levels in the tanks; instead it estimates the amount of ink remaining by internally monitoring ink usage. The low ink alert system may generate inaccurate messages if the ink tanks are not refilled according to these instructions.

As a precaution, perform regular visual inspections of the ink tanks to ensure ink levels do not fall below the lower line. Continued use of the product when the ink level is below the lower line on the tank could damage the product.

**Parent topic:** [Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels](#)

**Related tasks**

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

## Checking Maintenance Box Status on the LCD Screen

You can check the status of your maintenance box using your product's LCD screen.

1. Press the home button, if necessary.

2. Select **Maintenance**
3. Select **Remaining capacity of Maintenance box.**

You see the remaining ink capacity of the maintenance box.

4. Press the  home button again to exit the screen.

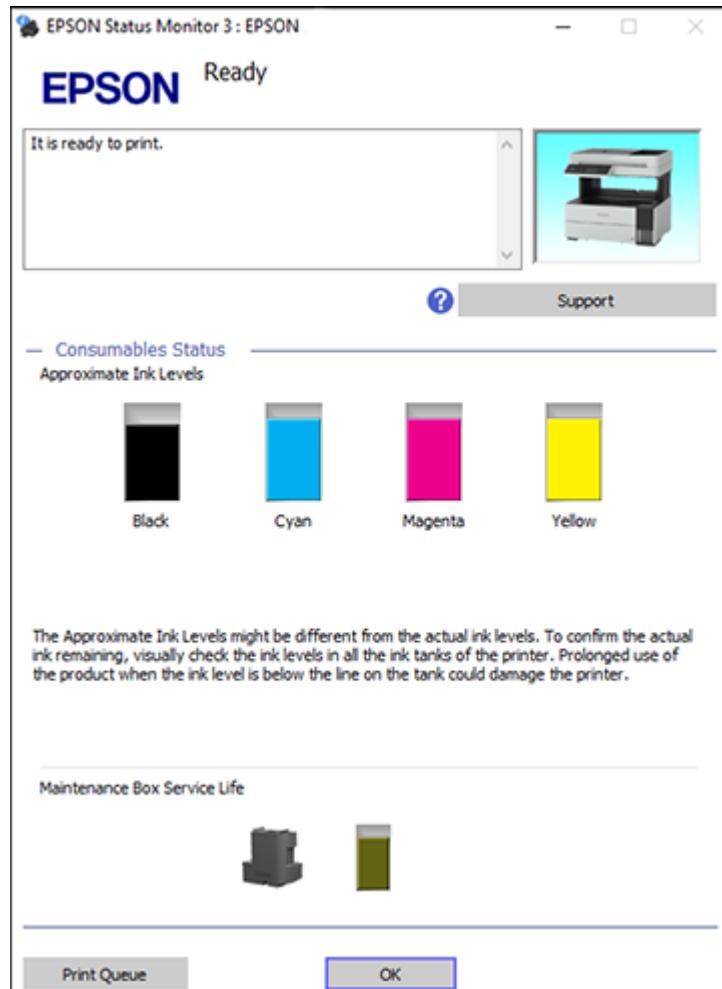
**Parent topic:** [Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels](#)

## Checking Ink and Maintenance Box Levels - Windows

A low ink reminder appears if you try to print when ink is low, and you can check your ink levels at any time using a utility on your Windows computer.

1. To check your ink and maintenance box levels, access the Windows Desktop and double-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and double-click .

You see a window like this:



2. Refill any ink tank or replace the maintenance box as needed.

**Parent topic:** [Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels](#)

**Related tasks**

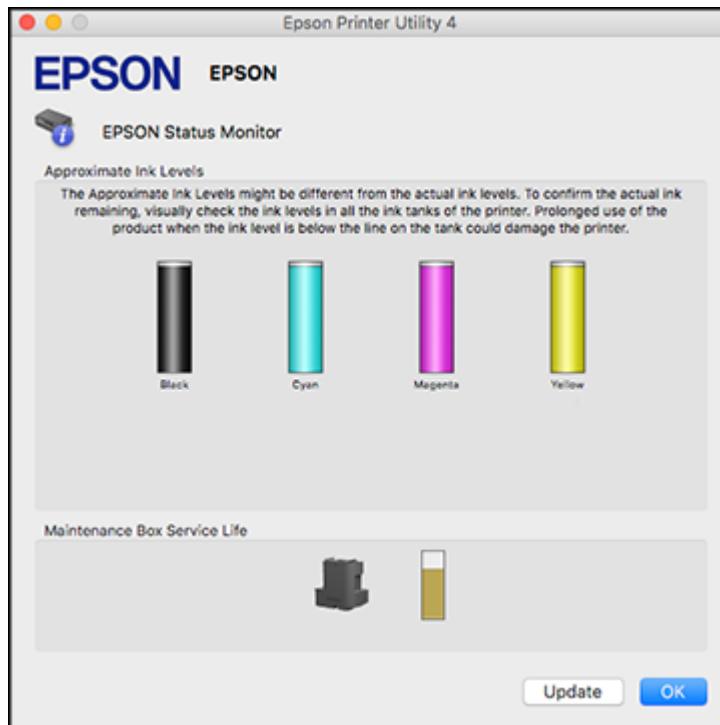
[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

## Checking Ink and Maintenance Box Levels - Mac

You can check your ink levels using a utility on your Mac.

1. In the Apple menu or the Dock, select **System Preferences**. Select **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners**, select your product, and select **Options & Supplies**. Select **Utility** and select **Open Printer Utility**.
2. Select **EPSON Status Monitor**.

You see a window like this:



3. Refill any ink tank or replace the maintenance box as needed.

**Note:** To update or refresh the displayed ink levels, click **Update**.

**Parent topic:** [Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels](#)

## Related tasks

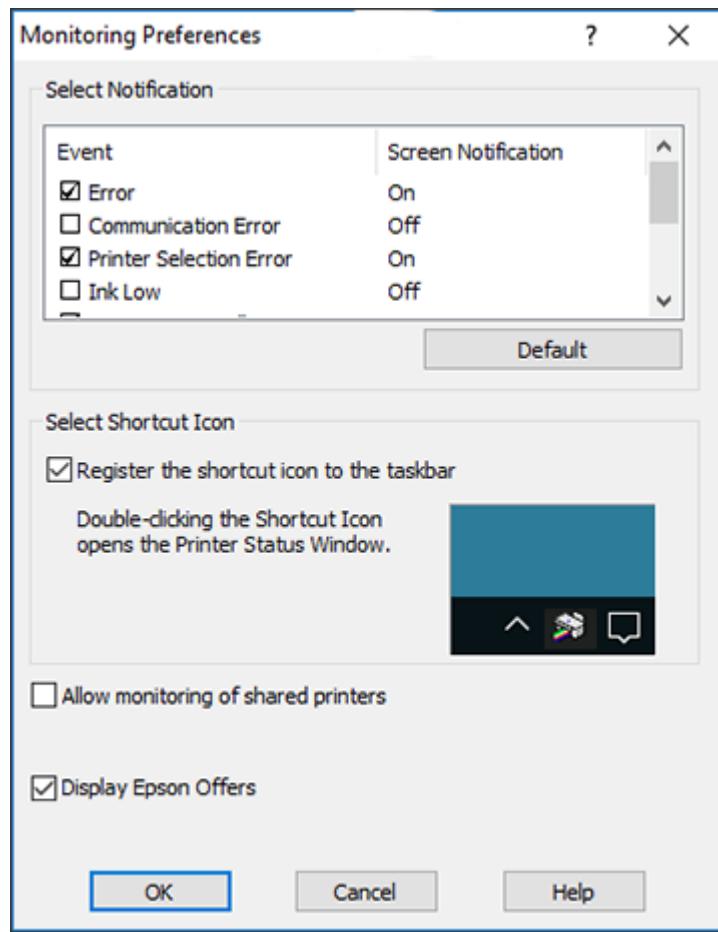
[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

## Disabling Special Offers with Windows

You can disable special offers messages from Epson using a utility on your Windows computer.

1. Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click . Select **Monitoring Preferences**.

You see this window:



2. To disable promotional offers, deselect the **Display Epson Offers** checkbox.

**Parent topic:** [Checking the Ink and Maintenance Box Levels](#)

## Purchase Epson Ink and Maintenance Box

You can purchase genuine Epson ink, maintenance boxes, and paper at [epson.com](#) (U.S. sales) or [epson.ca](#) (Canadian sales). You can also purchase supplies from an Epson authorized reseller. To find the nearest one, call 800-GO-EPSON (800-463-7766) in the U.S. or 800-807-7766 in Canada.

**Note:** Epson's warranties do not extend to any damage caused by the use of third-party ink or ink not designed for your printer.

The included initial ink bottles must be used for printer setup and are not for resale. The printer ships with full ink bottles and part of the ink from the first bottles is used to charge the print head. Yields vary considerably based on images printed, print settings, paper type, frequency of use and temperature.

### Ink Bottle and Maintenance Box Part Numbers

**Parent topic:** [Refilling Ink and Replacing the Maintenance Box](#)

## Ink Bottle and Maintenance Box Part Numbers

Use these part numbers when you order or purchase new ink bottles or a new maintenance box. Use the ink by the date printed on the package.

Ink color	Part number
Black	T542120-S
Cyan	T542220-S
Magenta	T542320-S
Yellow	T542420-S

**Maintenance box part number:** T04D100

**Parent topic:** [Purchase Epson Ink and Maintenance Box](#)

## Refilling the Ink Tanks

Make sure you have a new ink bottle handy and have read the ink safety precautions before you begin.

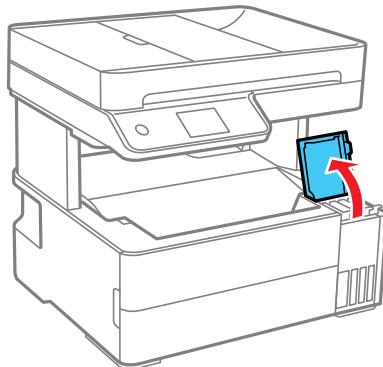
You can continue to use the product even if one or more ink tanks are not filled all the way. However, for the most accurate ink level monitoring, fill all the ink tanks up to the upper line.

**Note:** The product has a low ink alert system. The accuracy of this system depends on the user refilling the ink tanks correctly. The product cannot directly measure the ink levels in the tanks; instead it estimates the amount of ink remaining by internally monitoring ink usage. The low ink alert system may generate inaccurate messages if the ink tanks are not refilled according to these instructions.

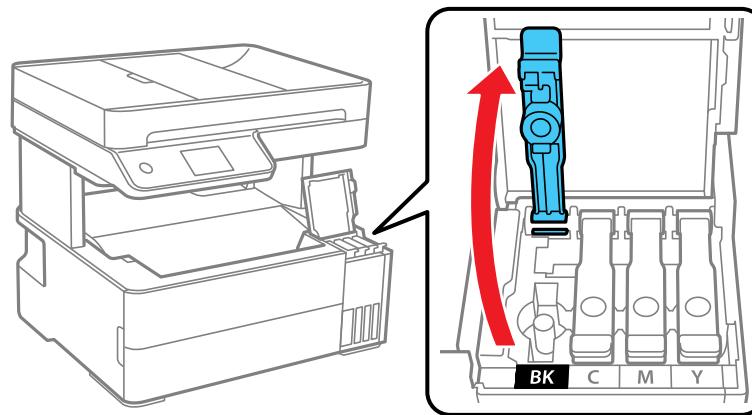
As a precaution, perform regular visual inspections of the ink tanks to ensure ink levels do not fall below the lower line. Continued use of the product when the ink level is below the lower line on the tank could damage the product.

**Caution:** If ink spills, wipe it off immediately with a damp towel to avoid permanent stains. If ink gets on your clothes or belongings, it may not come off.

1. Turn on your product.
2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Select **Maintenance**.
4. Select **Fill Ink**.
5. Read the filling ink precautions on the LCD screen and press **Proceed**.
6. Open the ink tank cover.

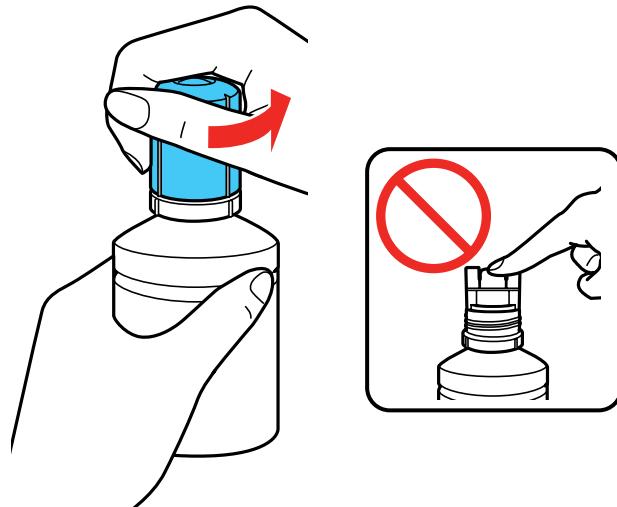


7. Open the ink tank cap.



**Note:** Refer to the color-coded sticker on the ink tank unit to identify the color of each tank.

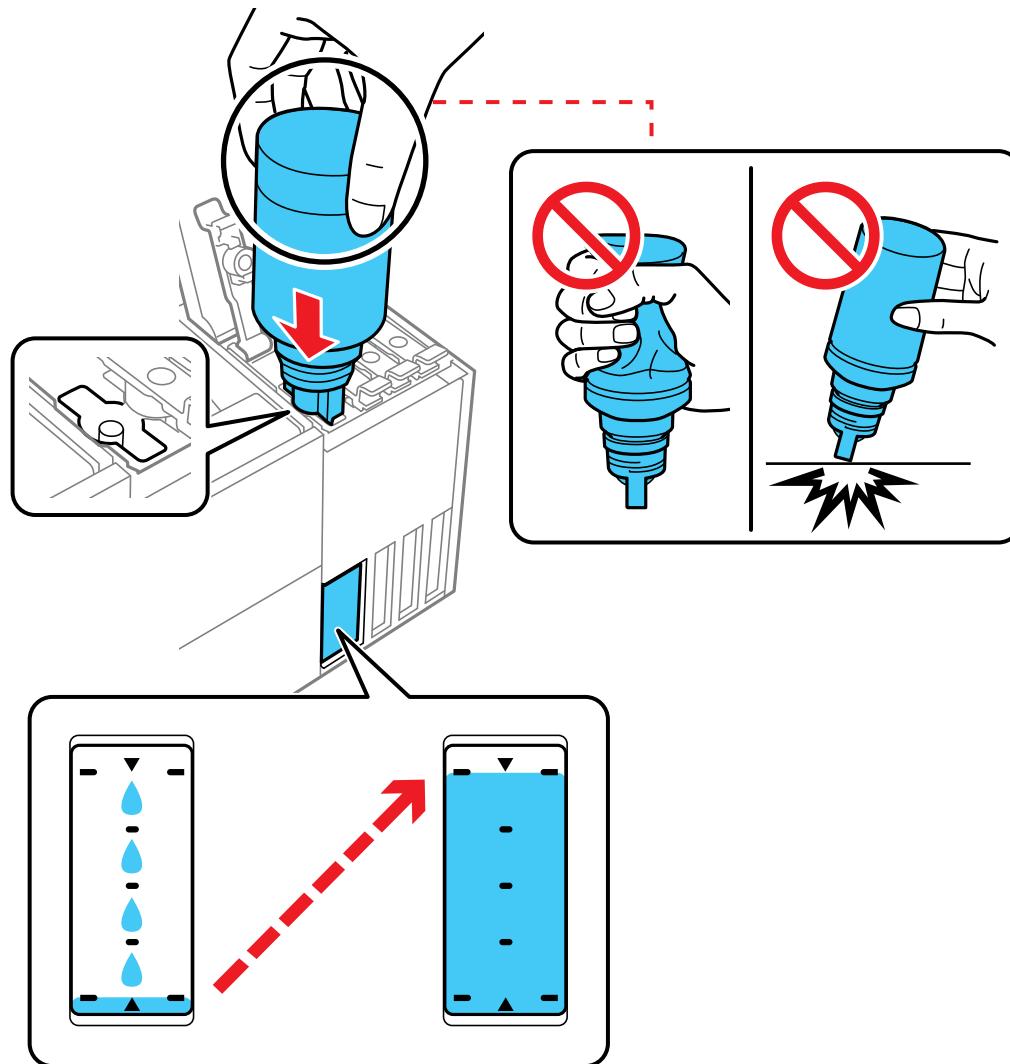
8. Hold the ink bottle upright and slowly turn the bottle cap to remove it.



**Caution:** Do not shake or squeeze the bottle. Do not touch the top of the bottle after its cap is removed.

**Warning:** If ink gets on your skin, wash it thoroughly with soap and water. If ink gets into your eyes, flush them immediately with water. If ink gets into your mouth, spit it out immediately. Seek medical advice if problems persist. Keep the ink bottles out of the reach of children and do not drink the ink.

9. Align the top of the ink bottle with the filling port, and then insert it straight into the port.



**Note:** Do not force the bottle into position; each bottle is keyed for each color.

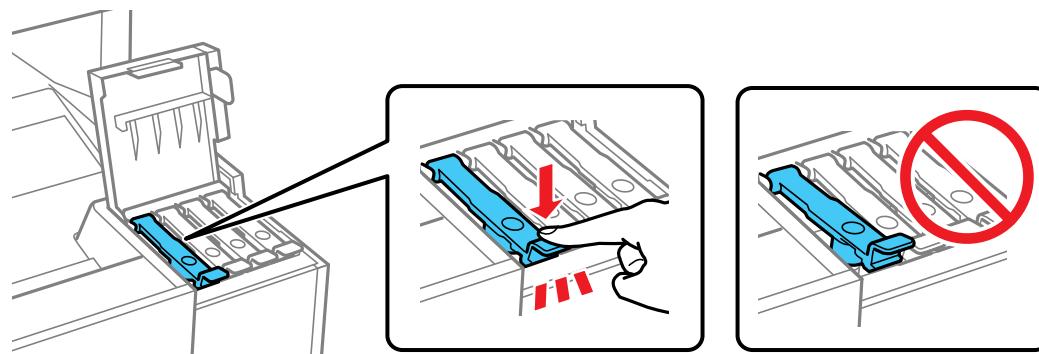
10. Wait for the ink to fill the tank. Do not squeeze the bottle or allow it to contact any surface. Ink flows into the tank and stops automatically when the ink is filled to the upper line.

**Note:** If ink does not flow from the bottle, lift and reinsert the bottle.

11. When the ink tank is full, remove the ink bottle and securely close it with the cap.

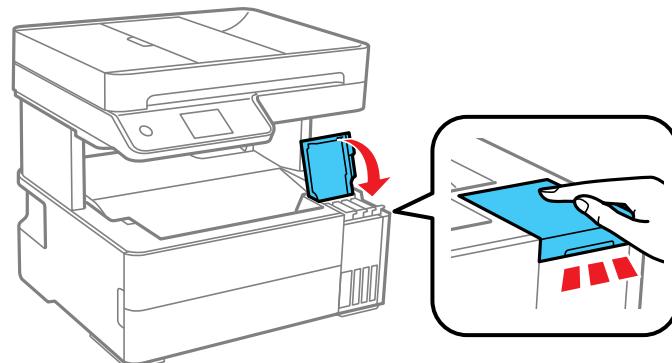
**Note:** If any ink remains in the bottle, store the bottle upright for later use. Do not leave the ink bottle inserted; otherwise the bottle may be damaged or ink may leak.

12. Close the ink tank cap.



13. Repeat the steps above to refill other ink tanks, as necessary.

14. Close the ink tank cover until it clicks.



15. Follow the on-screen instructions to reset the ink level for any color of ink you refilled.

**Note:** Even if you do not refill ink up to the upper line on the ink tank, you can continue using the printer. To keep your printer operating at its best, however, fill the ink tank up to the upper line and reset the ink level immediately.

**Parent topic:** [Refilling Ink and Replacing the Maintenance Box](#)

## Maintenance Box Replacement

The maintenance box stores surplus ink that gets collected during printing or print head cleaning. When you see a message on the LCD screen, follow the on-screen instructions to replace the maintenance box.

**Note:** When the maintenance box is full, you cannot print or clean the print head until it is replaced. However, you can perform operations that do not require ink, such as scanning.

Note the following precautions when replacing the maintenance box:

- Do not remove the maintenance box or its cover except when replacing the maintenance box; otherwise, ink may leak.
- Do not touch the green chip on the side of the maintenance box.
- Do not tilt the maintenance box after removing it or ink may leak.
- Do not touch the openings in the maintenance box or you may get ink on you.
- Do not drop the maintenance box or subject it to strong shocks.
- If you cannot replace the cover, the maintenance box may not be installed correctly. Remove and reinstall the maintenance box.
- Do not store the maintenance box in high or freezing temperatures.
- Do not replace the maintenance box during printing; otherwise, ink may leak.
- If you cannot close the maintenance box cover, make sure the maintenance box is installed properly.
- Keep the maintenance box out of direct sunlight.

**Caution:** Do not reuse a maintenance box that has been removed and left uninstalled for a long period. Keep the maintenance box away from direct sunlight.

**Note:** The maintenance box is a user-replaceable part and is not covered by the product warranty.

**Parent topic:** Refilling Ink and Replacing the Maintenance Box

---

# Adjusting Print Quality

If your print quality declines, you may need to run a utility to clean or align the print head.

If running these utilities does not solve the problem, you may need to run a Power Cleaning or clean the paper or print head path.

[Print Head Maintenance](#)

[Print Head Alignment](#)

[Cleaning the Paper Guide](#)

[Cleaning the Print Head Path](#)

[Checking the Number of Sheets Fed](#)

## Print Head Maintenance

If your printouts become too light, or you see dark or light bands across them, you may need to clean the print head nozzles. Cleaning uses ink, so clean the nozzles only if print quality declines.

You can check for clogged nozzles before you clean them so you don't clean them unnecessarily.

**Note:** You may not be able to clean the print head when the ink level in any of the tanks is low. You may have to refill the ink tank first.

If you still see white or dark lines or gaps in your printouts, even after cleaning the print head several times, you can run a Power Cleaning.

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

[Power Cleaning](#)

**Parent topic:** [Adjusting Print Quality](#)

**Related tasks**

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

## Print Head Nozzle Check

You can print a nozzle check pattern to check for clogged nozzles.

[Checking the Nozzles Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Checking the Nozzles Using a Computer Utility](#)

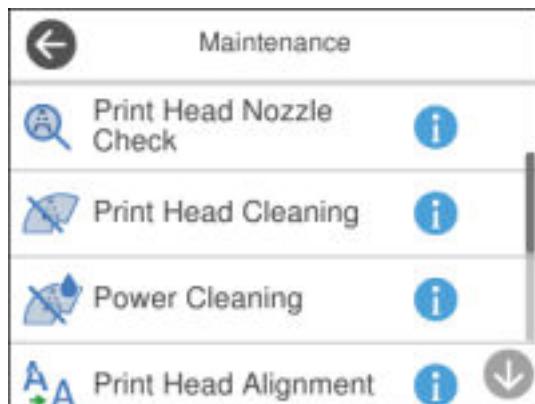
[Parent topic: Print Head Maintenance](#)

## Checking the Nozzles Using the Product Control Panel

You can check the print head nozzles using the control panel on your product.

1. Make sure there are no errors on the LCD screen and the output tray is extended.
2. Load a few sheets of plain paper in the product.
3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Maintenance**.

You see a screen like this:

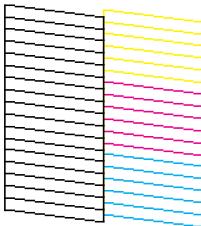


5. Select **Print Head Nozzle Check**.
6. Select **Print**.

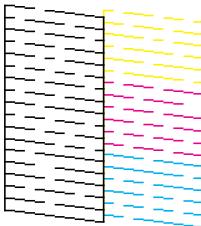
The nozzle check pattern is printed.

7. Check the printed pattern to see if there are gaps in the lines.

**Print head is clean**



**Print head needs cleaning**



8. Do one of the following:

- If there are no gaps, the print head is clean. Select **O**.
- If there are gaps or the pattern is faint, select **X**. Follow the instructions on the screen to clean the print head.

If you don't see any improvement after cleaning the print head up to 3 times, turn the product off and wait at least 12 hours. Then try cleaning the print head again. If quality still does not improve, run a Power Cleaning. If there is still no improvement, contact Epson support.

**Parent topic:** Print Head Nozzle Check

**Related tasks**

[Cleaning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Power Cleaning Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

## Related topics

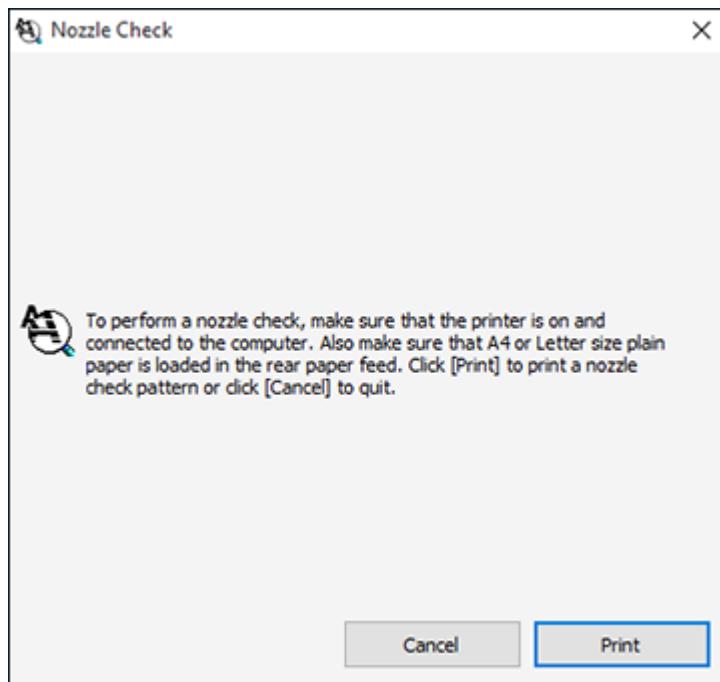
[Loading Paper](#)

### Checking the Nozzles Using a Computer Utility

You can check the print head nozzles using a utility on your Windows or Mac computer.

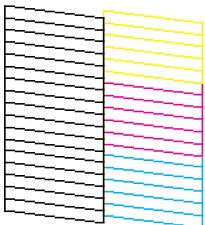
1. Load a few sheets of plain paper in the paper cassette.
2. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows:** Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click .
  - **Mac:** In the Apple menu or the Dock, select **System Preferences**. Select **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners**, select your product, and select **Options & Supplies**. Select **Utility** and select **Open Printer Utility**.
3. Select **Print Head Nozzle Check**.

You see a window like this:

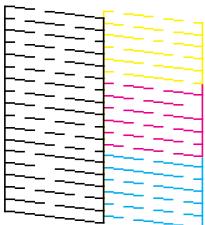


4. Click **Print**.
5. Check the printed pattern to see if there are gaps in the lines.

**Print head is clean**



**Print head needs cleaning**



6. Do one of the following:
  - If there are no gaps, click **Finish**.
  - If there are gaps or the pattern is faint, clean the print head.
  - If almost the entire pattern is missing, click **Finish** and perform a Power Cleaning.

**Parent topic:** Print Head Nozzle Check

**Related tasks**

[Cleaning the Print Head Using a Computer Utility](#)

[Power Cleaning Using a Computer Utility](#)

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## Print Head Cleaning

If print quality has declined and the nozzle check pattern indicates clogged nozzles, you can clean the print head.

**Note:** You may not be able to clean the print head when the ink level in any of the tanks is low. You may have to refill the ink tank first.

[Cleaning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Cleaning the Print Head Using a Computer Utility](#)

**Parent topic:** [Print Head Maintenance](#)

**Related tasks**

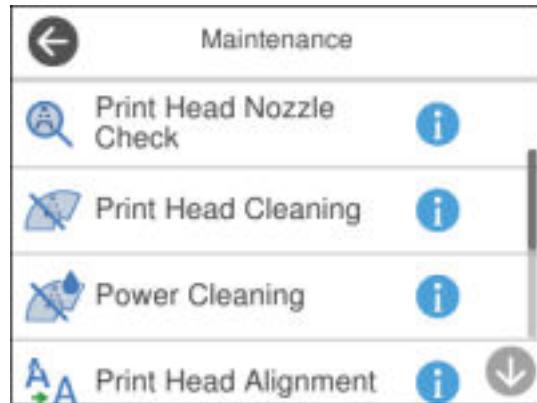
[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

### Cleaning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel

You can clean the print head nozzles using the control panel on your product.

1. Make sure there are no errors on the LCD screen and the output tray is extended.
2. Load a few sheets of plain paper in the product.
3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Maintenance**.

You see a screen like this:



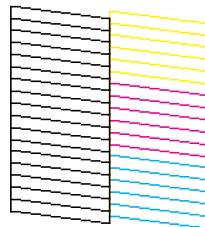
5. Select **Print Head Cleaning**.
6. Select **Start** to clean the print head.

The  power light flashes throughout the cleaning cycle and stays on when the cleaning cycle is finished. When the cleaning cycle is finished, a nozzle check pattern prints automatically.

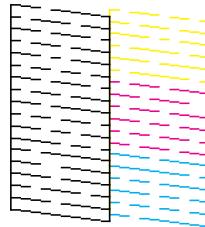
**Caution:** Never turn off the product or open the printer cover during a cleaning cycle or you may not be able to print.

7. Check the printed pattern to see if there are gaps in the lines.

**Print head is clean**



**Print head needs cleaning**



8. Do one of the following:
  - If there are no gaps, the print head is clean. Select **O**.
  - If there are gaps or the pattern is faint, select **X**. Follow the instructions on the screen to clean the print head.

If you don't see any improvement after cleaning the print head up to 3 times, turn off the product and wait at least 12 hours without printing. Then try cleaning the print head again. If quality still does not improve, run a Power Cleaning. If there is still no improvement, contact Epson support.

**Parent topic:** [Print Head Cleaning](#)

**Related tasks**

[Checking the Nozzles Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Power Cleaning Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

**Related topics**

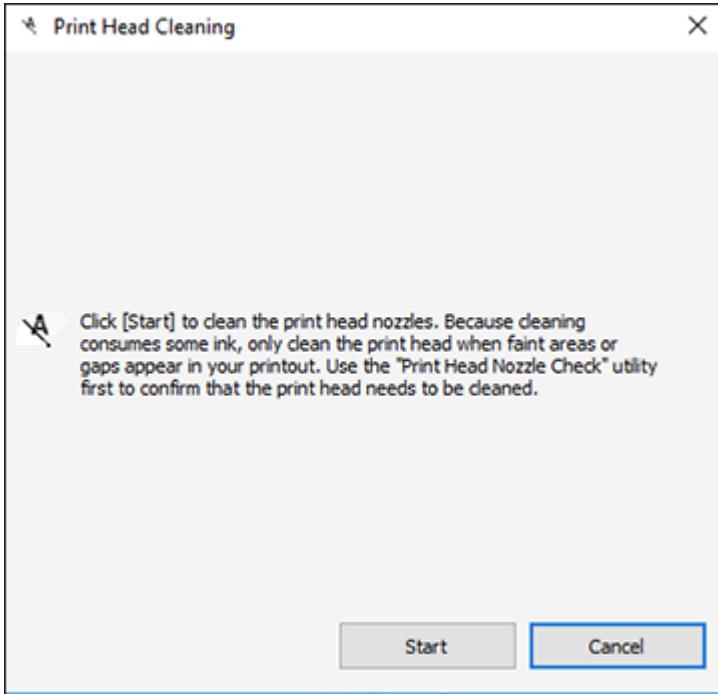
[Loading Paper](#)

## Cleaning the Print Head Using a Computer Utility

You can clean the print head using a utility on your Windows or Mac computer.

1. Make sure there are no errors on the LCD screen and the output tray is extended.
2. Load a few sheets of plain paper in the product.
3. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows:** Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click .
  - **Mac:** In the Apple menu or the Dock, select **System Preferences**. Select **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners**, select your product, and select **Options & Supplies**. Select **Utility** and select **Open Printer Utility**.
4. Select **Print Head Cleaning**.

You see a window like this:



5. Click **Start** to begin the cleaning cycle.

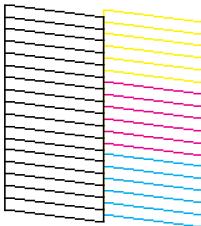
The  power light flashes throughout the cleaning cycle and stays on when the cleaning cycle is finished.

**Caution:** Never turn off the product or open the scanner unit during a cleaning cycle or you may not be able to print.

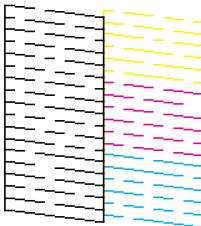
6. When the cleaning cycle is finished, you can check to see if the nozzles are clean; click **Print Nozzle Check Pattern** and click **Print**.

7. Check the printed pattern to see if there are gaps in the lines.

**Print head is clean**



**Print head needs cleaning**



- If there are no gaps, click **Finish**.
- If there are gaps or the pattern is faint, click **Clean** to clean the print head again.
- If almost the entire pattern is missing, click **Finish** and perform a Power Cleaning.

If you don't see any improvement after cleaning the print head up to 3 times, turn off the product and wait at least 12 hours. Then try cleaning the print head again. If quality still does not improve, run a Power Cleaning. If there is still no improvement, contact Epson support.

**Parent topic:** Print Head Cleaning

**Related references**

[Where to Get Help](#)

**Related tasks**

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

[Power Cleaning Using a Computer Utility](#)

## Related topics

[Loading Paper](#)

## Power Cleaning

If you still see white or dark lines or missing nozzles in your printouts, even after cleaning the print head several times, you can run a Power Cleaning.

If you do not see improvement after running a Power Cleaning, turn off the product and wait at least 12 hours before running another Power Cleaning.

**Caution:** Running a Power Cleaning consumes a lot of ink, so you should run it only if necessary. Make sure each ink tank is at least one-third full before running a Power Cleaning, or it may damage the product.

**Caution:** Power Cleaning may cause the maintenance box to reach its capacity sooner. When the maintenance box is full, you need to replace it to continue printing.

[Power Cleaning Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Power Cleaning Using a Computer Utility](#)

**Parent topic:** [Print Head Maintenance](#)

### Power Cleaning Using the Product Control Panel

You can run a Power Cleaning using the control panel on your product.

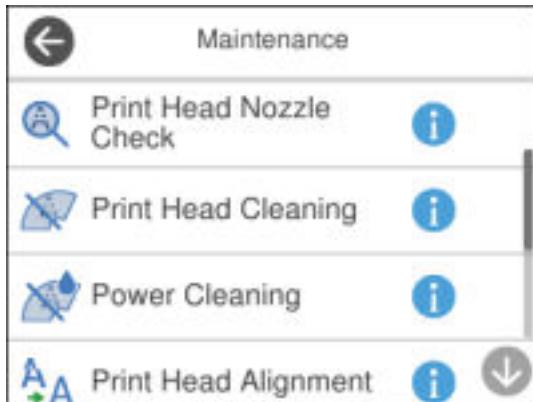
After a Power Cleaning, you must turn off the product and wait at least 12 hours before running another Power Cleaning.

1. Visually check the ink levels and make sure each ink tank is at least one-third full.

**Caution:** If you run a Power Cleaning when the ink levels are low, you may damage the product.

2. Press the  home button, if necessary.
3. Select **Maintenance**.

You see a screen like this:



4. Select **Power Cleaning**.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions to run the Power Cleaning.

**Note:** If you cannot run this feature, solve the problems that are displayed on the screen and run Power Cleaning again.

6. When the Power Cleaning is finished, run a nozzle check.  
If print quality has not improved after running Power Cleaning, wait at least 12 hours without printing, and then print the nozzle check pattern again. Run Print Head Cleaning or Power Cleaning again depending on the printed pattern. If quality still does not improve, contact Epson support.

**Parent topic:** [Power Cleaning](#)

**Related tasks**

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

## Power Cleaning Using a Computer Utility

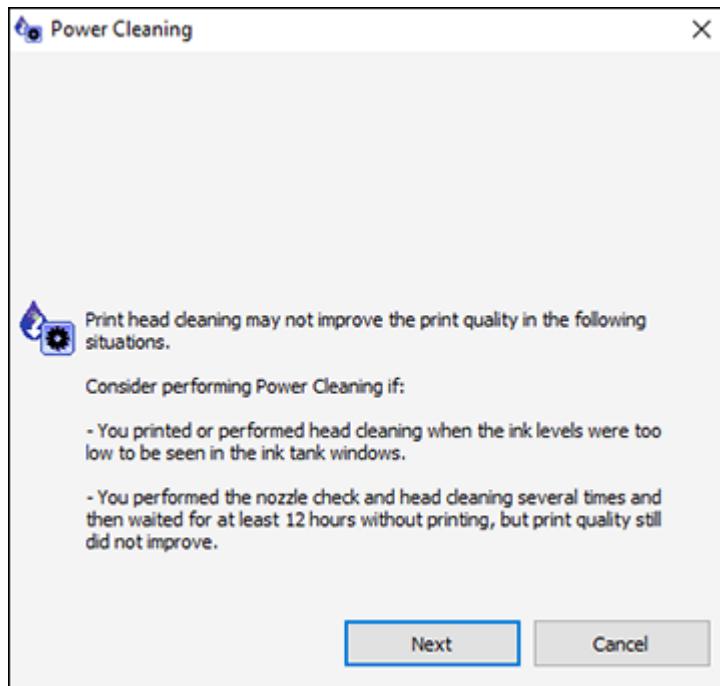
You can run a Power Cleaning using a utility on your Windows or Mac computer.

**Note:** After running a Power Cleaning, you must turn off the product and wait at least 12 hours before running another Power Cleaning.

1. Make sure there are no errors on the LCD screen.

2. Load a few sheets of plain paper in the product.
3. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows:** Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click . Select **Printer Settings** and click the **Maintenance** tab.
  - **Mac:** In the Apple menu or the Dock, select **System Preferences**. Select **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners**, select your product, and select **Options & Supplies**. Select **Utility** and select **Open Printer Utility**.
4. Select **Power Cleaning**.

You see a window like this:



5. Follow the on-screen instructions to run a Power Cleaning.
6. When Power Cleaning is finished, run a nozzle check.

If print quality has not improved after running Power Cleaning, wait for at least 12 hours without printing, and then print the nozzle check pattern again. Run Print Head Cleaning or Power Cleaning again depending on the printed pattern. If quality still does not improve, contact Epson support.

**Parent topic:** [Power Cleaning](#)

**Related tasks**

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

## Print Head Alignment

If your printouts become grainy or blurry, you notice misalignment of vertical lines, or you see dark or light horizontal bands, you may need to align the print head.

**Note:** Banding may also occur if your print head nozzles need cleaning.

[Aligning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel](#)

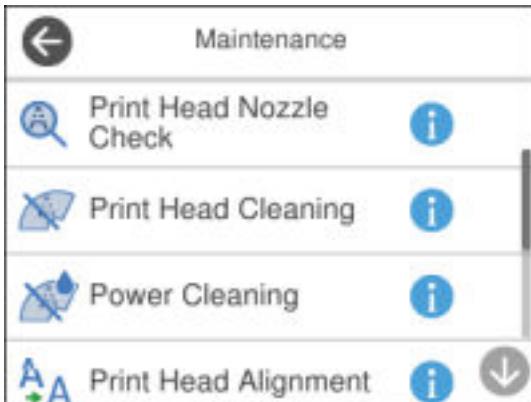
**Parent topic:** [Adjusting Print Quality](#)

## Aligning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel

You can align the print head using the control panel on your product.

1. Make sure there are no errors on the LCD screen and the output tray is extended.
2. Load a few sheets of plain paper in the product.
3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Maintenance**.

You see a screen like this:



5. Select **Print Head Alignment**.
6. Select one of the following options:
  - **Vertical Alignment** if your printout is blurry or contains vertical ruled lines that are misaligned.
  - **Horizontal Alignment** if your printout contains horizontal banding.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions to print an alignment sheet.

**Note:** Do not cancel printing while you are printing head alignment patterns.

8. Check the printed patterns on the alignment sheet and select the following on the LCD screen, depending on the alignment pattern you printed:
  - **Vertical Alignment:** For each set of patterns, select the number representing the pattern with the least amount of separation or overlap.



- **Horizontal Alignment:** Select the number representing the pattern with the least amount of separation or overlap.



9. Continue following the rest of the on-screen instructions to finish the alignment.

**Parent topic:** [Print Head Alignment](#)

**Related topics**

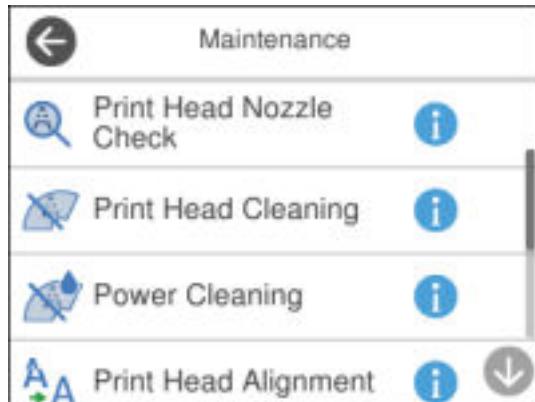
[Loading Paper](#)

## Cleaning the Paper Guide

If you see ink on the back of a printout or if printouts are smeared or scuffed, you can clean the paper guide roller to remove any excess ink.

1. Make sure there are no errors on the LCD screen.
2. Load plain paper in the product in this size: Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm]) or A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm]).
3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Maintenance**.

You see a screen like this:



5. Scroll down and select **Paper Guide Cleaning**.
6. Follow the on-screen instructions to clean the paper guide.
7. Repeat these steps as necessary until the paper comes out clean.

**Parent topic:** [Adjusting Print Quality](#)

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Alignment](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

**Related tasks**

[Cleaning the Print Head Using a Computer Utility](#)

## Cleaning the Print Head Path

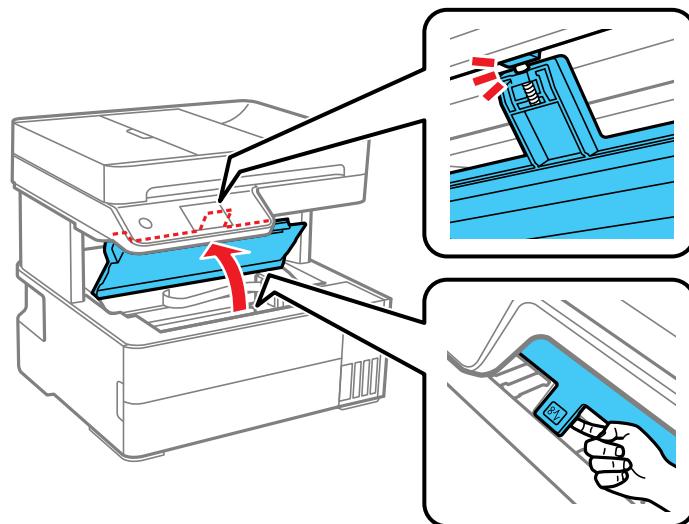
If the print quality has not improved after cleaning and aligning the print head and cleaning the paper path, the print head path inside the printer may be smeared with ink.

To clean the print head path, use the following:

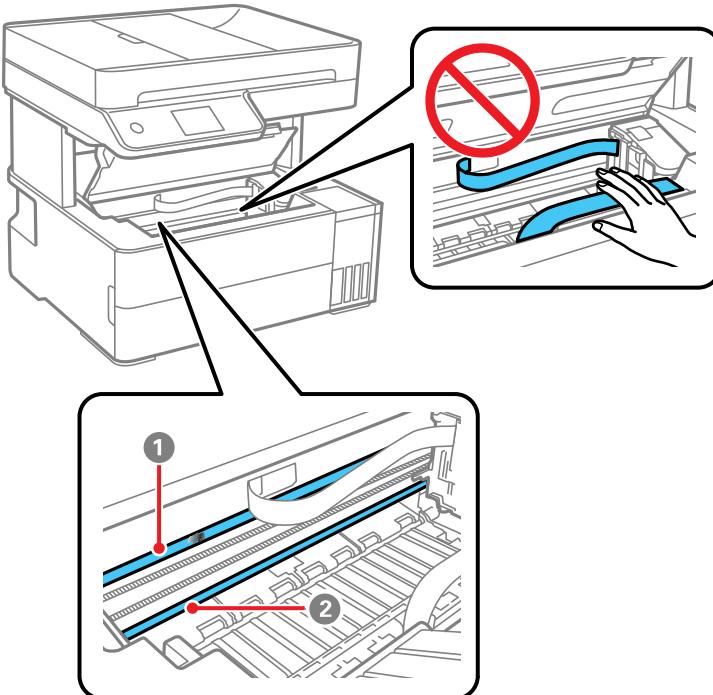
- Several cotton swabs
- $\frac{1}{4}$  cup (60 ml) water containing 2 to 3 drops of mild dish detergent
- A small flashlight

**Caution:** Do not use any other liquid to clean the print head path or you may damage your product.

1. Turn off the product.
2. Unplug the power cable.
3. Disconnect any connected cables.
4. Lift up the printer cover until it clicks into place.



- Using the flashlight, check the translucent film shown here for ink smears.

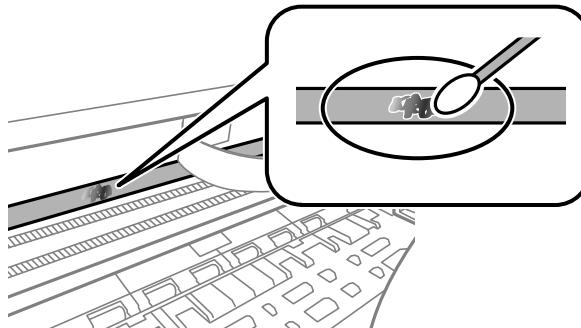


1 Translucent film

2 Print head rail

**Caution:** Do not touch the print head rail or wipe the grease off of it. You may not be able to print. Do not touch the white flat cable or ink tubes.

6. Moisten a cotton swab with the water and detergent mixture, and squeeze out any excess moisture. Lightly wipe the ink off the translucent film.



**Caution:** Do not press too hard on the film or you may dislocate the anchor springs and damage your product.

7. Use a new, dry cotton swab to dry the translucent film. Do not leave any cotton fibers on the film.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 as necessary to clean all ink smears.
9. When the translucent film is dry, close the printer cover.
10. Reconnect any disconnected cables, plug in the power cord, and turn on the product.

**Parent topic:** [Adjusting Print Quality](#)

## Checking the Number of Sheets Fed

You can view an option that displays the number of sheets of paper that have fed through the product.

**Note:** You can also view the number of sheets of paper fed through the product by printing a nozzle check.

[Checking the Number of Sheets on the LCD Screen](#)

[Checking the Sheet Counter - Windows](#)

[Checking the Sheet Counter - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Adjusting Print Quality](#)

## Checking the Number of Sheets on the LCD Screen

You can view the number of sheets of paper that have fed through the product on the LCD screen.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings > Print Counter** to view the number of prints (**In Total, B&W and Color**).

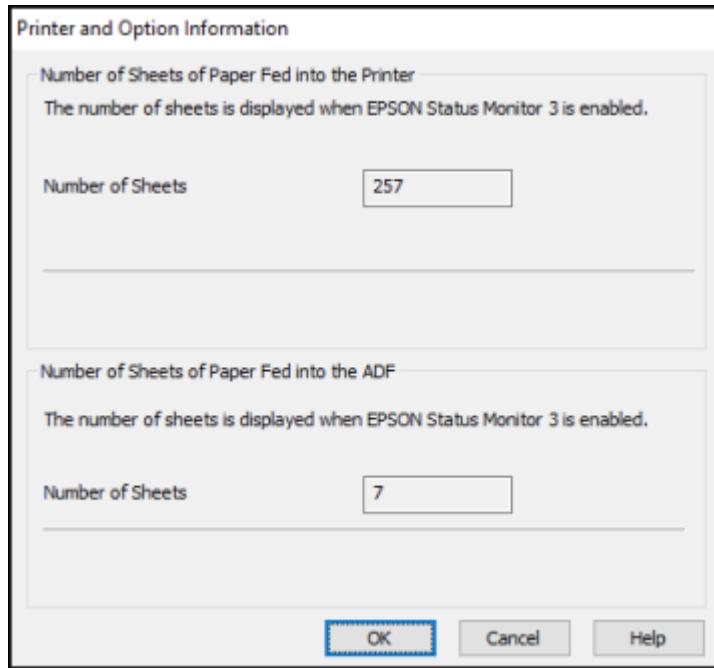
Parent topic: [Checking the Number of Sheets Fed](#)

## Checking the Sheet Counter - Windows

You can check the number of sheets of paper that have fed through the product by checking the sheet counter.

1. Access the Windows Desktop and right-click the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or click the up arrow and right-click .
2. Select **Printer Settings**.
3. Click the **Maintenance** tab.
4. Select **Printer and Option Information**.

You see this window:



5. After checking the number of sheets fed into the printer, click **OK** to close the window.

**Note:** The number of sheets is displayed only when Epson Status Monitor 3 is enabled.

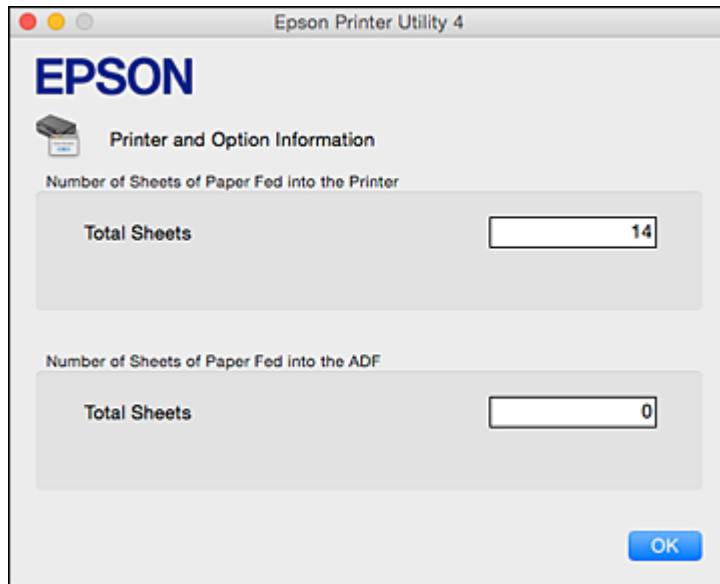
**Parent topic:** [Checking the Number of Sheets Fed](#)

## Checking the Sheet Counter - Mac

You can check the number of sheets of paper that have fed through the product by checking the sheet counter.

1. In the Apple menu or the Dock, select **System Preferences**. Select **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners**, select your product, and select **Options & Supplies**. Select **Utility** and select **Open Printer Utility**.
2. Select **Printer and Option Information**.

You see this window:



3. After checking the number of sheets fed into the printer, click **OK** to close the window.

**Parent topic:** [Checking the Number of Sheets Fed](#)

---

# Cleaning and Transporting Your Product

See these sections if you need to clean or transport your product.

[Cleaning Your Product](#)

[Cleaning the Paper Rollers](#)

[Transporting Your Product](#)

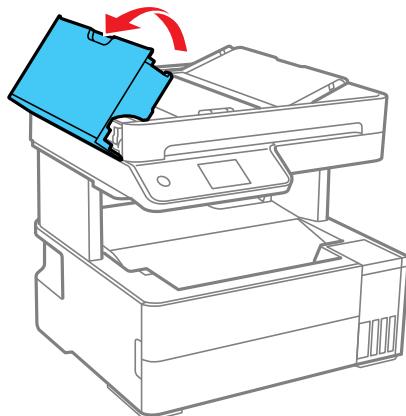
## Cleaning Your Product

To keep your product working at its best, you should clean it several times a year.

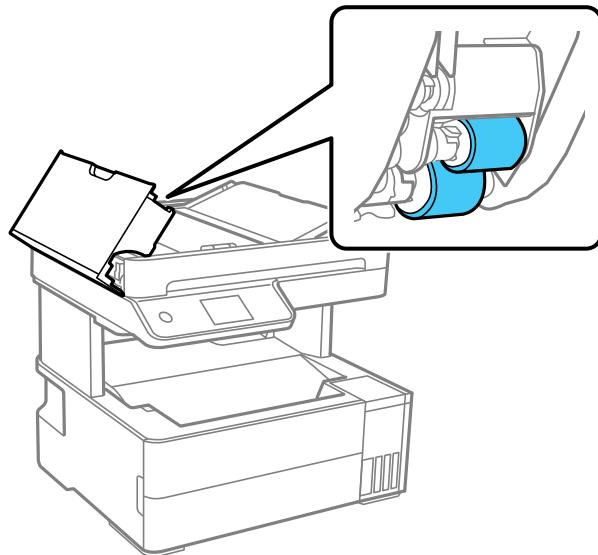
Close the output tray and front cover when you are not using the product to protect it from dust.

**Caution:** Do not use a hard brush, alcohol, or paint thinner to clean the product or you may damage it. Do not use oil or other lubricants inside the product or let water get inside it.

1. Turn off the product.
2. Unplug the power cable.
3. Disconnect any connected cables.
4. Remove all the paper.
5. Open the ADF cover.



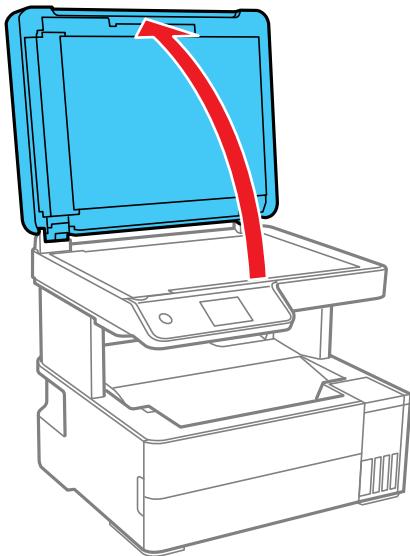
6. Use a soft, moist, lint-free cloth (microfiber is recommended) to clean the rollers and the interior of the ADF.



**Caution:** Do not use a dry cloth to clean the rollers.

7. Close the ADF cover.

8. Open the document cover.

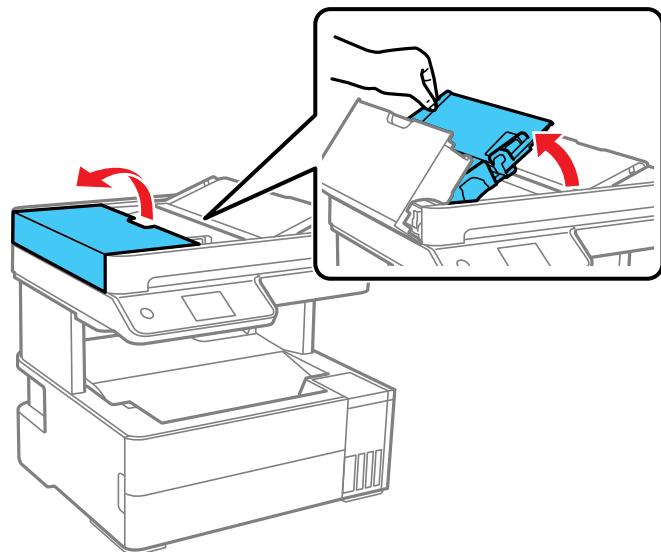


9. Clean the scanner glass with a soft, lint-free cloth (microfiber is recommended), moistened with a little glass cleaner.

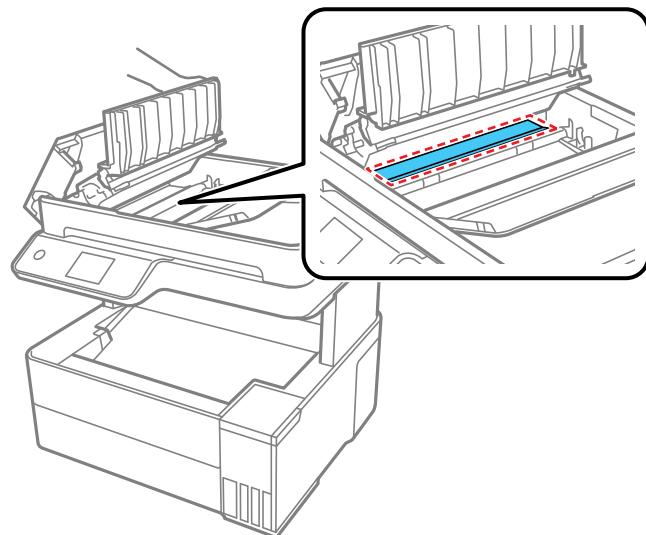
**Caution:** Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the glass and do not press the glass surface with any force.

10. Close the document cover.

11. Open the ADF cover and raise the ADF input tray.



12. Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth (microfiber is recommended) to clean the transparent part on the underside of the ADF input tray.



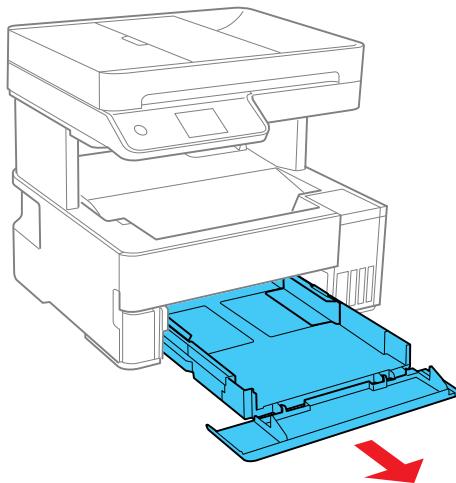
13. Close the ADF input tray.
14. Clean the outer case and control panel with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use liquid or chemical cleansers.

**Parent topic:** [Cleaning and Transporting Your Product](#)

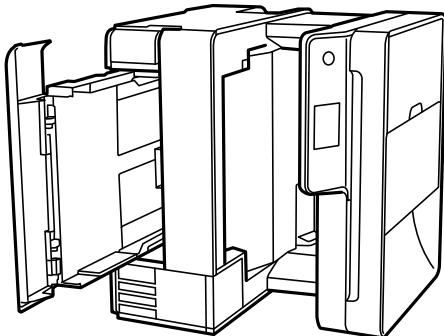
## Cleaning the Paper Rollers

If you encounter repeated paper feed issues from the cassette, clean the paper rollers inside the product.

1. Turn off the product.
2. Unplug the power cable.
3. Disconnect any connected cables.
4. Make sure the ink tank caps are securely closed.
5. Close the document cover, the ADF cover, and the printer cover.
6. Slide out the paper cassette and remove the paper.

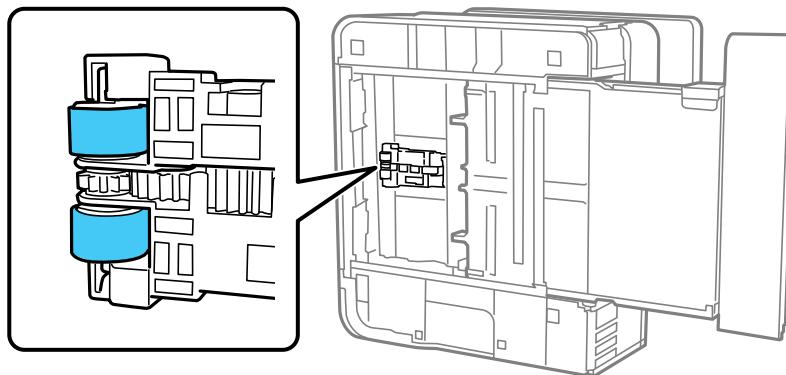


7. Place the product on its side with the ink tank on the bottom.



**Warning:** Be careful not to trap your fingers under the product.

8. Use a soft, moist cloth to clean the paper rollers, as shown. Rotate the rollers to clean them thoroughly.



9. Return the product to its normal position.

**Caution:** Do not leave the product on its side for an extended period of time.

10. Replace the paper, slide in the paper cassette, and connect the power cord and any interface cables.

## Transporting Your Product

If you need to store your product or transport it some distance, prepare it for transportation as described here.

**Caution:** During transportation and storage, follow these guidelines:

- Avoid tilting the product, placing it vertically, or turning it upside down; otherwise ink may leak.



- Do not lift the product by gripping the scanner unit. Make sure you lift using the handholds on the bottom of the product.

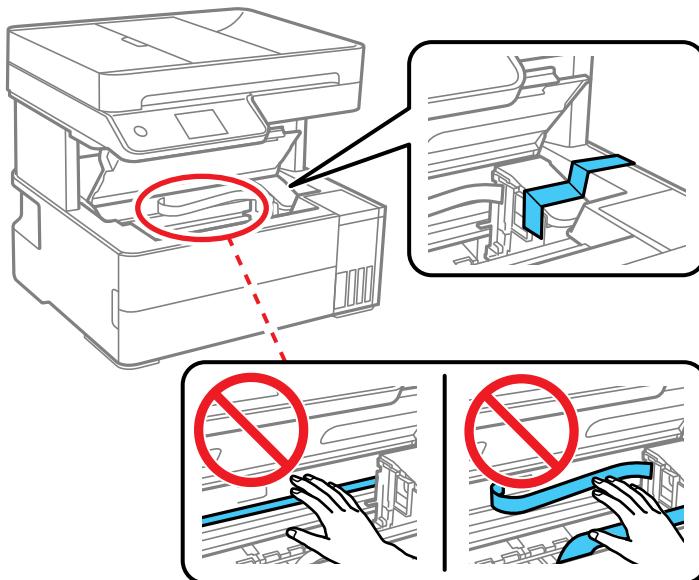


- When storing or transporting an ink bottle after removing its seal, do not tilt the bottle and do not subject it to impacts or temperature changes. Otherwise, ink may leak even if the cap on the ink bottle is tightened securely. Be sure to keep the ink bottle upright when tightening the cap, and take measures to prevent ink from leaking when transporting the ink bottles.
- Do not put opened ink bottles in the box with the product.
- Do not carry the product by its control panel; this may damage the product.

**Note:** Before storing your product for a long period, replace low, expended, or expired ink to help prevent the print head from drying out. Store your product in a cool, dry place.

1. Turn off the product.
2. Open the printer cover and check to see if the print head is in the far right position (the home position). If not, turn on the product, wait for the print head to move to the far right, then turn the product off again.

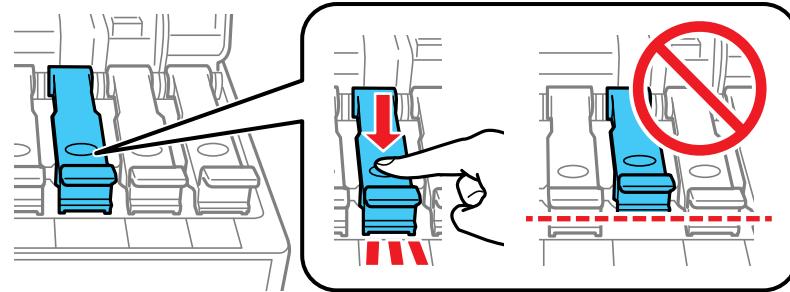
3. Secure the print head to the case with tape.



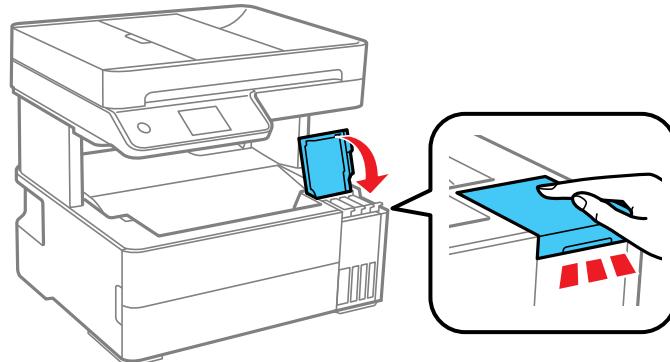
**Caution:** Do not place tape on the white flat cable or ink tubes inside the product; otherwise, you may damage your product.

4. Close the printer cover.
5. Remove all the paper from the product.
6. Unplug the power cable.
7. Disconnect any connected cables.

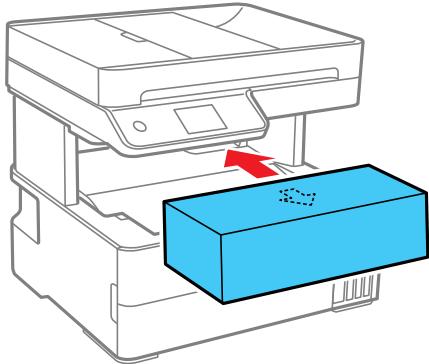
8. Open the ink tank cover and make sure that the ink tank caps are installed securely.



9. Close the ink tank cover until it clicks into place.



10. Insert the accessory box that came with the printer with the flap facing the front as shown below.



11. Place the product in a plastic bag.
12. Place the product in its original packaging materials, if possible, or use equivalent cushioning around the product.

Be sure to remove the tape from the print head before turning on your product. If print quality has declined when you print again, clean and align the print head.

**Parent topic:** [Cleaning and Transporting Your Product](#)

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Alignment](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

---

# Solving Problems

Check these sections for solutions to problems you may have using your product.

[Checking for Software Updates](#)

[Product Status Messages](#)

[Message Appears Prompting You to Reset Ink Levels](#)

[Running a Product Check](#)

[Resetting Control Panel Defaults](#)

[Solving Setup Problems](#)

[Solving Network Problems](#)

[Solving Copying Problems](#)

[Solving Paper Problems](#)

[Solving Problems Printing from a Computer](#)

[Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

[Solving Print Quality Problems](#)

[Solving Scanning Problems](#)

[Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

[Solving Faxing Problems](#)

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

[Where to Get Help](#)

## Checking for Software Updates

It's a good idea to check Epson's support website occasionally for free updates to your product software. Visit [epson.com/support](http://epson.com/support) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](http://epson.ca/support) (Canada) and select your product.

- **Windows:** Your printer software automatically checks for updates. You can also manually update the software by selecting **Software Update** here:

- Accessing the Windows Desktop and right-clicking the  icon for your product in the right side of the Windows taskbar, or clicking the up arrow and right-clicking .
- On the **Maintenance** tab in the printer settings window

You can also update the software by selecting **EPSON Software Updater** in the **EPSON** or **Epson Software** program group, accessible by the **Start** button, or on the **Start** or **Apps** screens, depending on your version of Windows.

- **OS X:** You can manually update the software by opening the **Applications > Epson Software** folder and selecting **EPSON Software Updater**.
- **macOS 10.12.x, 10.13.x, 10.14.x, 10.15.x, or 11.x:** You can manually update the software by opening the **App Store**, selecting **Updates**, searching for a software update option for Epson Software, and selecting **Update**.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

## Product Status Messages

You can often diagnose problems with your product by checking the messages on its LCD screen.

LCD screen message	Condition/solution
Printer error. Turn on the printer again. See your documentation for details.	A printer error has occurred. Turn the product off and then back on again. If the error continues, check for a paper jam. If there is no paper jam, contact Epson for support.
Paper out in XX.	Load paper in the cassette or rear paper feed slot.
Paper Setup Auto Display is set to Off. Some features may not be available. For details, see your documentation.	The <b>Paper Setup Auto Display</b> option is disabled. You must enable <b>Paper Setup Auto Display</b> to use AirPrint.
No dial tone is detected.	Make sure the phone cable is connected correctly and the phone line works. If you connected the product to a PBX (Private Branch Exchange) phone line or Terminal Adapter, change the <b>Line Type</b> setting to <b>PBX</b> . If you still cannot send a fax, turn off the <b>Dial Tone Detection</b> setting. (Turning off the Dial Tone Detection setting may cause the product to drop the first digit of a fax number.)
The combination of IP address and the subnet mask is invalid. See your documentation for more details.	There is a problem with the network connection to your product. Check the solutions in this guide.
To use cloud services, update the root certificate from the Epson Web Config utility.	Access your product's built-in Web Config utility and update the root certificate for your product.

LCD screen message	Condition/solution
Check that the printer driver is installed on the computer and that the port settings for the printer are correct.	Make sure the printer port is selected correctly on the <b>Port</b> tab of the Printer Properties screen (Windows) or the <b>System Properties &gt; USB</b> list (Mac). Select USBXXX for a USB connection or <b>EpsonNet Print Port</b> for a network connection.
Check that the printer driver is installed on the computer and that the USB port settings for the printer are correct.	
Recovery Mode	A firmware update has failed. Connect your product using a USB cable and try updating the firmware again. If you still receive this error message, contact Epson for support.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

**Related references**

[Where to Get Help](#)

[Paper Source Settings Options](#)

**Related tasks**

[Connecting a Telephone or Answering Machine](#)

[Checking for Software Updates](#)

[Accessing the Web Config Utility](#)

**Related topics**

[Solving Paper Problems](#)

[Loading Paper](#)

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Message Appears Prompting You to Reset Ink Levels

If you see a message on the LCD screen prompting you to reset the ink levels, do the following:

1. Refill all of the ink tanks or the ink tanks indicated on the LCD screen all the way to the top.

**Note:** Depending on the operating conditions, you may see the ink reset message even when there is still ink in the tanks.

2. Select the colors that you refilled on the LCD screen.
3. Follow the instructions on the LCD screen to reset the ink levels.

**Note:** The product has a low ink alert system. The accuracy of this system depends on the user refilling the ink tanks correctly. The product cannot directly measure the ink levels in the tanks; instead it estimates the amount of ink remaining by internally monitoring ink usage. The low ink alert system may generate inaccurate messages if the ink tanks are not refilled according to these instructions.

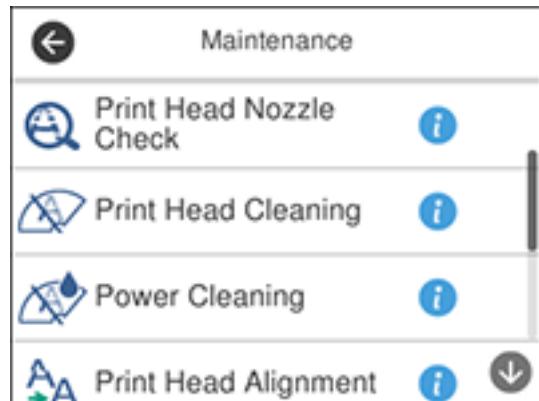
As a precaution, perform regular visual inspections of the ink tanks to ensure ink levels do not fall below the lower line. Continued use of the product when the ink level is below the lower line on the tank could damage the product.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

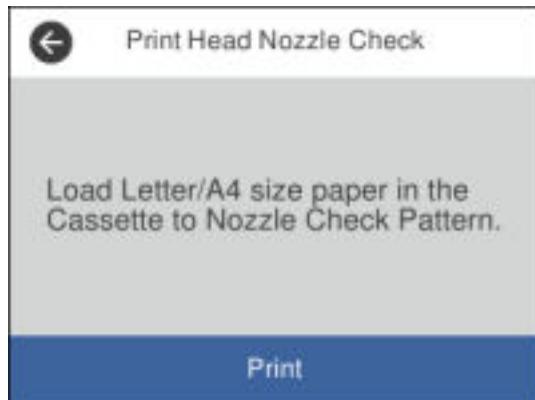
## Running a Product Check

Running a product check helps you determine if your product is operating properly.

1. Disconnect any interface cables connected to your product.
2. Load plain paper in the product.
3. Press the  home button, if necessary.
4. Select **Maintenance**.



5. Select **Print Head Nozzle Check**.



6. Select **Print**.

The nozzle check pattern is printed.

7. Do one of the following, depending on the results of the product check:

- If the page prints and the nozzle check pattern is complete, the product is operating properly. Any operation problem you may have could be caused by your computer, cable, software, or selected settings. Check the other solutions in this book or try uninstalling and reinstalling your printer software.
- If the page prints but the nozzle check pattern has gaps, clean or align the print head.
- If the page does not print, the product may have a problem. Check the other solutions in this manual. If they do not work, contact Epson.

**Parent topic:** Solving Problems

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Alignment](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

**Related references**

[Where to Get Help](#)

## Resetting Control Panel Defaults

If you have a problem with settings on the product control panel, you can reset them to their factory defaults. You can choose which settings to reset or reset them all.

1. Press the  home button, if necessary.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Restore Default Settings**.



4. Select one of these options:
  - **Network Settings**: Resets all network settings.
  - **Copy Settings**: Resets all copy settings.
  - **Scan Settings**: Resets all scan settings.
  - **Fax Settings**: Resets all fax settings (ET-5170/ET-5180).
  - **Clear All Data and Settings**: Resets all control panel settings and deletes any stored information.  
You see a confirmation screen.
5. Select **Yes** to reset the selected settings. (Select **No** if you want to cancel the operation.)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

## Solving Setup Problems

Check these sections if you have problems while setting up your product.

[Product Does Not Turn On or Off](#)

[Noise After Filling the Ink](#)

[Software Installation Problems](#)

[Parent topic: Solving Problems](#)

## Product Does Not Turn On or Off

If you cannot turn the product on or off, try these solutions:

- If you cannot turn on your product, make sure the power cord is securely connected and hold down the power button a little longer.
- If you cannot turn off your product, hold down the power button a little longer. If you still cannot turn off your product, unplug the power cord, plug the power cord back in, then turn your product on and off again using the power button.

[Parent topic: Solving Setup Problems](#)

## Noise After Filling the Ink

If you hear noises from your product after filling the ink tanks with ink, check these explanations:

- The first time you fill the tanks with ink, the product must charge its print head. Wait until charging finishes before you turn off the product, or it may charge improperly and use excess ink the next time you turn it on. Your product is finished charging the print head when the  power light stops flashing.
- If the product's print head stops moving or making noise, and the charging process has not finished after approximately 20 minutes, turn off your product. Turn it back on and check to see if charging is still in progress. If it is still in progress, contact Epson for help.

[Parent topic: Solving Setup Problems](#)

## Software Installation Problems

If you have problems while installing your product software, try these solutions:

- Make sure your product is turned on and any necessary cables are securely connected at both ends. If you still have problems installing software, disconnect the cable and carefully follow the instructions on the *Start Here* sheet. Also make sure your system meets the requirements for your operating system.
- Close any other programs, including screen savers and virus protection software, and install your product software again.
- In Windows, make sure your product is selected as the default printer and the correct port is shown in the printer properties.

- If you see any error message or your software does not install correctly in Windows, you may not have software installation privileges. Contact your system administrator.
- If you are printing over a network, make sure your product is set up properly on the network.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Setup Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

**Related references**

[Windows System Requirements](#)

[Mac System Requirements](#)

## Solving Network Problems

Check these solutions if you have problems setting up or using your product on a network.

**Note:** Breakdown or repair of this product may cause loss of fax and network data and settings. Epson is not responsible for backing up or recovering data and settings during or after the warranty period. We recommend that you make your own backup or print out your fax and network data and settings.

[Product Cannot Connect to a Wireless Router or Access Point](#)

[Network Software Cannot Find Product on a Network](#)

[Product Does Not Appear in Mac Printer Window](#)

[Wireless Network Connection is Unstable on a Mac](#)

[Wired Network Connection Becomes Unstable](#)

[Cannot Print Over a Network](#)

[Cannot Scan Over a Network](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

### Product Cannot Connect to a Wireless Router or Access Point

If your product has trouble finding or connecting to a wireless router or access point, try these solutions:

- If you are connecting the product via Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) and the Wi-Fi icon on your product's LCD screen is not lit or does not appear, make sure you select one of the WPS options from the product control panel within 2 minutes of pressing the WPS button on your router.
- Make sure to place your product within contact range of your router or access point. Avoid placing your product near a microwave oven, cordless phone, or large metal object, such as a filing cabinet.

- Verify that your router or access point is operating correctly by connecting to it from your computer or another device.
- Print a network connection report and check the codes and messages on the report to help determine the cause of the problem.
- You may need to disable the firewall and any anti-virus software on your wireless router or access point.
- Try restarting your router following the instructions in your router documentation.

**Note:** If you are reading these instructions online, you will lose your Internet connection when you restart your router.

- Check to see if access restrictions, such as MAC address filtering, are set on the router or access point. If access restrictions are set, add your product's MAC address to your router's address list. To obtain your product's MAC address, print a network status sheet. Then follow the instructions in your router or access point documentation to add the address to the list.
- If your router or access point does not broadcast its network name (SSID), follow the instructions that came with your product to enter your wireless network name manually.
- If your router or access point has security enabled, determine the kind of security it is using and any required password or passphrase for connection. Then make sure to enter the exact WEP key or WPA passphrase correctly.
- Check if your computer is restricting the available wireless channels. If so, verify that your wireless access point is using one of the usable channels and change to a usable channel, if necessary.
- If you cannot connect your product to a device using Wi-Fi Direct, you may have exceeded the maximum number of devices connected to your product (8). Print a network status sheet or access Web Config on the browser for your device and check the number of connected devices. If 8 devices are already connected, disconnect a device by deleting the product's SSID from the Wi-Fi screen of that device. If fewer than 8 devices are connected, check the accuracy of your other network settings, move your device closer to your product, and try connecting again.
- If you are using a Wi-Fi Direct connection that suddenly disconnects, the Wi-Fi direct password on your device may have been changed. If necessary, delete the existing **DIRECT-xxxxxxxx** connection settings from your device and enter a new password. See your device documentation for instructions.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Network Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Wi-Fi Direct Mode Setup](#)

## Related tasks

[Selecting Wireless Network Settings from the Control Panel](#)

[Printing a Network Status Sheet](#)

[Printing a Network Connection Report](#)

[Disabling Wi-Fi Features](#)

## Related topics

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

# Network Software Cannot Find Product on a Network

If EpsonNet Setup cannot find your product on a network, try these solutions:

- Make sure your product is turned on and connected to your network. Verify the connection using your product control panel.
- Check if your network name (SSID) contains non-ASCII characters. Your product cannot display non-ASCII characters.
- Print a network connection report and check the codes and messages on the report to help determine the cause of the problem.
- Make sure your product is not connected to a guest network.
- If necessary, reinstall your product software and try running EpsonNet Setup again:
  1. Reset your product's network settings to their factory defaults.
  2. **Windows only:** Uninstall your product software.
  3. Restart your router following the instructions in your router documentation.

**Note:** If you are reading these instructions online, you will lose your Internet connection when you restart your router, so note the next step before restarting it.

- 4. Download your product software from the Epson website using the instructions on the *Start Here* sheet.
- If you have replaced your router, reinstall your product software to connect to the new router.

**Note:** If you are using a 5 GHz wireless router, set the router to operate in dual band (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz) mode. If your router uses a single network name (SSID) for both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz band, give each band its own network name (SSID) instead, such as Home Network 2.4 GHz and Home Network 5 GHz. See your router documentation or contact your internet service provider for instructions.

- Check to see if your wireless router or access point has an enabled Privacy Separator function that is preventing detection of your device over the network. See your router or access point documentation for instructions on disabling the Privacy Separator function.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Network Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

[Wi-Fi Direct Mode Setup](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Product Does Not Appear in Mac Printer Window

If your product does not appear in the Mac printer window, try these solutions:

- Turn your product off, wait 30 seconds, then turn it back on again.
- If you are connecting the product via Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) and the Wi-Fi icon does not appear on your product's LCD screen, make sure you select one of the WPS options from the product control panel within 2 minutes of pressing the WPS button on your router.
- If you are connecting the product wirelessly via EpsonNet Setup and the Wi-Fi icon does not appear on your LCD screen, make sure your product software was installed correctly. If necessary, reinstall your software.

**Note:** If you are using a 5 GHz wireless router, set the router to operate in dual band (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz) mode. If your router uses a single network name (SSID) for both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz band, give each band its own network name (SSID) instead, such as Home Network 2.4 GHz and Home Network 5 GHz. See your router documentation or contact your internet service provider for instructions.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Network Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

## Wireless Network Connection is Unstable on a Mac

If you connected a device to a USB 3.0 port on your Mac, you may experience wireless network interference between your product and your Mac.

If you cannot connect to your product over the wireless network or the connection becomes unstable, move the device connected to your Mac USB 3.0 port further away from your Mac.

[Parent topic: Solving Network Problems](#)

## Wired Network Connection Becomes Unstable

When you connect the product to a wired network using a router or access point that supports IEEE 802.3az (Energy Efficient Ethernet), the connection may become unstable, you may be unable to connect to the product, and the communication speed may become slow. If you experience any of these issues, follow the steps below to disable IEEE 802.3az and then connect your product again.

1. Disconnect the Ethernet cables connected to the computer and your product.
2. Disable IEEE 802.3az for the computer's network adapter if it is enabled (check your operating system's Ethernet connection settings).
3. Connect the computer and your product directly with an Ethernet cable.
4. Print a network connection report from your product.
5. On the computer, open a web browser and enter your product's IP address from the network connection report.
6. Select **Advanced Settings > Network Settings > Wired LAN**.
7. Select **OFF** for IEEE 802.3az. and click **Next**.
8. Click **OK** and remove the Ethernet cable connecting the computer and your product.
9. If you disabled IEEE 802.3az for your computer's network adapter, enable it.
10. Reconnect the Ethernet cables from the router or access point to your computer and product.

If problems still occur, other devices on the network may be causing them.

[Parent topic: Solving Network Problems](#)

### Related tasks

[Printing a Network Connection Report](#)

## Cannot Print Over a Network

If you cannot print over a network, try these solutions:

- Make sure that your product is turned on.
- Make sure you install your product's network software as described in your product documentation.
- Print a network status sheet and verify that the network settings are correct. If the network status is **Disconnected**, check any cable connections and turn your product off and then on again.

- Print a network connection report and check the codes and messages on the report to help determine the cause of the problem.
- If you are using TCP/IP, make sure the product's IP address is set correctly for your network. If your network does not assign IP addresses using DHCP, set the IP address manually.
- Make sure your computer and product are both using the same wireless network.
- If network printing is slow, print a network status sheet and check the signal strength. If it is poor, place your product closer to your router or access point. Avoid placing your product near a microwave oven, cordless phone, or large metal object, such as a filing cabinet.

**Note:** If you are using a 5 GHz wireless router, set the router to operate in dual band (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz) mode. If your router uses a single network name (SSID) for both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz band, give each band its own network name (SSID) instead, such as Home Network 2.4 GHz and Home Network 5 GHz. See your router documentation or contact your internet service provider for instructions.

- Try restarting your router following the instructions in your router documentation.

**Note:** If you are reading these instructions online, you will lose your Internet connection when you restart your router.

- Check if there are any paused print jobs.
- Make sure your printer is selected as the default printer.
- Check if the selected printer port is correct.
- Check to see if your wireless router or access point has an enabled Privacy Separator function that is preventing printing from a device over the network. See your router or access point documentation for instructions on disabling the Privacy Separator function.
- If you are connecting the product via Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) and the Wi-Fi icon does not appear on your product's LCD screen, make sure you select one of the WPS options from the product control panel within 2 minutes of pressing the WPS button on your router.
- Check your wired LAN router or access point to see if the LED for the port to which your product is connected is on or flashing. If the link LED is off, try the following:
  - Make sure the Ethernet cable is securely connected to your product and to your router, access point, switch, or hub.
  - Try connecting your product to a different port or a different router, access point, switch, or hub.
  - Try connecting with a different Ethernet cable.

- Try printing to your product from another computer on the network.

**Note:** If you are using a 5 GHz wireless router, set the router to operate in dual band (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz) mode. If your router uses a single network name (SSID) for both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz band, give each band its own network name (SSID) instead, such as Home Network 2.4 GHz and Home Network 5 GHz. See your router documentation or contact your internet service provider for instructions.

- If you are connecting the product via EpsonNet Setup and the Wi-Fi icon does not appear on the LCD screen, make sure your product software was installed correctly. If necessary, reinstall your software.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Network Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

**Related references**

[Cannot Scan Over a Network](#)

**Related tasks**

[Printing a Network Status Sheet](#)

**Related topics**

[Wi-Fi or Wired Networking](#)

## Cannot Scan Over a Network

If you cannot scan over a network, try these solutions:

- Make sure the computer and product are connected to the same network (or network segment/VLAN).
- Move the product and computer or smart device closer to the router or access point.
- If network communication was interrupted while starting Epson Scan 2, exit Epson Scan 2, wait a few seconds, and restart it. If Epson Scan 2 cannot restart, turn off your product, turn it back on, and try restarting Epson Scan 2 again.
- If you are scanning a large original at a high resolution, a network communication error may occur. Try scanning again at a lower resolution.
- Check the network connection setting in the Epson Scan 2 Utility.
- Check the scanner setting and reset the connection if necessary using Epson Scan 2 Utility:

**Windows 10:** Click  and select **EPSON > Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure your product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

**Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen, select **EPSON**, and select **Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure your product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

**Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start > All Programs or Programs > EPSON > Epson Scan 2 > Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure your product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

**Mac:** Open the **Applications** folder, click **Epson Software**, and click **Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure your product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

- You may need to disable the firewall and any anti-virus software on your wireless router or access point.
- If you see the message "Network product is not available: currently being used by user", there may be a communication error between the product and computer. Restart the product.
- If the Firewall function is active, the product may not be discovered by the Epson Scan 2 Utility. Open the Epson Scan 2 Utility, enter the IP address for your product, and click **Add**.
- If the product and computer cannot communicate and are connected to the same network (or network segment/VLAN), the privacy separator on your router must be disabled. Follow the instructions in your router documentation to disable the privacy separator.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Network Problems](#)

#### **Related tasks**

[Starting a Scan Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Starting a Scan from a Smartphone or Tablet](#)

[Scanning a Document in Epson ScanSmart](#)

[Starting a Scan Using the Epson Scan 2 Icon](#)

[Starting a Scan from a Scanning Program](#)

## **Solving Copying Problems**

Check these solutions if you have problems copying with your product.

[Product Makes Noise, But Nothing Copies](#)

[Product Makes Noise When It Sits for a While](#)

[Copies Have Incorrect or Faint Colors](#)

[Position, Size, or Margins of Copies are Incorrect](#)

[Originals Do Not Feed From the Automatic Document Feeder](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

## **Product Makes Noise, But Nothing Copies**

If your product makes a noise, but nothing copies, try these solutions:

- Run a nozzle check to see if any of the print head nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- If the nozzle check page does not print, but the product's power is on, make sure your product software is installed correctly.
- Make sure your product is level (not tilted).

**Parent topic:** [Solving Copying Problems](#)

### **Related concepts**

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

## **Product Makes Noise When It Sits for a While**

Your product is performing routine maintenance. This is normal.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Copying Problems](#)

## **Copies Have Incorrect or Faint Colors**

If your copies have incorrect, uneven, smeared, or faint colors, try these solutions:

- Run a print head nozzle check to see if any of the nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- Do not press too hard on the original when you copy from the scanner glass.
- Clean the scanner glass with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth or use a small amount of glass cleaner on the cloth, if necessary. Paper towels are not recommended.

**Caution:** Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the scanner glass.

- Clean the ADF.
- Wipe any dirt or dust off of your originals.
- If the colors are smeared, try lowering the copy density setting on the LCD screen.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Copying Problems](#)

## **Position, Size, or Margins of Copies are Incorrect**

If the position, size, or margins of your copies are incorrect, try these solutions:

- When placing originals in the ADF, make sure the edge guides are against the edges of the paper.
- When placing originals on the scanner glass, make sure the original is placed correctly for scanning. Align the corner of the original with the corner indicated by the symbol on the scanner glass. If necessary, move the original away from the edges of the scanner glass slightly.
- Clean the scanner glass and ADF.
- Make sure the paper is loaded in the correct direction.
- Select the appropriate **Original Size** in the copy settings on the LCD screen.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Copying Problems](#)

## **Originals Do Not Feed From the Automatic Document Feeder**

If your originals do not feed when placed in the ADF, try these solutions:

- Make sure the size, weight, and number of your originals are supported by the ADF.
- Make sure the originals are loaded correctly.
- Make sure the document is not curled or creased.
- Try cleaning the inside of the ADF.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Copying Problems](#)

## **Solving Paper Problems**

Check these sections if you have problems using paper with your product.

[Paper Feeding Problems](#)

[Paper Jam Problems in the Front of the Product](#)

[Paper Jam Problems Inside the Product](#)

[Paper Jam Problems in the Rear Cover](#)

[Paper Jams in the Automatic Document Feeder](#)

[Paper Ejection Problems](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

## Paper Feeding Problems

If you have problems feeding paper, try these solutions:

- If paper does not feed for printing, remove it from the rear feed slot or cassette. Reload it, then adjust the edge guides. Make sure the paper stack is not above the tab on the edge guides inside the cassette. Make sure to load only one sheet at a time in the rear feed slot.
- Place the product on a flat surface and operate it in the recommended environmental conditions.
- Be sure to insert the paper cassette all the way into your product.
- If multiple pages feed at once, remove the paper, fan the edges to separate the sheets, and reload it.
- Do not load more than the recommended number of sheets.
- Make sure your paper meets the specifications for your product.
- If paper jams when you print on both sides of the paper, try loading fewer sheets.
- Make sure the paper size and paper type settings are correct for the paper source.
- Run the paper guide cleaning utility to clean the paper roller.
- Clean the roller inside the printer to remove any dust on the paper path.
- For best results, follow these guidelines:
  - Use new, smooth, high-quality paper that is not curled, creased, old, too thin, or too thick.
  - Load paper in the cassette printable side down.
  - Follow any special loading instructions that came with the paper.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Paper Problems](#)

### Related references

[Paper Jam Problems Inside the Product](#)

[Paper Specifications](#)

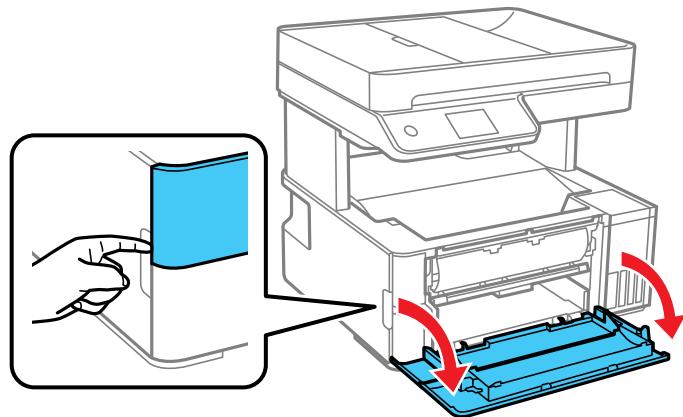
[Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\) Specifications](#)

## Paper Jam Problems in the Front of the Product

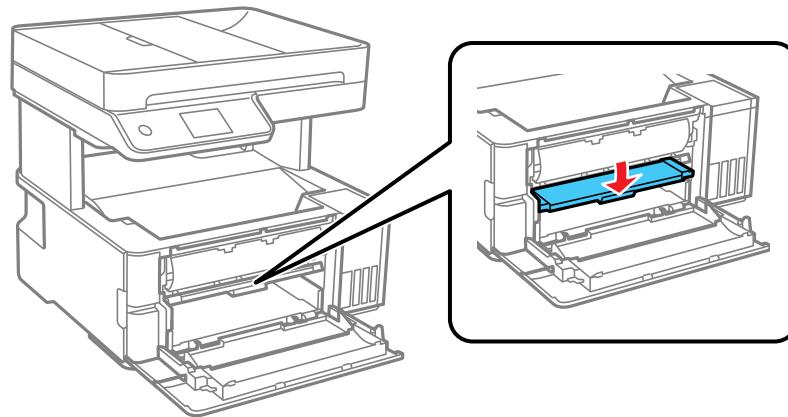
If you see a message that paper has jammed in the front of the product, follow the steps here.

1. Cancel the print job, if necessary.

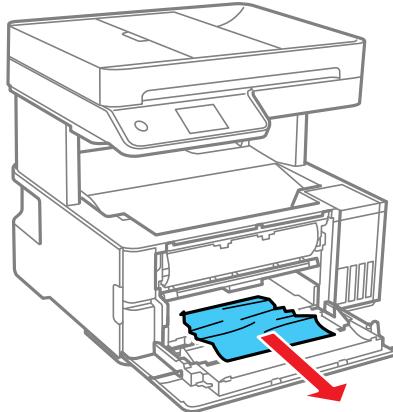
2. Open the front cover.



3. Lower the output selector.



4. Remove any jammed paper from the front of the product.



5. Raise the output selector.
6. Close the front cover until it clicks into place.
7. Follow the prompts on the LCD screen to clear any error messages. If you still see a paper jam message, check the other paper jam solutions.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Paper Problems](#)

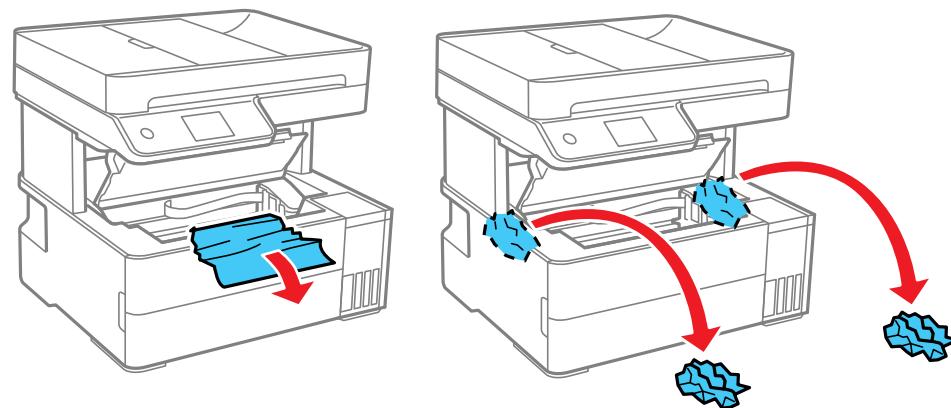
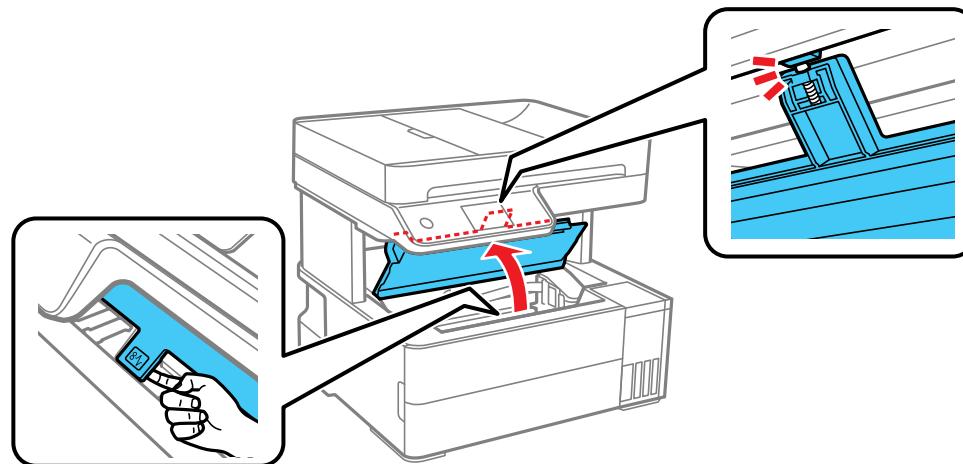
## Paper Jam Problems Inside the Product

If you see a message that paper has jammed inside the product, follow the steps here.

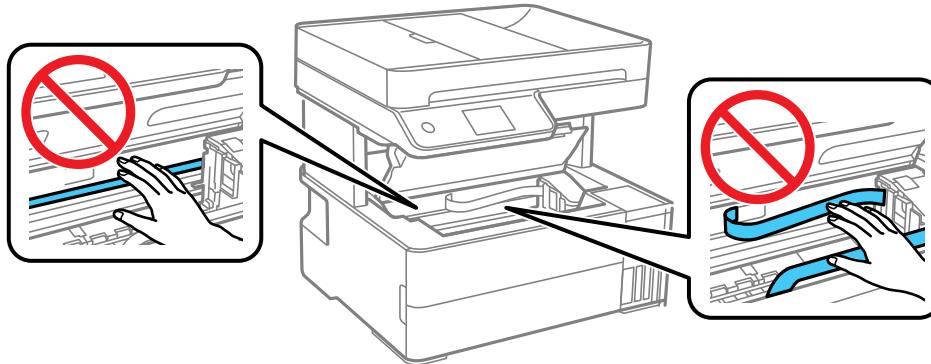
**Warning:** Never touch the buttons on the control panel while your hand is inside the product. If the product starts operating, it may cause an injury. Do not touch any protruding parts inside the product.

1. Cancel the print job, if necessary.

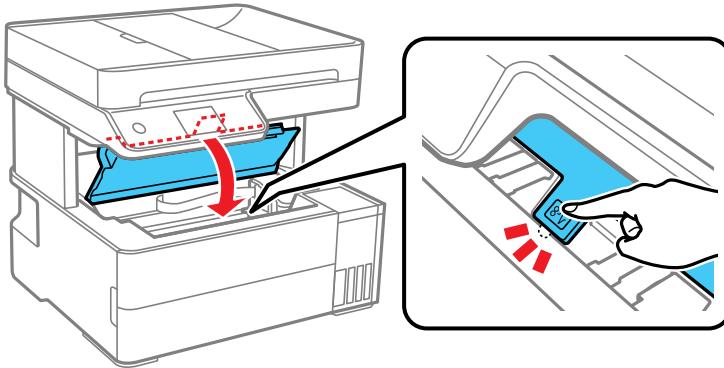
2. Lift the printer cover until it clicks into place and remove any jammed paper inside.



**Caution:** Do not touch the flat white cable or translucent film inside the printer.



3. Close the printer cover until it clicks into place.



4. Follow the prompts on the LCD screen to clear any error messages. If you still see a paper jam message, check the other paper jam solutions.

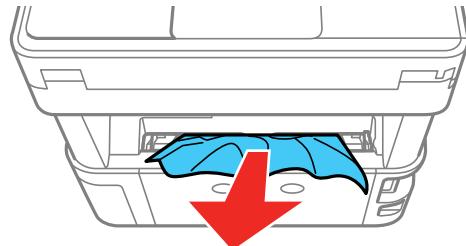
**Parent topic:** [Solving Paper Problems](#)

## Paper Jam Problems in the Rear Cover

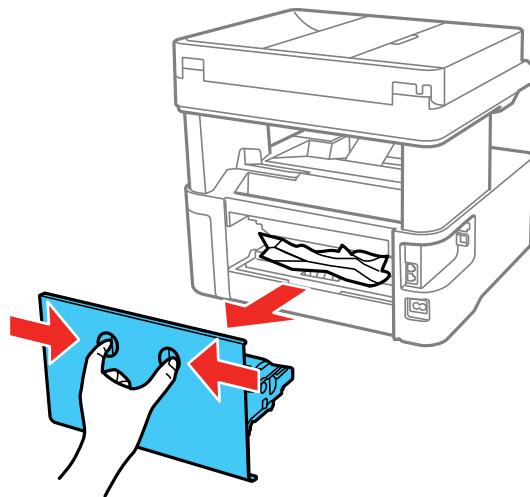
If you see a message that paper has jammed in the rear cover, follow the steps here.

1. Cancel the print job, if necessary.

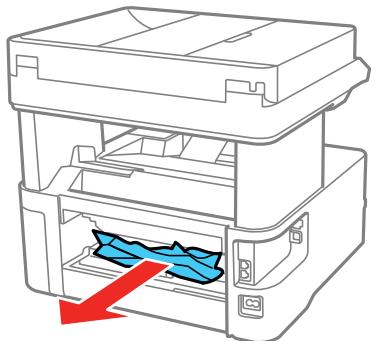
2. Remove any jammed paper from the rear feed slot, if necessary.



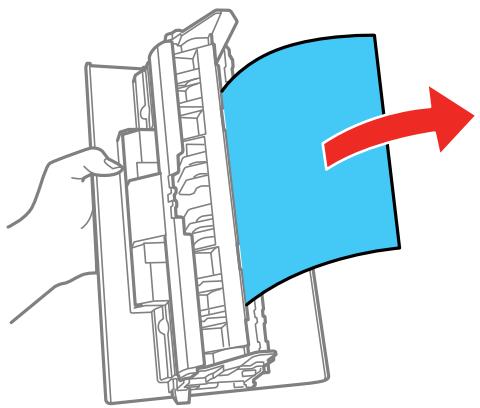
3. Press the buttons to release the rear cover and remove the cover from your product.



4. Carefully remove any jammed paper from inside the product.



5. Remove any jammed paper from the rear cover.



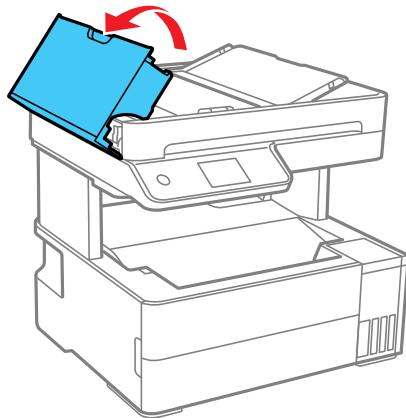
6. Press the buttons and reattach the rear cover.
7. Follow the prompts on the LCD screen to clear any error messages. If you still see a paper jam message, check the other paper jam solution.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Paper Problems](#)

## Paper Jams in the Automatic Document Feeder

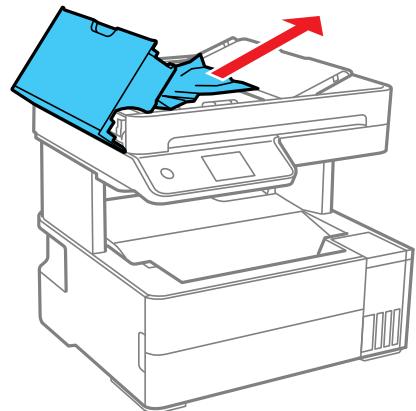
If you have problems with paper jams in the automatic document feeder (ADF), follow the steps below or on the LCD screen to clear the jam.

1. Cancel the print job, if necessary.
2. Remove your originals from the ADF.
3. Open the ADF cover.

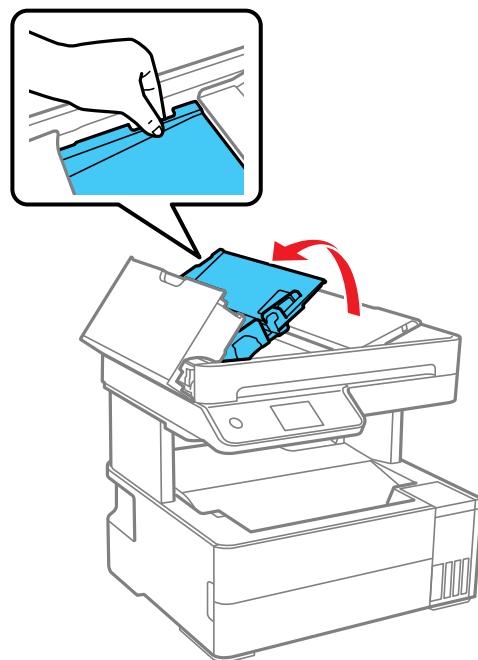


**Caution:** Make sure you open the ADF cover before removing any jammed paper. Otherwise the product may be damaged.

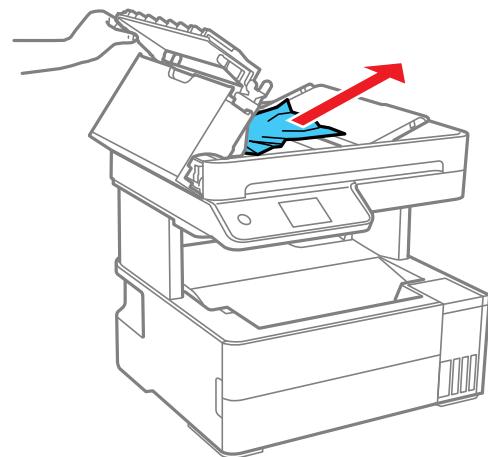
4. Carefully remove any jammed paper.



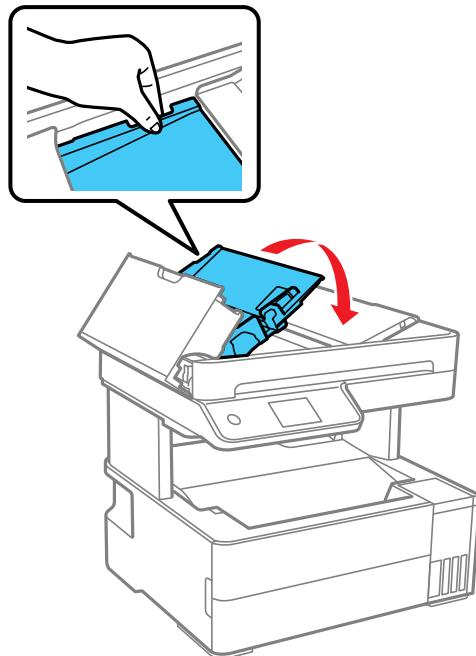
5. Open the ADF input tray.



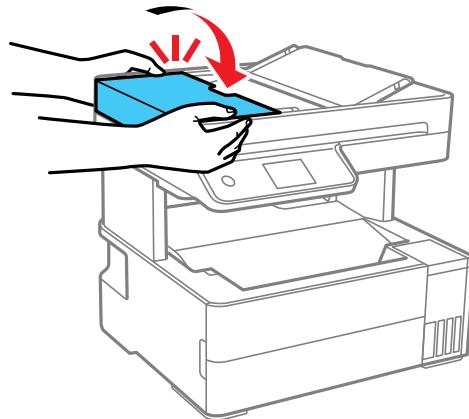
6. Carefully remove any jammed paper from beneath the ADF input tray.



7. Close the ADF input tray.



8. Close the ADF cover until it clicks into place.



9. Reload your originals.

**Caution:** Do not load the ADF beyond its capacity for your paper size. Also make sure your originals are not bent, folded, or curled and do not have tape, staples, or other materials that could obstruct the feeder.

10. Follow the prompts on the LCD screen to clear any error messages. If you still see a paper jam message, check the other paper jam solutions.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Paper Problems](#)

## Paper Ejection Problems

If you have problems with paper ejecting properly, try these solutions:

- If paper does not eject fully, you may have set the wrong paper size. Cancel printing to eject the paper. Select the correct paper size when you reprint.
- If paper is wrinkled when it ejects, it may be damp or too thin. Load new paper and be sure to select the correct paper type setting when you reprint.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Paper Problems](#)

### Related references

[Paper Jam Problems Inside the Product](#)

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software](#)

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Control Panel](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## Solving Problems Printing from a Computer

Check these sections if you have problems while printing from your computer.

**Note:** When printing using AirPrint, the available print settings are different from those covered in this manual. See the Apple website for details.

[Nothing Prints](#)

[Product Icon Does Not Appear in Windows Taskbar](#)

[Printing is Slow](#)

[Printing Problems When Using the PostScript Printer Driver](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

### Nothing Prints

If you have sent a print job and nothing prints, try these solutions:

- Make sure your product is turned on and connected to your computer.
- Make sure any interface cables are connected securely at both ends.
- If you connected your product to a USB hub, make sure it is a first-tier hub. If it still does not print, connect your product directly to your computer instead of the hub.
- If the printer cannot print using a USB connection, disconnect the USB cable from the computer, right-click on the printer icon displayed on the computer, and select **Remove Device**. Then connect the USB cable to the computer and try a test print.
- Make sure the printer status is not offline or pending.
- Make sure you are using the Epson printer driver for your product or the available functions are limited.
- Run a product check to see if a test page prints. If the test page prints, check to see if your product software is installed correctly.
- Make sure your system meets the requirements for your operating system. If you are printing a high-resolution image, you may need more than the minimum requirements. Print the image at a lower resolution or if necessary, increase your system's memory.

- In Windows, make sure your product is selected as the default printer and the printer port setting matches the printer connection port.
- In Windows, delete all jobs from the Windows Spooler. Click **Print Queue** on the Maintenance tab in the printer settings window, and cancel any stalled print jobs.
- On a Mac, make sure the printer is added to the printer list and the printer is not paused.
- Make sure your product is selected as the printer in your printing program.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems Printing from a Computer](#)

#### Related tasks

[Running a Product Check](#)

## Product Icon Does Not Appear in Windows Taskbar

If you do not see your product icon in the Windows taskbar, first try restarting your computer. If that does not work, try this solution:

1. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows 10:** Click  and select  (Settings) > **Devices > Printers & scanners**. Select your product name and select **Manage > Printing preferences**.
  - **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers**. Right-click your product name, select **Printing Preferences**, and select your product name again if necessary.
  - **Windows 7:** Click  and select **Devices and Printers**. Right-click your product name, select **Printing Preferences**, and select your product name again if necessary.
  - **Windows Vista:** Click , select **Control Panel**, and click **Printer** under **Hardware and Sound**. Right-click your product name, select **Printing Preferences**, and select your product name again if necessary.
2. Click the **Maintenance** tab.
3. Click the **Extended Settings** button.
4. Select **Enable EPSON Status Monitor 3** and click **OK**.
5. Click the **Monitoring Preferences** button.
6. Click the checkbox for the option that adds the shortcut icon to the taskbar.
7. Click **OK** to close the open program windows.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems Printing from a Computer](#)

## Printing is Slow

If printing becomes slow, try these solutions:

- Make sure your system meets the requirements for your operating system. If you are printing a high-resolution image, you may need more than the minimum requirements. If necessary, increase your system's memory.
- If you are using Windows 7, close the **Devices and Printers** window before you print.
- On a Mac, make sure you download and install the Epson printer driver.
- Make sure **Quiet Mode** is turned off.
- Clear space on your hard drive or run a defragmentation utility to free up existing space.
- Close any programs you are not using when you print.
- If your product is connected to a USB hub, connect it directly to your computer instead.
- If printing becomes slower after printing continuously for a long time, the product may have automatically slowed down to protect the print mechanism from overheating or becoming damaged. Let the product rest with the power on for 30 minutes, then try printing again.
- If you are printing over a wireless network, factors such as interference, network traffic, or weak signal strength may affect your printing speed.

**Note:** If you are using a 5 GHz wireless router, set the router to operate in dual band (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz) mode. If your router uses a single network name (SSID) for both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz band, give each band its own network name (SSID) instead, such as Home Network 2.4 GHz and Home Network 5 GHz. See your router documentation or contact your internet service provider for instructions.

For the fastest printing, select the following settings in your product software:

- Make sure the paper type setting matches the type of paper you loaded.
- Turn on any high speed settings in your product software.
- Select a lower print quality setting.
- Make sure the ink drying time has not been increased for double-sided printing.
- **Windows:** Click the **Maintenance** or **Utility** tab, select **Extended Settings** or **Speed and Progress**, and select the following settings:
  - **Always Spool RAW Datatype**
  - **Page Rendering Mode**

- **Print as Bitmap**
- **Windows:** Select **Printing preferences**, click the **More Options** tab, and make sure the **Bidirectional printing** setting is enabled.
- **Mac:** Select **System Preferences**, select **Printers & Scanners**, and select your product. Select **Options & Supplies**, select **Options** (or **Driver**), and enable the **Bidirectional printing** setting.

If printing is still slow and you are using Windows 7 or Windows Vista, try the following:

1. Click  and select **Computer** or **My Computer**. Double-click the **C:** drive and open these folders: **ProgramData > EPSON > PRINTER**.

**Note:** If you do not see the ProgramData folder, open the **Organize** menu and select **Folder and search options**. In the window that appears, click the **View** tab, select **Show hidden files, folders, and drives** in the Advanced settings list, and click **OK**.

2. Right-click the **EPAUDF01.AUD** file and select **Delete**.
3. Restart your computer and try printing again.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems Printing from a Computer](#)

#### **Related references**

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software](#)

[Windows System Requirements](#)

[Mac System Requirements](#)

#### **Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac](#)

[Selecting Extended Settings - Windows](#)

## **Printing Problems When Using the PostScript Printer Driver**

If you have sent a print job using the PostScript printer driver (ET-5180) and nothing prints, try these solutions:

- Make sure your product is turned on and connected to your computer.
- Make sure any interface cables are connected securely at both ends.
- If you connected your product to a USB hub, make sure it is a first-tier hub. If it still does not print, connect your product directly to your computer instead of the hub.

- Make sure the printer status is not offline or pending.
- Try changing the printing language to **Auto** or **PS** on the control panel.
- In Windows, delete all jobs from the Windows Spooler. Click **Print Queue** on the Maintenance tab in the printer settings window, and cancel any stalled print jobs.
- In Windows, select **Print directly to the printer** on the Advanced tab in the printer settings window.
- Make sure that the settings in the printing software match the settings in the printer driver.
- In Windows, set the **Output Protocol** setting on the Device Settings tab in the printer properties to **ASCII** or **TBCP**.
- In Windows, select the appropriate substitution fonts on the Device Settings tab in the printer properties.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems Printing from a Computer](#)

## Solving Page Layout and Content Problems

Check these sections if you have problems with the layout or content of your printed pages.

[Inverted Image](#)

[Too Many Copies Print](#)

[Blank Pages Print](#)

[Incorrect Margins on Printout](#)

[Incorrect Characters Print](#)

[Incorrect Image Size or Position](#)

[Slanted Printout](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

### Inverted Image

If your printed image is inverted unexpectedly, try these solutions:

- Turn off any mirror or inversion settings in your printing application.
- Turn off the **Mirror Image**, **Flip horizontally**, or **Reverse page orientation** settings in your printer software. (This option has different names, depending on your operating system version.)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

#### Related tasks

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

## Too Many Copies Print

Make sure that the **Copies** setting in your printing program or printer software is not set for multiple copies.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

### Related tasks

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

## Blank Pages Print

If blank pages print unexpectedly, try these solutions:

- Make sure you selected the correct paper size settings in your printing program and printer software.
- If a blank page exists in a document you are printing and you want to skip printing it, select the **Skip Blank Page** setting in your printer software, if available.
- Run a print head nozzle check to see if any of the nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- Make sure your product is selected as the printer in your printing program.
- You may need to refill the ink. Visually check the ink levels.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

### Related concepts

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

### Related references

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software](#)

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Control Panel](#)

### Related tasks

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Extended Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

## **Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## **Incorrect Margins on Printout**

If your printed page has incorrect margins, try these solutions:

- Make sure you selected the correct paper size settings in your printing program and printer software.
- Make sure you selected the correct margins for your paper size in your printing program.
- Make sure your paper is positioned correctly for feeding into the product.
- When placing originals on the scanner glass, align the corner of the original with the corner indicated by the arrow. If the edges of the copy are cropped, move the original slightly away from the corner.
- Clean the scanner glass and the document cover. If there is dust or stains on the glass, the copy area may extend to include the dust or stains.
- Load paper in the correct direction and slide the edge guides against the edges of the paper.
- Select the appropriate original size in the copy settings.

You can use the preview option in your printer software to check your margins before you print.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

### **Related references**

[Copying Options](#)

### **Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac](#)

### **Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

## **Incorrect Characters Print**

If incorrect characters appear in your prints, try these solutions before reprinting:

- Make sure any cables are securely connected at both ends.

- In Windows, delete all jobs from the Windows Spooler. Click **Print Queue** on the Maintenance tab in the printer settings window, and cancel any stalled print jobs.
- If your product is connected to a USB hub, connect it directly to your computer instead.
- If incorrect characters still appear in your prints, try connecting your product using a different cable.
- If your computer entered sleep mode the last time you printed, the next print job after your computer exits sleep mode may contain garbled characters. Print your document again.
- Make sure you are using the printer software for this product. Check the product name at the top of the driver window.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

**Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac](#)

## Incorrect Image Size or Position

If your printed image is the wrong size or in the wrong position, try these solutions:

- Make sure you selected the correct paper size and layout settings in your printing program and printer software.
- Make sure you selected the correct paper size on the control panel.
- Make sure your paper is positioned correctly for feeding into the printer.
- Slide the edge guides against the edges of the paper.
- Clean the scanner glass and document cover.
- If the edges of a copy are cropped, slightly move the original away from the edges of the scanner glass.
- Make sure you selected the correct margins for your paper size in your printing program.
- Be sure to select the appropriate original size setting for your original in the copy settings.

You can use the preview option in your printer software to check your margins before you print.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

**Related references**

[Copying Options](#)

**Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Page Setup Settings - Mac](#)

[Cleaning Your Product](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## Slanted Printout

If your printouts are slanted, try these solutions:

- Make sure the paper is loaded in the correct direction.
- Make sure your paper meets the specifications for your product.
- Do not load more than the recommended number of sheets.
- Slide the edge guide against the edge of the paper.
- Select a higher print quality setting in your printer software.
- Turn off any high speed settings in your product software.
- Align the print head.
- Adjust the print quality.
- Make sure the product is not printing while tilted or at an angle.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Page Layout and Content Problems](#)

**Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## Solving Print Quality Problems

Check these sections if your printouts have problems with print quality, but your image looks fine on your computer screen.

**Note:** When printing using AirPrint, the available print settings are different from those covered in this manual. See the Apple website for details.

[White or Dark Lines in Printout](#)

[Blurry or Smeared Printout](#)

[Faint Printout or Printout Has Gaps](#)

[Grainy Printout](#)

[Incorrect Colors](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

**Related topics**

[Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

## White or Dark Lines in Printout

If you notice white or dark lines in your prints (also called banding), try these solutions before you reprint:

- Run a nozzle check to see if any of the print head nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- Make sure the paper type setting matches the type of paper you loaded.
- Make sure you loaded the printable side of the paper correctly for your product.
- Turn off any high speed settings in your product software.
- Align the print head. If print quality does not improve after aligning the print head, disable the bidirectional (high speed) setting.
- Adjust the print quality in the product software.
- When horizontal banding appears or the top or bottom of the paper is smeared, load paper in the correct direction and slide the edge guides to the edges of the paper.
- If you continue to see horizontal or vertical bands or streaks in your printouts after cleaning and aligning the print head, you can finely tune the horizontal or vertical alignment in the Maintenance menu.
- If you continue to see horizontal bands or streaks in your printouts after cleaning the print head and adjusting the print quality, make print quality adjustments for each paper type.
- If you are copying from the ADF, copy from the scanner glass instead or use a higher quality setting.
- When vertical banding appears or the paper is smeared, clean the paper path.
- You may need to refill the ink. Visually check the ink levels.

- If you have not used the product for a long time, run the Power Cleaning utility.

**Note:** Power Cleaning consumes a lot of ink, so run this utility only if you cannot improve print quality by cleaning the print head.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Print Quality Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Alignment](#)

[Power Cleaning](#)

**Related references**

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Printing Software](#)

**Related tasks**

[Aligning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac](#)

[Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## Blurry or Smeared Printout

If your printouts are blurry or smeared, try these solutions:

- Make sure your paper is not damp, curled, old, or loaded incorrectly in your product.
- Use a support sheet with special paper, or load special paper one sheet at a time.
- Place a piece of black paper on the back of the original and copy it again.
- Make sure your paper meets the specifications for your product.
- Use Epson papers to ensure proper saturation and absorption of genuine Epson inks.
- Make sure the paper type setting in your product software matches the type of paper you loaded.
- If you are printing on letterhead paper, make sure the paper size setting matches the size of paper you loaded. If you select a paper size that is too large for the paper you loaded, the product may print beyond the edges of the paper and cause ink to smear.

- Make sure you loaded the printable side of the paper correctly for your product.
- If you are printing on thick paper or envelopes, make sure you select the appropriate settings.
- When manually printing 2-sided, make sure the ink is completely dry before loading the paper.
- Avoid handling printouts on glossy paper right after printing to allow the ink to set.
- Dry printouts completely before filing or displaying them. When drying printouts, avoid direct sunlight, do not use a dryer, and do not touch the printed side of the paper.
- Do not stack printouts immediately after printing.
- Turn off any high speed settings in your product software.
- If you print on both sides of a sheet of paper, smudges may appear on the reverse side of heavily saturated or dark images. If one side of a sheet will contain a lighter image or text, print that side first. Adjust the density and/or ink drying time settings.
- The ink levels may be low and you may need to refill the ink. Visually check the ink levels.
- Run a nozzle check to see if any of the print head nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- Align the print head.
- Adjust the print quality in the product software.
- Clean the paper path.
- Clean the paper rollers.
- Do not press too hard on the original or the document cover when you are scanning originals on the scanner glass.
- Clean the scanner glass.
- Clean the ADF.
- Use the ink before the date printed on the package.
- If you printed when the ink levels were too low to be seen in the ink tank windows, refill the ink tanks to the upper lines and run the Power Cleaning utility. Then run a nozzle check to see if print quality has improved.
- If you have not used the product for a long time, run the Power Cleaning utility.

**Note:** Power Cleaning consumes a lot of ink, so run this utility only if you cannot improve print quality by cleaning the print head.

**Note:** Your product will not operate properly while tilted at an angle. Place it on a flat, stable surface that extends beyond the base of the product in all directions.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Print Quality Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

[Print Head Alignment](#)

**Related references**

[Compatible Epson Papers](#)

[Paper Specifications](#)

**Related tasks**

[Aligning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac](#)

[Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Extended Settings - Windows](#)

[Cleaning the Paper Guide](#)

## Faint Printout or Printout Has Gaps

If your printouts are faint or have gaps, try these solutions:

- Run a nozzle check to see if any of the print head nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- The ink levels may be low. Visually check the ink levels.
- Make sure the paper type setting matches the type of paper you loaded.
- Make sure your paper is not damp, curled, old, or loaded incorrectly in your product.
- Align the print head.
- Adjust the print quality in the product software.
- Clean the paper path.
- Clean the paper rollers.
- If you have not used the product for a long time, run the Power Cleaning utility.

**Note:** Power Cleaning consumes a lot of ink, so run this utility only if you cannot improve print quality by cleaning the print head.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Print Quality Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

[Print Head Alignment](#)

**Related references**

[Paper or Media Type Settings - Control Panel](#)

**Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Cleaning the Paper Guide](#)

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## Grainy Printout

If your printouts are grainy, try these solutions:

- Make sure you loaded the printable side of the paper correctly for your product.
- Select a higher print quality setting and turn off any high speed settings in your product software.
- Run a nozzle check to see if any of the print head nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- Align the print head.
- Adjust the print quality in the product software.
- You may need to increase the image resolution or print a smaller size; see your software documentation.

**Note:** Images from the Internet may be low resolution and not result in a high quality printout.

- If you enlarged the image size in an image-editing program, you need to increase the image resolution setting to retain a high image quality. Increase the image resolution by the same amount you increase

the image size. For example, if the image resolution is 300 dpi (dots per inch) and you will double the image size for printing, change the resolution setting to 600 dpi.

**Note:** Higher resolution settings result in larger file sizes, which take longer to process and print. Consider the limitations of your computer system when selecting a resolution, and select the lowest possible resolution that produces acceptable quality to keep file sizes manageable.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Print Quality Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

[Print Head Alignment](#)

**Related tasks**

[Aligning the Print Head Using the Product Control Panel](#)

[Selecting Printing Preferences - Mac](#)

[Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

**Related topics**

[Loading Paper](#)

## Incorrect Colors

If your printouts have incorrect colors, try these solutions:

- Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper you loaded.
- Make sure the **Black/Grayscale** or **Grayscale** setting is not selected in your printer software.
- If you selected **Standard-Vivid** (Windows) or **Normal-Vivid** (Mac) as the quality setting in the printer software, try selecting **Standard** (Windows) or **Normal** (Mac) instead.
- Run a nozzle check to see if any of the print head nozzles are clogged. Then clean the print head, if necessary.
- The ink levels may be low and you may need to refill the ink. Visually check the ink levels.
- If you printed when the ink levels were too low to be seen in the ink tank windows, refill the ink tanks to the upper lines and run the Power Cleaning utility. Then run a nozzle check to see if print quality has improved.

- After you print, the colors in your printout need time to set as the ink dries. During this time, the colors may look different than you expect. To speed up drying time, do not stack your printouts on top of each other.
- Your printed colors can never exactly match your on-screen colors. However, you can use a color management system to get as close as possible. Try using the color management options in your printer software.
- Try turning off the **PhotoEnhance** setting in Windows.
- For best results, use genuine Epson paper.
- If you have not used the product for a long time, run the Power Cleaning utility.

**Note:** Power Cleaning consumes a lot of ink, so run this utility only if you cannot improve print quality by cleaning the print head.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Print Quality Problems](#)

**Related concepts**

[Print Head Nozzle Check](#)

[Print Head Cleaning](#)

**Related references**

[Compatible Epson Papers](#)

**Related tasks**

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Windows](#)

[Selecting Basic Print Settings - Mac](#)

[Selecting Additional Layout and Print Options - Windows](#)

[Refilling the Ink Tanks](#)

[Managing Color - Mac](#)

## Solving Scanning Problems

Check these solutions if you have problems scanning with your product.

**Note:** For solutions when using the Epson ScanSmart software, see the Epson ScanSmart help utility.

[Scanning Software Does Not Operate Correctly](#)

[Cannot Start Epson Scan 2](#)

[Scanning is Slow](#)

[Parent topic: Solving Problems](#)

## Scanning Software Does Not Operate Correctly

If your scanning software does not operate correctly, try these solutions:

- Make sure your computer has adequate memory and meets the system requirements for your operating system.
- Make sure your computer is not running in a power-saving mode, such as sleep or standby. If so, wake your system and restart your scanning software.
- If you upgraded your operating system but did not reinstall your scanning software, try reinstalling it.
- In Windows, make sure your product is listed as a valid device in the **Scanners and Cameras** control panel.
- If you are scanning with the ADF, make sure the ADF and document covers are closed.
- Try scanning at a lower resolution or increase the free space on the computer's hard disk. Scanning stops if the total data size reaches the limit.

[Parent topic: Solving Scanning Problems](#)

### Related concepts

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

### Related references

[Windows System Requirements](#)

[Mac System Requirements](#)

## Cannot Start Epson Scan 2

If you cannot start Epson Scan 2, try these solutions:

- Make sure your product is turned on and any interface cables are securely connected at both ends.
- If your product is connected to a USB hub, connect it directly to your computer instead.
- If you scan at a high resolution over a network, a communication error may occur. Lower the resolution.
- If you are scanning with the ADF, check that the document cover and ADF cover are closed.
- Make sure Epson Scan 2 is selected as your scanning program.
- Make sure your computer is not running in a power-saving mode, such as sleep or standby. If so, wake your system and restart Epson Scan 2.

- Check the connection setting and test the connection using Epson Scan 2 Utility:

**Windows 10:** Click  and select **EPSON > Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure the correct product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

**Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure the correct product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

**Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start > All Programs or Programs > EPSON > Epson Scan 2 > Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure the correct product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

**Mac:** Open the **Applications** folder, click **Epson Software**, and click **Epson Scan 2 Utility**. Make sure the correct product is selected. If necessary, select the **Other** tab and click **Reset**.

- Make sure you do not have multiple versions of Epson Scan 2 installed. If you do, uninstall both versions and install one version.
- If you upgraded your operating system but did not reinstall Epson Scan 2, try reinstalling it.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanning Problems](#)

#### **Related concepts**

[Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

#### **Related topics**

[Starting a Scan](#)

## **Scanning is Slow**

If scanning becomes slow, try these solutions:

- Scan your original at a lower resolution, if possible.
- Make sure your system meets the requirements for your operating system. If you are scanning a high-resolution image, you may need more than the minimum requirements. If necessary, increase your system's memory or reduce the resolution.
- If scanning becomes slower after scanning continuously with the ADF for a long time, the scanner may have automatically slowed down to protect the scanner mechanism from overheating or becoming damaged. Let the scanner rest with the power on for 30 minutes, then try scanning again.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanning Problems](#)

## **Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems**

Check these sections if a scanned image on your computer screen has a quality problem.

**Note:** For solutions when using the Epson ScanSmart software, see the Epson ScanSmart help utility.

[Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

[Image Consists of a Few Dots Only](#)

[Line of Dots Appears in All Scanned Images](#)

[Straight Lines in an Image Appear Crooked](#)

[Image Colors are Patchy at the Edges](#)

[Ripple Patterns Appear in an Image](#)

[Scanned Image Edges are Cropped](#)

[Characters are Not Recognized During Conversion to Editable Text \(OCR\)](#)

[Streaks Appear in All Scanned Images](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

## Scanned Image Quality Problems

If you encounter quality problems with your scanned image, try these solutions:

### Image is Distorted or Blurry

- Make sure your original is not wrinkled or warped. This may prevent the original from laying flat on the scanner glass.
- Do not move your original or your product during scanning.
- Clean the scanner glass and the ADF and remove any dirt or dust on your originals.
- Your product will not operate properly while tilted at an angle. Place your product on a flat, stable surface that extends beyond its base in all directions.
- Adjust these Epson Scan 2 or Epson ScanSmart settings (if available) and try scanning again:
  - Make sure you select the correct **Image Type** for your original.
  - Increase the **Resolution** setting.
  - If the **Image Type** setting is **Black & White**, adjust the **Threshold** setting. (The **Image Option** must be set to **None** or **Color Enhance**.)
  - If the **Image Type** setting is **Color** or **Grayscale**, select the **Unsharp Mask** setting.
  - If the **Image Type** setting is **Black & White**, select **Text Enhancement**. If the **Image Type** setting is **Color** or **Grayscale**, change the **Text Enhancement** setting to **High**.

### **Image is Too Dark**

- Make sure you select the correct **Image Type** for your original.
- If the **Image Type** is set to **Color** or **Grayscale**, adjust the **Brightness** setting.
- Check the brightness and contrast settings of your computer monitor.

### **Back of Original Image Appears in Scanned Image**

- Place a piece of black paper on the back of the original and scan it again.
- Adjust these Epson Scan 2 or Epson ScanSmart settings (if available) and try scanning again:
  - Make sure you select the correct **Image Type** for your original.
  - Select the **Advanced Settings** tab and adjust the **Brightness** setting.
  - If the **Image Type** is set to **Black & White**, select **Text Enhancement**. If the **Image Type** is set to **Color** or **Grayscale**, change the **Text Enhancement** setting to **High**.

### **Scanned Image Colors Do Not Match Original Colors**

Printed colors can never exactly match the colors on your computer monitor because printers and monitors use different color systems: monitors use RGB (red, green, and blue) and printers typically use CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black).

Check the color matching and color management capabilities of your computer, display adapter, and the software you are using to see if they are affecting the palette of colors you see on your screen.

To adjust the colors in your scanned image, adjust these Epson Scan 2 or Epson ScanSmart settings (if available) and try scanning again:

- Make sure you select the correct **Image Type** for your original.
- If the **Image Type** setting is **Auto**, **Color** or **Grayscale**, adjust the **Contrast** setting.
- If the **Image Type** setting is **Black & White** or **Grayscale**, adjust the **Color Enhance** setting.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

#### **Related references**

[Additional Scanning Settings - Main Settings Tab](#)

[Additional Scanning Settings - Advanced Settings Tab](#)

### **Image Consists of a Few Dots Only**

If your scanned image consists only of a few dots, try these solutions:

- Make sure you placed your original for scanning facing the correct way.

- If the **Image Type** setting is **Black & White**, adjust the **Threshold** and scan again. (The **Image Option** must be set to **None** or **Color Enhance**.)
- Remove any lint or dirt from your original.
- Clean the scanner glass.
- Do not press on the original or the document cover with too much force.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

## Line of Dots Appears in All Scanned Images

If a line of dots appears in all your scanned images, try these solutions:

- Clean the scanner glass with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth or use a small amount of glass cleaner on the cloth, if necessary. Paper towels are not recommended.

**Caution:** Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the scanner glass.

- Make sure any interface cables are securely connected at both ends.
- Remove any dust or dirt that may have adhered to your original.
- Keep the document cover closed to prevent dirt or dust from getting inside.

If you are scanning from the ADF, make sure the ADF edge guides fit against the loaded originals. You can also try cleaning the ADF and scanning again.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

## Straight Lines in an Image Appear Crooked

If straight lines in an original appear crooked in a scanned image, make sure to place your original straight when you scan it.

Clean the scanner glass with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth or use a small amount of glass cleaner on the cloth, if necessary. Paper towels are not recommended.

Keep the document cover closed to prevent dirt or dust from getting inside.

If you are scanning from the ADF, make sure the ADF edge guides fit against the loaded originals. You can also try cleaning the ADF and scanning again.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

### Related topics

[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

## Image Colors are Patchy at the Edges

If you are scanning a thick or warped original, cover its edges with paper to block external light as you scan it.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

## Ripple Patterns Appear in an Image

You may see a ripple pattern (called a moiré) in scanned images of printed documents. This is caused by interference from differing pitches in the scanner's screen and your original's halftone screen. To reduce this effect, adjust these Epson Scan 2 settings (if available) and try scanning again:

- Select the **Descreening** setting on the Advanced Settings tab.
- Select a lower **Resolution** setting.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

### Related references

[Additional Scanning Settings - Main Settings Tab](#)

[Additional Scanning Settings - Advanced Settings Tab](#)

## Scanned Image Edges are Cropped

If the edges of a scanned image are cropped, make sure your original is placed correctly for scanning. If necessary, move your original away from the edges of the scanner glass slightly.

In the Epson Scan 2 or Epson ScanSmart settings, set the **Edge Fill** setting to **None**.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

### Related topics

[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

## Characters are Not Recognized During Conversion to Editable Text (OCR)

If characters in your scanned images are not recognized during OCR conversion, try these solutions:

- Make sure your original is loaded straight on your product.
- Use an original with clear text.
- When saving scanned images as Searchable PDFs, make sure the correct OCR language is selected.
- Adjust the following Epson Scan 2 or Epson ScanSmart settings if available, and try scanning again:
  - On the **Main Settings** tab, make sure you select the correct **Image Type** for your original.

- On the **Main Settings** tab, set the **Resolution** between 200 and 600 dpi.
- On the **Advanced Settings** tab, select **Text Enhancement** and choose a setting.

**Note:** The **Text Enhancement** setting depends on the selected **Image Type**.

- If the **Image Type** is set to **Black & White**, adjust the **Threshold** setting on the **Advanced Settings** tab. (The **Image Option** must be set to **None**.)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

## Streaks Appear in All Scanned Images

If streaks appear in all your scanned images, try these solutions:

- Clean the scanner glass with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth or use a small amount of glass cleaner on the cloth, if necessary. Paper towels are not recommended.
- Keep the document cover closed to prevent dirt or dust from getting inside.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Scanned Image Quality Problems](#)

## Solving Faxing Problems

Check these solutions if you have problems faxing with your product (ET-5170/ET-5180).

[Cannot Send or Receive Faxes](#)

[Cannot Receive Faxes with a Telephone Connected to Your Product](#)

[Fax Memory Full Error Appears](#)

[Fax Quality is Poor](#)

[Sent Fax is Received in an Incorrect Size](#)

[Received Fax is Not Printed](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

### Related tasks

[Setting Up the Fax Utility - Windows](#)

[Setting Up Fax Features Using the Fax Utility - Mac](#)

[Checking Fax Status](#)

[Printing Fax Reports](#)

[Selecting the Date and Time](#)

## Related topics

[Setting Up Fax Features](#)

## Cannot Send or Receive Faxes

If you cannot send or receive faxes, try these solutions:

- If an error code is displayed on the control panel, try the solutions suggested in the error code list.
- Use **Check Fax Connection** on the control panel (**Settings > General Settings > Fax Settings > Check Fax Connection**) to run the automatic fax connection check. Try the solutions suggested in the report.
- If you are faxing from a computer, use the Epson FAX Utility to send your fax.
- Make sure the recipient's fax machine is turned on and working.
- Make sure paper is loaded correctly in your product.
- Make sure you have set up your header information and have not blocked your caller ID. Otherwise, your faxes might be rejected by the recipient's fax machine.
- If you did not connect a telephone to your product, set the Receive Mode setting to **Auto** so you can receive faxes automatically.
- Check that the cable connecting your telephone wall jack to your product's **LINE** port is secure.
- Print a fax connection report using your product control panel or fax software to help diagnose the problem.
- Verify that the telephone wall jack works by connecting a phone to it and testing it.
- If there is no dial tone and you connected the product to a PBX (Private Branch Exchange) phone line or Terminal Adapter, change the **Line Type** setting to **PBX**. If you still cannot send a fax, turn off the product's dial tone detection setting. (Turning off the dial tone setting may cause the product to drop the first digit of a fax number.)
- Check the **Line Type** setting and set it to **PBX**. If your phone system requires an external access code to reach an outside line, register the code to the product and add a # (hash) to the beginning of the phone number when dialing.
- If you connected your product to a DSL phone line, you must connect a DSL filter to the phone jack to enable faxing over the line. Contact your DSL provider for the necessary filter.
- If you are connected to a DSL phone line, connect the product directly to a telephone wall jack and send a fax. If it works, the problem may be caused by the DSL filter. Contact your DSL provider.
- If your telephone line has static, turn off your product's error correction mode fax communication setting and try faxing again.

- Make sure you installed the FAX driver for your product and that it is not paused.
- Try lowering your product's fax speed setting.
- If a communication error occurs, change the **Fax Speed** setting to **Slow(9,600bps)** on the control panel.
- Make sure the error correction mode (ECM) setting is turned on if you are trying to send or receive a color fax.
- If your telephone line uses call waiting and you have trouble receiving faxes, turn off call waiting to prevent disruption of incoming faxes.
- If you have subscribed to a call forwarding service, the product may not be able to receive faxes. Contact your service provider for assistance.
- If the recipient fax machine does not answer your call within 50 seconds after the product has finished dialing, add pauses after the fax number to send the fax.
- Check your inbox and delete faxes after reading or printing them. If the inbox is full, the product cannot receive faxes.
- When sending faxes using the subaddress feature, ask the recipient if their fax machine can receive faxes using this feature. Check that the subaddress and password are correct, and that they match with the recipient subaddress and password. Check this when receiving faxes as well.
- Check if the sender's fax number is registered to the **Rejection Number List**.
- If you enabled **Rejection Fax** options, check if the sender is blocked, did not set up header information, or is not registered in your contacts list, as necessary.
- If you cannot send faxes at a specified time, make sure the date and time are set correctly on the product.
- If you have not connected a telephone to the printer, set the **Receive Mode** setting to **Auto** on the control panel.
- If you are receiving faxes using the Epson FAX Utility, check that your product is registered as a fax product in your operating system:

**Windows:** Make sure the product appears in **Devices and Printers**, **Printer**, or **Printers and Other Hardware**. If the product does not appear, uninstall and re-install the Epson FAX Utility.

**Mac:** Select **System Preferences > Printers & Scanners** (or **Print & Scan** or **Print & Fax**) and make sure your product appears. If your product does not appear, click **+** and add your product. If the product does appear, double-click it and make sure it is not paused.

**Note:** Do not turn the product off while it is receiving a fax. Otherwise, the fax transmission will be lost.

**Note:** If your product is connected to a VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) phone line, keep in mind that fax machines are designed to work over analog phone lines. Epson cannot guarantee that fax transmission will work when using VoIP.

If your phone line includes voice mail answering services, calls or faxes may be inadvertently received by your voice mail service.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Faxing Problems](#)

## Cannot Receive Faxes with a Telephone Connected to Your Product

If you cannot receive faxes when a telephone is connected to your product, try these solutions:

- Make sure your telephone is connected to your product's **EXT** port.
- Make sure the Receive Mode is set to **Manual**.

**Note:** When answering a call that is a fax, wait until the product's LCD screen displays a message that a connection has been made before you hang up.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Faxing Problems](#)

### Related tasks

[Connecting a Telephone or Answering Machine](#)

[Receiving Faxes Manually](#)

[Using the Fax Setup Wizard](#)

## Fax Memory Full Error Appears

If you see an error message telling you that the product's fax memory is full, try these solutions:

- If you set the product to save received faxes in the product's memory or inbox, delete any faxes you have already read.

**Note:** Your product can store up to 100 faxes before its inbox is full.

- If you set the product to save received faxes on a computer, turn on the selected computer. Once the faxes are saved on the computer, they are deleted from the product's memory.
- If the memory is full, try the following:
  - Send a monochrome fax using the direct sending feature
  - Send your faxes by dialing from a connected external phone

- Send your faxes in smaller batches
- If the product cannot print a received fax due to a product error, such as a paper jam, the memory full error may appear. Clear any product errors, then ask the sender to resend the fax.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Faxing Problems](#)

**Related tasks**

[Setting Up the Fax Utility - Windows](#)

[Setting Up Fax Features Using the Fax Utility - Mac](#)

## Fax Quality is Poor

If you receive a poor quality fax, try these solutions:

- Try enabling the error correction mode (ECM) setting.
- Contact the fax sender and ask them to send the fax in a higher resolution.
- Try reprinting the received fax.

If the sent fax quality is poor, try these solutions:

- Clean the scanner glass.
- Clean the ADF.
- Try changing the resolution or density setting on the control panel.
- Try changing the original type setting on the control panel.
- If you are sending a monochrome fax to a single recipient, try sending the fax using the **Direct Send** feature.

**Note:** If you send a high-resolution monochrome fax without using the **Direct Send** feature, the product may automatically lower the resolution.

- Try enabling the error correction mode (ECM) setting.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Faxing Problems](#)

**Related references**

[Basic Settings - Fax](#)

[Fax Sending Options](#)

**Related tasks**

[Cleaning Your Product](#)

## Sent Fax is Received in an Incorrect Size

If your recipient receives a fax in an incorrect size, try these solutions:

- If you are sending a fax using the scanner glass, make sure your original is placed correctly and that the correct paper size is selected on the control panel.
- Clean the scanner glass and document cover.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Faxing Problems](#)

**Related tasks**

[Cleaning Your Product](#)

**Related topics**

[Placing Originals on the Product](#)

## Received Fax is Not Printed

If a received fax is not printed, try these solutions:

- Make sure the product is free of errors. The product cannot print received faxes if an error has occurred with the product, such as a paper jam.
- If the product has been set to save received faxes in the product's memory or inbox, received faxes are not automatically printed. Check the **Receive Settings** options on the product control panel and change them, if necessary.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Faxing Problems](#)

## Uninstall Your Product Software

If you have a problem that requires you to uninstall and re-install your software, follow the instructions for your operating system.

[Uninstalling Product Software - Windows](#)

[Uninstalling Product Software - Mac](#)

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

## Uninstalling Product Software - Windows

You can uninstall and then re-install your product software to solve certain problems.

1. Turn off the product.
2. Close any open programs or applications.

3. Disconnect any interface cables.
4. Do one of the following:
  - **Windows 10:** Click  and select  (Settings) > **Apps or System > Apps & features**. Then select the program you want to uninstall and select **Uninstall**.
  - **Windows 8.x:** Navigate to the **Apps** screen and select **Control Panel > Programs > Programs and Features**. Select the uninstall option for your Epson product, then select **Uninstall/Change**.

**Note:** If you see a **User Account Control** window, click **Yes** or **Continue**.

Select your product again, if necessary, then select **OK**, and click **Yes** to confirm the uninstallation.

- **Windows (other versions):** Click  or **Start**, and select **All Programs or Programs**. Select **EPSON**, select your product, then click **EPSON Printer Software Uninstall**.

**Note:** If you see a **User Account Control** window, click **Yes** or **Continue**.

In the next window, select your product and click **OK**. Then follow any on-screen instructions.

5. Do one of the following to uninstall Epson Event Manager, then follow any on-screen instructions:
  - **Windows 10/8.x:** Select **Epson Event Manager** and click **Uninstall**.
  - **Windows 7/Windows Vista:** Open the Windows **Control Panel** utility. Select **Programs and Features**. (In Classic view, select **Programs** and click **Uninstall a program**.) Select **Epson Event Manager** and click **Uninstall/Change**.
6. Do one of the following to uninstall Epson Scan 2, then follow any on-screen instructions:
  - **Windows 10:** Select **Epson Scan 2** and click **Uninstall**.
  - **Windows 8.x/Windows 7/Windows Vista:** Select **Epson Scan 2** and click **Uninstall/Change**.
7. Do one of the following to uninstall Epson ScanSmart, then follow any on-screen instructions:
  - **Windows 10:** Select **Epson ScanSmart** and click **Uninstall**.
  - **Windows 8.x/Windows 7/Windows Vista:** Select **Epson ScanSmart** and click **Uninstall/Change**.
8. Restart your computer, then see the *Start Here* sheet to re-install your software.

**Note:** If you find that re-installing your product software does not solve a problem, contact Epson.

**Parent topic:** [Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

## Uninstalling Product Software - Mac

In most cases, you do not need to uninstall your product software before re-installing it. However, you can download the Uninstaller utility from the Epson support website to uninstall your product software as described here.

**Note:** If you find that re-installing your product software does not solve a problem, contact Epson.

1. To download the Uninstaller utility, visit [epson.com/support](#) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](#) (Canada) and select your product.
2. Click **Downloads**.
3. Select your operating system, click **Utilities**, locate the Uninstaller utility, and click **Download**.
4. Run the file you downloaded.
5. Double-click the **Uninstaller** icon.
6. In the Epson Uninstaller screen, select the checkbox for each software program you want to uninstall.
7. Click **Uninstall**.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions to uninstall the software.
9. Reinstall your product software.

**Note:** If you uninstall the printer driver and your product name remains in the **Print & Fax**, **Print & Scan**, or **Printers & Scanners** window, select your product name and click the – (remove) icon to remove it.

**Parent topic:** [Uninstall Your Product Software](#)

## Where to Get Help

If you need to contact Epson for technical support services, use the following support options.

### Internet Support

Visit Epson's support website at [epson.com/support](#) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](#) (Canada) and select your product for solutions to common problems. You can download drivers and documentation, get FAQs and troubleshooting advice, or e-mail Epson with your questions.

## **Speak to a Support Representative**

Before you call Epson for support, please have the following information ready:

- Product name
- Product serial number (located on a label on the product)
- Proof of purchase (such as a store receipt) and date of purchase
- Computer configuration
- Description of the problem

Then call:

- U.S.: (562) 276-4382, 6 AM to 8 PM, Pacific Time, Monday through Friday, and 7 AM to 4 PM, Pacific Time, Saturday
- Canada: (905) 709-3839, 6 AM to 8 PM, Pacific Time, Monday through Friday, and 7 AM to 4 PM, Pacific Time, Saturday

Days and hours of support are subject to change without notice. Toll or long distance charges may apply.

## **Purchase Supplies and Accessories**

You can purchase genuine Epson ink and paper at [epson.com](http://epson.com) (U.S. sales) or [epson.ca](http://epson.ca) (Canadian sales). You can also purchase supplies from an Epson authorized reseller. To find the nearest one, call 800-GO-EPSON (800-463-7766) in the U.S. or 800-807-7766 in Canada.

**Parent topic:** [Solving Problems](#)

---

# Technical Specifications

These sections list the technical specifications for your product.

**Note:** Epson offers a recycling program for end of life Epson products. Please go to [this site](#) (U.S) or [this site](#) (Canada) for information on how to return your Epson products for proper disposal.

[Windows System Requirements](#)

[Mac System Requirements](#)

[Paper Specifications](#)

[Printable Area Specifications](#)

[Scanning Specifications](#)

[Fax Specifications \(ET-5170/ET-5180\)](#)

[Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\) Specifications](#)

[Ink Specifications](#)

[Dimension Specifications](#)

[Electrical Specifications](#)

[Environmental Specifications](#)

[Interface Specifications](#)

[Network Interface Specifications](#)

[Safety and Approvals Specifications](#)

## Windows System Requirements

To use your product and its software, your computer should use one of these Microsoft operating systems:

- Windows 10
- Windows 8.x
- Windows 7
- Windows Vista
- Windows XP Professional x64 Edition SP2 or later
- Windows XP SP3 or later
- Windows Server 2003 SP2 or later

**Note:** For the latest product software available for your operating system, visit the Epson support site at [epson.com/support](http://epson.com/support) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](http://epson.ca/support) (Canada), select your product, and select **Downloads**.

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Mac System Requirements

To use your product and its software, your Mac should use one of these operating systems:

- macOS 11.x
- macOS 10.15.x
- macOS 10.14.x
- macOS 10.13.x
- macOS 10.12.x
- OS X 10.11.x
- OS X 10.10.x
- OS X 10.9.x
- OS X 10.8.x
- OS X 10.7.x

**Note:** For the latest product software available for your operating system, visit the Epson support site at [epson.com/support](http://epson.com/support) (U.S.) or [epson.ca/support](http://epson.ca/support) (Canada), select your product, and select **Downloads**.

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Paper Specifications

**Note:** Since the quality of any particular brand or type of paper may be changed by the manufacturer at any time, Epson cannot guarantee the quality of any non-Epson brand or type of paper. Always test a sample of paper stock before purchasing large quantities or printing large jobs.

## Single-sheets

<b>Size</b>	A4 (8.3 × 11.7 inches [210 × 297 mm]) A6 (4.1 × 5.8 inches [105 × 148 mm]) Letter (8.5 × 11 inches [216 × 279 mm]) Legal (8.5 × 14 inches [216 × 356 mm]) 8 × 10 inches (203 × 254 mm) 8.5 × 13 inches (216 × 330 mm) Half Letter (5.5 × 8.5 inches [140 × 216 mm]) Executive (7.25 × 10.5 inches [184 × 267 mm]) Mexico-Oficio (8.5 × 13.4 inches [216 × 340 mm]) Oficio 9 (8.46 × 12.4 inches [215 × 315 mm])
<b>Paper types</b>	Plain paper
<b>Weight</b>	Plain paper: 17 lb (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) to 24 lb (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )

## Envelopes

<b>Size</b>	No. 10 (4.1 × 9.5 inches [105 × 241 mm])
<b>Paper types</b>	Plain bond paper
<b>Weight</b>	20 lb (75 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) to 24 lb (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

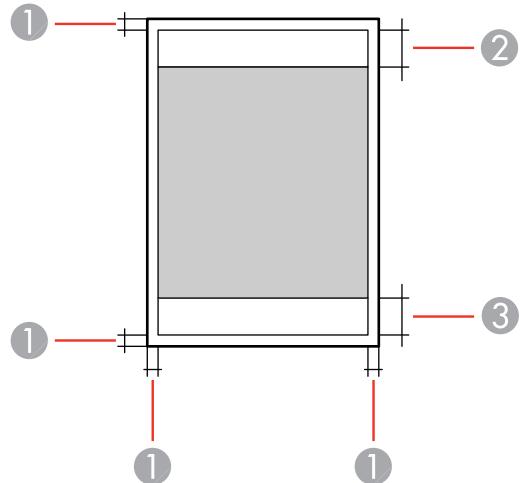
**Related references**

[Compatible Epson Papers](#)

## Printable Area Specifications

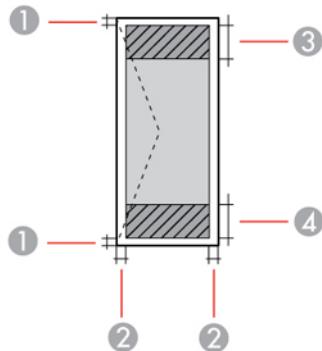
**Note:** Print quality may decline in the shaded areas due to the printer's mechanism.

## **Single sheets**



- 1 Top/bottom/left/right margins: 0.12 inch (3 mm) minimum
- 2 Reduced print quality area/top: 1.81 inches (46 mm) minimum
- 3 Reduced print quality area/bottom: 1.73 inches (44 mm) minimum

## **Envelopes**



- 1 Right/left margins: 0.12 inch (3 mm) minimum
- 2 Top/bottom margins: 0.12 inch (3 mm) minimum

- 3 Reduced print quality area/right: 0.95 inch (24 mm) minimum
- 4 Reduced print quality area/left: 1.81 inches (46 mm) minimum

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Scanning Specifications

<b>Scanner type</b>	Flatbed
<b>Photoelectric device</b>	CIS
<b>Effective pixels</b>	10200 × 14040 pixels at 1200 dpi
<b>Document size</b>	Maximum: 8.5 × 11.7 inches (216 × 297 mm) Scanner glass: US letter or A4
<b>Scanning resolution</b>	1200 dpi (main scan) 2400 dpi (sub scan)
<b>Output resolution</b>	50 to 9600 in 1 dpi increments
<b>Image data</b>	Color: 48 bits per pixel internal (16 bits per pixel per color internal) 24 bits per pixel external (8 bits per pixel per color external) Grayscale: 16 bits per pixel internal 8 bits per pixel external Black and white: 16 bits per pixel internal 1 bit per pixel external
<b>Light source</b>	LED

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Fax Specifications (ET-5170/ET-5180)

<b>Fax type</b>	Walk-up black-and-white and color fax capability (ITU-T Super Group 3)
<b>Supported lines</b>	Standard analog telephone lines and PBX (Private Branch Exchange) telephone systems
<b>Speed</b>	Up to 33.6 kbps
<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Monochrome:</b> Standard: 203 pixels per inch × 98 lines per inch (8 pixels per mm × 3.85 lines per mm) Fine: 203 pixels per inch × 196 lines per inch (8 pixels per mm × 7.7 lines per mm) Super Fine: 203 pixels per inch × 392 lines per inch (8 pixels per mm × 15.4 lines per mm) Ultra Fine: 406 pixels per inch × 392 lines per inch (16 pixels per mm × 15.4 lines per mm) <b>Color:</b> 200 × 200 dpi
<b>Page memory</b>	Up to 180 (ITU-T No. 1 chart in monochrome draft mode)
<b>Redial</b>	2 times (with 1 minute interval); specifications may differ by country or region
<b>Interface</b>	RJ-11 Phone Line RJ-11 Telephone set connection

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Specifications

<b>Paper size</b>	US letter, legal, A4, or 8.5 × 13 inch (216 × 330 mm) size
<b>Paper type</b>	Plain paper

<b>Paper weight</b>	17 lb (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) to 24 lb (95 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Sheet feeding capacity</b>	Total thickness: 0.15 inch (3.85 mm)
	Approximately 35 sheets (US letter or A4) or 10 sheets (legal or 8.5 × 13 inch [216 × 330 mm])

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Ink Specifications

**Note:** Epson's warranties do not extend to any damage caused by the use of third-party ink or ink not designed for your printer.

The included initial ink bottles must be used for printer setup and are not for resale. The printer ships with full ink bottles and part of the ink from the first bottles is used to charge the print head. Yields vary considerably based on images printed, print settings, paper type, frequency of use and temperature.

<b>Color</b>	Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow
<b>Ink bottle life</b>	Epson recommends using an ink bottle before the date printed on the package
<b>Temperature</b>	Storage: -4 to 104 °F (-20 to 40 °C) 1 month at 104 °F (40 °C) Ink freezes at 5 °F (-15 °C) Ink thaws and is usable after approximately 2 hours at 77 °F (25 °C)

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Dimension Specifications

<b>Height</b>	Stored: 13.6 inches (346 mm) Printing: 13.6 inches (346 mm)
<b>Width</b>	Stored: 14.8 inches (375 mm) Printing: 14.8 inches (375 mm)

<b>Depth</b>	Stored: 13.7 inches (347 mm) Printing: 13.7 inches (347 mm)
<b>Weight</b> (without ink and power cord)	Approximately 16.1 lb (7.3 kg)

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Electrical Specifications

<b>Power supply rating</b>	100 to 240 V
<b>Input voltage range</b>	90 to 264 V
<b>Rated frequency range</b>	50/60 Hz
<b>Input frequency range</b>	49.5 to 60.5 Hz
<b>Rated current</b>	0.5 to 0.2 A
<b>Power consumption</b> (with USB connection)	Standalone copying: Approximately 12.0 W (ISO/IEC24712) Ready mode (ET-5150): Approximately 5.3 W Ready mode (ET-5170): Approximately 5.4 W Ready mode (ET-5180): Approximately 5.5 W Sleep mode (ET-5150/ET-5170): Approximately 0.9 W Sleep mode (ET-5180): Approximately 1.0 W Power off mode: Approximately 0.2 W

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Environmental Specifications

<b>Temperature</b>	Operating: 50 to 95 °F (10 to 35 °C) Storage: –4 to 104 °F (–20 to 40 °C) (before initial ink charging) 5 to 104 °F (–15 to 40 °C) (after initial ink charging) 1 month at 104 °F (40 °C)
--------------------	--

<b>Humidity</b>	Operating: 20 to 80% RH
(without condensation)	Storage: 5 to 85% RH

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Interface Specifications

<b>Interface type</b>	Hi-Speed USB
-----------------------	--------------

**Note:** USB 3.0 cables are not supported.

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Network Interface Specifications

### Wi-Fi

<b>Standard</b>	IEEE 802.11 b/g/n; IEEE 802.11n is available only for the HT20
-----------------	--

<b>Frequency range</b>	2.4 GHz
------------------------	---------

<b>Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted</b>	20 dBm (EIRP)
--	---------------

<b>Coordination modes</b>	Infrastructure mode
---------------------------	---------------------

Wi-Fi Direct (Simple AP); not supported for IEEE 802.11b
--

**Note:** Wi-Fi Direct Simple AP mode is available even if you connect the product to an Ethernet network.

<b>Security</b>	WPA2-PSK (AES); complies with WPA2 with support for WPA/WPA2 Personal; Wi-Fi Direct supports only WPA2-PSK (AES) security WEP (64/128 bit)
-----------------	---

## Ethernet

<b>Standard</b>	IEEE802.3i (10BASE-T); use a category 5e or higher shielded twisted pair cable to prevent radio interference IEEE802.3u (100BASE-TX) IEEE802.3az (Energy Efficient Ethernet); the connected device should be IEEE802.3az compliant
<b>Communication mode</b>	Auto, 10Mbps Full duplex, 10Mbps Half duplex, 100Mbps Full duplex, 100Mbps Half duplex
<b>Connector</b>	RJ-45

## Security Protocol

SSL/TLS: HTTPS Server/Client, IPPS

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

## Safety and Approvals Specifications

<b>United States</b>	Safety: UL60950-1 EMC: FCC part 15 Subpart B Class B
<b>Canada</b>	Safety: CAN/CSA C22.2 No. 60950-1 EMC: CAN ICES-3 (B)/NMB-3 (B)

This equipment contains the following wireless module:

- Manufacturer: Seiko Epson Corporation.
- Type: J26H006

This product conforms to Part 15 of FCC Rules and RSS-210 of the IC Rules. Epson cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a non-recommended modification of the product. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment should be installed and operated so that the radiator is kept at least 7.9 inches (20 cm) or more away from a person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

**Parent topic:** [Technical Specifications](#)

---

# Notices

Check these sections for important notices about your product.

**Note:** Epson offers a recycling program for end of life Epson products. Please go to [this site](#) (U.S) or [this site](#) (Canada) for information on how to return your Epson products for proper disposal.

[Important Safety Instructions](#)  
[FCC Compliance Statement](#)  
[Binding Arbitration and Class Waiver](#)  
[Trademarks](#)  
[Copyright Notice](#)

## Important Safety Instructions

Before using your Epson product, read and follow these safety instructions.

[General Product Safety Instructions](#)  
[LCD Screen Safety Instructions](#)  
[Wireless Connection Safety Instructions](#)  
[Telephone Equipment Safety Instructions](#)

**Parent topic:** [Notices](#)

## General Product Safety Instructions

- Be sure to follow all warnings and instructions marked on the product.
- Use only the type of power source indicated on the product's label.
- Use only the power cord that comes with the product. Use of another cord may cause fires or shock.  
Do not use the cord with any other equipment.
- Make sure the AC power cord meets the relevant local safety standard.
- Place the product near a wall outlet where the plug can be easily unplugged.
- Avoid plugging the product into an outlet on the same circuit as a photo copier or air control system that regularly switches on and off, or on an outlet controlled by a wall switch or timer.
- Do not let the power cord become damaged or frayed. Place it to avoid abrasions, cuts, fraying, crimping, and kinking. Do not place objects on top of it and do not allow it to be stepped on or run over. Be careful to keep the cord straight at each end.

- If you use an extension cord with the product, make sure the total ampere rating of the devices plugged into the extension cord does not exceed the cord's ampere rating. Also, make sure the total ampere rating of all devices plugged into the wall outlet does not exceed the wall outlet's ampere rating.
- Always turn off the product using the power button, and wait until the power light stops flashing before unplugging the product or cutting off power to the electrical outlet.
- If you will not be using the product for a long period, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Place the product on a flat, stable surface that extends beyond its base in all directions. It will not operate properly if it is tilted or at an angle.
- Allow space behind the product for the cables, and space above the product so that you can fully raise the document cover.
- Leave enough space in front of the product for the paper to be fully ejected.
- Avoid locations that are subject to rapid changes in heat or humidity, shocks or vibrations, or dust.
- Do not place or store the product outdoors.
- Do not place the product near excessive heat sources or in direct sunlight.
- Leave enough room around the product for sufficient ventilation. Do not block or cover openings in the case or insert objects through the slots.
- Keep the product away from potential sources of electromagnetic interference, such as loudspeakers or the base units of cordless telephones.
- Keep your product at least 8.7 inches (22 cm) away from cardiac pacemakers to prevent your product's radio waves from affecting the operation of the pacemaker.
- When connecting the product to a computer or other device with a cable, ensure the correct orientation of the connectors. Each connector has only one correct orientation. Inserting a connector in the wrong orientation may damage both devices connected by the cable.
- Do not sit or lean on the product. Do not place heavy objects on the product.
- Do not touch the flat white cable or ink tubes inside the product.
- Do not move the print head by hand; this may damage the product.
- Do not put your hand inside the product while it is printing.
- Do not spill liquid on the product or use the product with wet hands.
- Do not use aerosol products that contain flammable gases inside or around the product. Doing so may cause fire.
- Do not press too hard on the scanner glass when placing originals.

- Do not open the scanner section while the product is copying, printing, scanning, or performing any other functions.
- Be careful not to trap your fingers when closing the ADF.
- Except as specifically explained in your documentation, do not attempt to service or disassemble the product yourself.
- Unplug the product and refer servicing to qualified service personnel under the following conditions: if the power cord or plug is damaged; if liquid has entered the product; if the product has been dropped or the case damaged; if the product does not operate normally or exhibits a distinct change in performance. Adjust only those controls that are covered by the operating instructions.
- If any of the ink tanks are not filled up to the lower line, refill the ink soon. Prolonged use of the product when the ink level is below the lower line could damage the product.
- Before transporting the product, make sure that the print head is in the home (far right) position.
- When storing or transporting the product, do not tilt it, stand it on its side, or turn it upside down; otherwise, ink may leak.
- When lifting the printer, place your hands in the positions shown below.



**Parent topic:** [Important Safety Instructions](#)

## LCD Screen Safety Instructions

- Use only a dry, soft cloth to clean the LCD screen. Do not use liquid or chemical cleansers.

- If the LCD screen is damaged, contact Epson. If the liquid crystal solution gets on your hands, wash them thoroughly with soap and water. If the liquid crystal solution gets into your eyes, flush them immediately with water. If discomfort or vision problems remain after a thorough flushing, see a doctor immediately. If liquid enters your mouth, see a doctor immediately.
- Do not press too hard on the LCD screen or subject it to heavy impacts.
- Do not use a pointy or sharp object, such as a pen or your fingernail, to operate the LCD screen.
- If the LCD screen chips or cracks, do not touch or attempt to remove the broken pieces; contact Epson for support.
- Do not subject your product to sudden changes in temperature or humidity; this may cause condensation to develop inside the LCD screen and degrade its performance.
- The LCD screen may contain a few small bright or dark spots, and may display uneven brightness. These are normal and do not indicate that the screen is damaged in any way.

**Parent topic:** [Important Safety Instructions](#)

## Wireless Connection Safety Instructions

Radio waves from this product may adversely affect the operation of medical equipment or automatically controlled devices, such as pacemakers, automatic doors or fire alarms. When using this product near such devices or inside a medical facility, follow the directions from authorized staff members at the facility, and follow all posted warnings and directions on the device to avoid causing an accident.

**Parent topic:** [Important Safety Instructions](#)

## Telephone Equipment Safety Instructions

When using telephone equipment, you should always follow basic safety precautions to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and personal injury, including the following:

- Do not use the Epson product near water.
- Avoid using a telephone during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not use a telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

**Caution:** To reduce the risk of fire, use only a No. 26 AWG or larger telecommunication line cord.

**Parent topic:** [Important Safety Instructions](#)

# FCC Compliance Statement

## For United States Users

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments ("ACTA"). On the surface of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.

Applicable certification jack Universal Service Order Codes ("USOC") for the equipment: RJ11C.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See installation instructions for details.

The REN is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (e.g., 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is separately shown on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But if advance notice isn't practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations, or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you have problems with this product and require technical or customer support, please visit [www.epson.com](http://www.epson.com) for more information.

This product is not intended to be repaired by the customer. If you experience trouble connecting this equipment to a telephone line, please contact:

Name: Epson America, Inc.

Address: 3131 Katella Ave., Los Alamitos, CA 90720 U.S.A.

Telephone: (562) 981-3840

If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment may not be used on coin service provided by the telephone company. Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless such message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

In order to program this information into your fax machine, click the link below for instructions on entering fax header information.

According to the FCC's electrical safety advisory, we recommend that you may install an AC surge arrester in the AC outlet to which this equipment is connected. Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources and that this is a major nationwide problem.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio or television reception. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause interference to radio and television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## **WARNING**

The connection of a non-shielded equipment interface cable to this equipment will invalidate the FCC Certification or Declaration of this device and may cause interference levels which exceed the limits established by the FCC for this equipment. It is the responsibility of the user to obtain and use a shielded

equipment interface cable with this device. If this equipment has more than one interface connector, do not leave cables connected to unused interfaces. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### For Canadian Users

1. This product meets the applicable Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada technical specifications.
2. The Ringer Equivalence Number indicates the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five.

CAN ICES-3(B)/NMB-3(B)

Le présent produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques applicables d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada.

L'indice d'équivalence de la sonnerie (IES) sert à indiquer le nombre maximal de dispositifs qui peuvent être raccordés à une interface téléphonique. La terminaison d'une interface peut consister en une combinaison quelconque de dispositifs, à la seule condition que la somme des IES de tous les dispositifs n'excède pas cinq.

CAN ICES-3(B)/NMB-3(B)

**Parent topic:** [Notices](#)

## Binding Arbitration and Class Waiver

### 1. DISPUTES, BINDING INDIVIDUAL ARBITRATION, AND WAIVER OF CLASS ACTIONS AND CLASS ARBITRATIONS

**1.1 Disputes.** The terms of this Section 1 shall apply to all Disputes between you and Epson. The term "Dispute" is meant to have the broadest meaning permissible under law and includes any dispute, claim, controversy or action between you and Epson arising out of or relating to this Agreement, Epson branded products (hardware and including any related software), or other transaction involving you and Epson, whether in contract, warranty, misrepresentation, fraud, tort, intentional tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis. "DISPUTE" DOES NOT INCLUDE IP CLAIMS, or more specifically, a claim or cause of action for (a) trademark infringement or dilution, (b) patent infringement, (c) copyright infringement or misuse, or (d) trade secret misappropriation (an "IP Claim"). You and Epson also agree, notwithstanding Section 1.6, that a court, not an arbitrator, may decide if a claim or cause of action is for an IP Claim.

**1.2 Binding Arbitration.** You and Epson agree that all Disputes shall be resolved by binding arbitration according to this Agreement. **ARBITRATION MEANS THAT YOU WAIVE YOUR RIGHT TO A JUDGE**

**OR JURY IN A COURT PROCEEDING AND YOUR GROUNDS FOR APPEAL ARE LIMITED.**

Pursuant to this Agreement, binding arbitration shall be administered by JAMS, a nationally recognized arbitration authority, pursuant to its code of procedures then in effect for consumer related disputes, but excluding any rules that permit joinder or class actions in arbitration (for more detail on procedure, see Section 1.6 below). You and Epson understand and agree that (a) the Federal Arbitration Act (9 U.S.C. §1, et seq.) governs the interpretation and enforcement of this Section 1, (b) this Agreement memorializes a transaction in interstate commerce, and (c) this Section 1 shall survive termination of this Agreement.

**1.3 Pre-Arbitration Steps and Notice.** Before submitting a claim for arbitration, you and Epson agree to try, for sixty (60) days, to resolve any Dispute informally. If Epson and you do not reach an agreement to resolve the Dispute within the sixty (60) days), you or Epson may commence an arbitration. Notice to Epson must be addressed to: Epson America, Inc., ATTN: Legal Department, 3131 Katella Ave., Los Alamitos, CA 90720 (the "Epson Address"). The Dispute Notice to you will be sent to the most recent address Epson has in its records for you. For this reason, it is important to notify us if your address changes by emailing us at EAILegal@ea.epson.com or writing us at the Epson Address above. Notice of the Dispute shall include the sender's name, address and contact information, the facts giving rise to the Dispute, and the relief requested (the "Dispute Notice"). Following receipt of the Dispute Notice, Epson and you agree to act in good faith to resolve the Dispute before commencing arbitration.

**1.4 Small Claims Court.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, you may bring an individual action in the small claims court of your state or municipality if the action is within that court's jurisdiction and is pending only in that court.

**1.5 WAIVER OF CLASS ACTIONS AND CLASS ARBITRATIONS. YOU AND EPSON AGREE THAT EACH PARTY MAY BRING DISPUTES AGAINST THE OTHER PARTY ONLY IN AN INDIVIDUAL CAPACITY, AND NOT AS A PLAINTIFF OR CLASS MEMBER IN ANY CLASS OR REPRESENTATIVE PROCEEDING, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION FEDERAL OR STATE CLASS ACTIONS, OR CLASS ARBITRATIONS. CLASS ACTION LAWSUITS, CLASS-WIDE ARBITRATIONS, PRIVATE ATTORNEY-GENERAL ACTIONS, AND ANY OTHER PROCEEDING WHERE SOMEONE ACTS IN A REPRESENTATIVE CAPACITY ARE NOT ALLOWED. ACCORDINGLY, UNDER THE ARBITRATION PROCEDURES OUTLINED IN THIS SECTION, AN ARBITRATOR SHALL NOT COMBINE OR CONSOLIDATE MORE THAN ONE PARTY'S CLAIMS WITHOUT THE WRITTEN CONSENT OF ALL AFFECTED PARTIES TO AN ARBITRATION PROCEEDING.**

**1.6 Arbitration Procedure.** If you or Epson commences arbitration, the arbitration shall be governed by the rules of JAMS that are in effect when the arbitration is filed, excluding any rules that permit arbitration on a class or representative basis (the "JAMS Rules"), available at <http://www.jamsadr.com> or by calling 1-800-352-5267, and under the rules set forth in this Agreement. All Disputes shall be resolved by a single neutral arbitrator, and both parties shall have a reasonable opportunity to participate in the selection of the arbitrator. The arbitrator is bound by the terms of this Agreement. The arbitrator, and not any federal, state or local court or agency, shall have exclusive authority to resolve all disputes arising

out of or relating to the interpretation, applicability, enforceability or formation of this Agreement, including any claim that all or any part of this Agreement is void or voidable. Notwithstanding this broad delegation of authority to the arbitrator, a court may determine the limited question of whether a claim or cause of action is for an IP Claim, which is excluded from the definition of "Disputes" in Section 1.1 above. The arbitrator shall be empowered to grant whatever relief would be available in a court under law or in equity. The arbitrator may award you the same damages as a court could, and may award declaratory or injunctive relief only in favor of the individual party seeking relief and only to the extent necessary to provide relief warranted by that party's individual claim. In some instances, the costs of arbitration can exceed the costs of litigation and the right to discovery may be more limited in arbitration than in court. The arbitrator's award is binding and may be entered as a judgment in any court of competent jurisdiction.

You may choose to engage in arbitration hearings by telephone. Arbitration hearings not conducted by telephone shall take place in a location reasonably accessible from your primary residence, or in Orange County, California, at your option.

- a) Initiation of Arbitration Proceeding. If either you or Epson decides to arbitrate a Dispute, both parties agree to the following procedure:
  - (i) Write a Demand for Arbitration. The demand must include a description of the Dispute and the amount of damages sought to be recovered. You can find a copy of a Demand for Arbitration at <http://www.jamsadr.com> ("Demand for Arbitration").
  - (ii) Send three copies of the Demand for Arbitration, plus the appropriate filing fee, to: JAMS, 500 North State College Blvd., Suite 600 Orange, CA 92868, U.S.A.
  - (iii) Send one copy of the Demand for Arbitration to the other party (same address as the Dispute Notice), or as otherwise agreed by the parties.
- b) Hearing Format. During the arbitration, the amount of any settlement offer made shall not be disclosed to the arbitrator until after the arbitrator determines the amount, if any, to which you or Epson is entitled. The discovery or exchange of non-privileged information relevant to the Dispute may be allowed during the arbitration.
- c) Arbitration Fees. Epson shall pay, or (if applicable) reimburse you for, all JAMS filings and arbitrator fees for any arbitration commenced (by you or Epson) pursuant to provisions of this Agreement.
- d) Award in Your Favor. For Disputes in which you or Epson seeks \$75,000 or less in damages exclusive of attorney's fees and costs, if the arbitrator's decision results in an award to you in an amount greater than Epson's last written offer, if any, to settle the Dispute, Epson will: (i) pay you \$1,000 or the amount of the award, whichever is greater; (ii) pay you twice the amount of your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (iii) reimburse you for any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing the Dispute in arbitration. Except as agreed upon by you and Epson in writing, the arbitrator shall determine the amount of fees, costs, and expenses to be paid by Epson pursuant to this Section 1.6d).

e) Attorney's Fees. Epson will not seek its attorney's fees and expenses for any arbitration commenced involving a Dispute under this Agreement. Your right to attorney's fees and expenses under Section 1.6d) above does not limit your rights to attorney's fees and expenses under applicable law; notwithstanding the foregoing, the arbitrator may not award duplicative awards of attorney's fees and expenses.

**1.7 Opt-out. You may elect to opt-out (exclude yourself) from the final, binding, individual arbitration procedure and waiver of class and representative proceedings specified in this Agreement by sending a written letter to the Epson Address within thirty (30) days of your assent to this Agreement (including without limitation the purchase, download, installation of the Software or other applicable use of Epson Hardware, products and services) that specifies (i) your name, (ii) your mailing address, and (iii) your request to be excluded from the final, binding individual arbitration procedure and waiver of class and representative proceedings specified in this Section 1. In the event that you opt-out consistent with the procedure set forth above, all other terms shall continue to apply, including the requirement to provide notice prior to litigation.**

**1.8 Amendments to Section 1.** Notwithstanding any provision in this Agreement to the contrary, you and Epson agree that if Epson makes any future amendments to the dispute resolution procedure and class action waiver provisions (other than a change to Epson's address) in this Agreement, Epson will obtain your affirmative assent to the applicable amendment. If you do not affirmatively assent to the applicable amendment, you are agreeing that you will arbitrate any Dispute between the parties in accordance with the language of this Section 1 (or resolve disputes as provided for in Section 1.7, if you timely elected to opt-out when you first assented to this Agreement).

**1.9 Severability.** If any provision in this Section 1 is found to be unenforceable, that provision shall be severed with the remainder of this Agreement remaining in full force and effect. **The foregoing shall not apply to the prohibition against class or representative actions as provided in Section 1.5. This means that if Section 1.5 is found to be unenforceable, the entire Section 1 (but only Section 1) shall be null and void.**

**Parent topic:** [Notices](#)

## Trademarks

EPSON® and Epson Smart Panel® are registered trademarks, EPSON Exceed Your Vision is a registered logomark, and Epson Connect™ and Remote Print™ are trademarks of Seiko Epson Corporation.

Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, App Store, AirPrint, AirPrint logo, ColorSync, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, macOS, and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Google® is a registered trademark and Android™, Gmail™, Chrome™, Google Drive™, Google Play™, and Google Cloud Print™ are trademarks of Google LLC.

Wi-Fi Direct® is a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

General Notice: Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective owners. Epson disclaims any and all rights in those marks.



**Parent topic:** [Notices](#)

## Copyright Notice

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Seiko Epson Corporation. The information contained herein is designed only for use with this Epson product. Epson is not responsible for any use of this information as applied to other products.

Neither Seiko Epson Corporation nor its affiliates shall be liable to the purchaser of this product or third parties for damages, losses, costs, or expenses incurred by purchaser or third parties as a result of: accident, misuse, or abuse of this product or unauthorized modifications, repairs, or alterations to this product, or (excluding the U.S.) failure to strictly comply with Seiko Epson Corporation's operating and maintenance instructions.

Seiko Epson Corporation shall not be liable for any damages or problems arising from the use of any options or any consumable products other than those designated as Original Epson Products or Epson Approved Products by Seiko Epson Corporation.

Seiko Epson Corporation shall not be held liable for any damage resulting from electromagnetic interference that occurs from the use of any interface cables other than those designated as Epson approved Products by Seiko Epson Corporation.

This information is subject to change without notice.

[libTIFF Software Acknowledgment](#)

[A Note Concerning Responsible Use of Copyrighted Materials](#)

[Default Delay Times for Power Management for Epson Products](#)

[Copyright Attribution](#)

[Parent topic: Notices](#)

## **libTIFF Software Acknowledgment**

Copyright © 1988-1997 Sam Leffler

Copyright © 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that (I) the above copyright notices and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software and related documentation, and (ii) the names of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics may not be used in any advertising or publicity relating to the software without the specific, prior written permission of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL SAM LEFFLER OR SILICON GRAPHICS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER OR NOT ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF DAMAGE, AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

[Parent topic: Copyright Notice](#)

## **A Note Concerning Responsible Use of Copyrighted Materials**

Epson encourages each user to be responsible and respectful of the copyright laws when using any Epson product. While some countries' laws permit limited copying or reuse of copyrighted material in certain circumstances, those circumstances may not be as broad as some people assume. Contact your legal advisor for any questions regarding copyright law.

[Parent topic: Copyright Notice](#)

## **Default Delay Times for Power Management for Epson Products**

This product will enter sleep mode after a period of nonuse. This is to ensure that the product meets Energy Star standards of energy efficiency. More energy savings can be achieved by setting the time to sleep to a shorter interval.

[Parent topic: Copyright Notice](#)

## **Copyright Attribution**

© 2021 Epson America, Inc.

9/21

CPD-60353R1

**Parent topic:** [Copyright Notice](#)